# Owner's Manual

## 2021 CR-V

HONDA

## ⚠WARNING

## California Proposition 65 Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to *www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle*.

### Event Data Recorders

**This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR).** The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. **The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling.**

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

The data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

## Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential. Some diagnostic and maintenance information is uploaded to Honda upon vehicle start up.

## California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle may contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See *www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/*

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a NOTICE symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

## Software End User License Agreement

Your vehicle comes equipped with software, which is governed by the End User License Agreement in Owner's Manual, and which contains a binding arbitration clause. Please refer to the End User License Agreement for the terms and conditions governing your use of the installed software, as well as the applications, services, functions, and content provided through the software. Your use of the installed software will serve as your consent to the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement.

You may opt out within 30 days of your initial use of the Software by sending a signed, written notice to HONDA at American Honda Motor Co., Inc. Honda Automobile Customer Services Mail Stop 100-5E-8A, 1919 Torrance Blvd. Torrance, CA 90501-2746.

## Privacy Notice

This vehicle may share location and usage information. To manage this setting, visit *www.hondalink.com/vehicle-data-choices*.

**To learn more about how we collect and use Personal Information, please read our Privacy Policy, accessible at *www.honda.com*.**

# A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgment.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

**⚠DANGER** You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

**⚠WARNING** You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

**⚠CAUTION** You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

This owner's manual is for vehicles sold in the United States and Canada.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.


**Safe Driving** P. 35

For Safe Driving P. 36 Seat Belts P. 41 Airbags P. 50

**Instrument Panel** P. 83

Indicators P. 84 Gauges and Displays P. 118

**Controls** P. 137

Clock P. 138 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 140
Moonroof* P. 171 Panoramic Roof*1 P. 172
Adjusting the Seats P. 203

**Features** P. 239

Audio System P. 240 Audio System Basic Operation P. 246, 267
Customized Features P. 359, 366 HomeLink® Universal Transceiver* P. 393

**Driving** P. 457

Before Driving P. 458 Towing a Trailer P. 463
Parking Your Vehicle P. 552 Multi-View Rear Camera P. 558

**Maintenance** P. 565

Before Performing Maintenance P. 566 Maintenance Minder™ P. 569
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 592
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 609

**Handling the Unexpected** P. 617

Tools P. 618 If a Tire Goes Flat P. 619
Overheating P. 633 Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 635
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 647

**Information** P. 649

Specifications P. 650 Identification Numbers P. 652
Emissions Testing P. 655 Warranty Coverages P. 657

# Contents


Child Safety P. 66
Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 80
Safety Labels P. 81

Opening and Closing the Tailgate P. 154
Security System P. 165
Opening and Closing the Windows P. 168
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 175
Adjusting the Mirrors P. 201
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 213
Climate Control System P. 233

Audio Error Messages P. 337
General Information on the Audio System P. 342
*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® P. 396, 420
Compass* P. 454

Off-Highway Driving Guidelines P. 469
When Driving P. 471
Braking P. 534
Refueling P. 560
Fuel Economy and $CO_2$ Emissions P. 563
Turbo Engine Vehicle P. 564

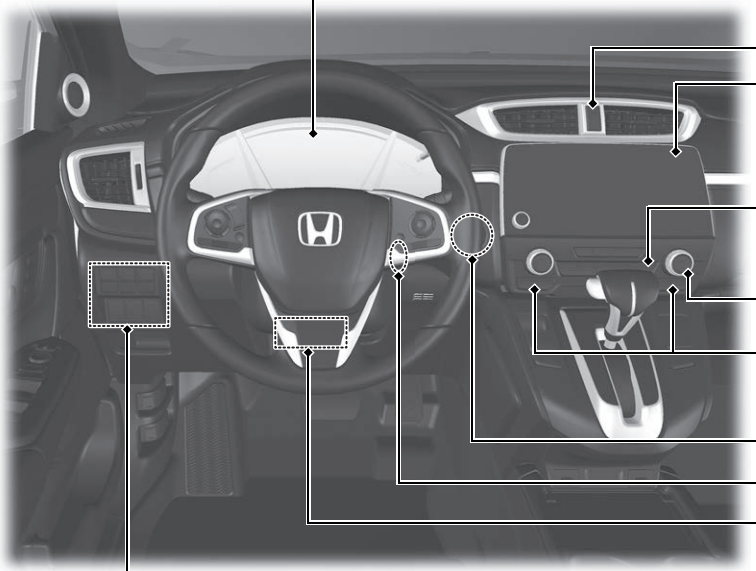
Maintenance Under the Hood P. 575
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 587
Checking and Maintaining Tires P. 596
Battery P. 605
Remote Transmitter Care P. 607
Cleaning P. 610
Accessories and Modifications P. 615

Engine Does Not Start P. 626
If the Battery Is Dead P. 629
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 632
Fuses P. 641
Emergency Towing P. 646
Refueling P. 648

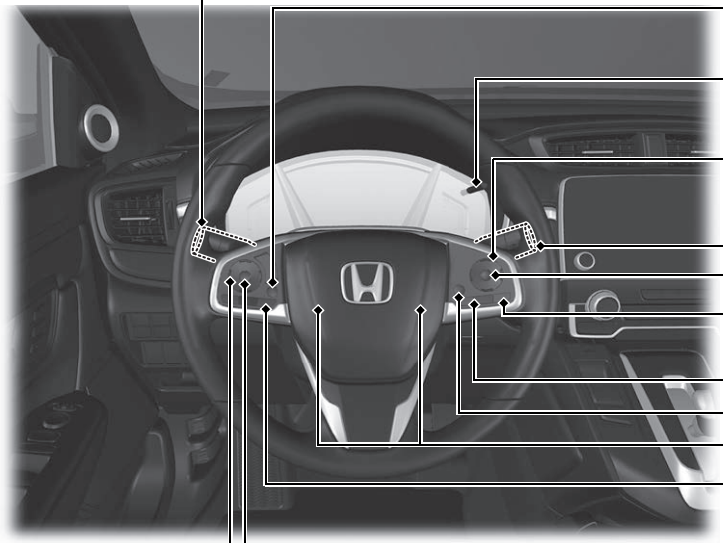
Devices that Emit Radio Waves P. 653
Reporting Safety Defects P. 654
Authorized Manuals P. 660
Customer Service Information P. 661

Quick Reference Guide P. 6
Safe Driving P. 35
Instrument Panel P. 83
Controls P. 137
Features P. 239
Driving P. 457
Maintenance P. 565
Handling the Unexpected P. 617
Information P. 649
Index P. 663

# Visual Index



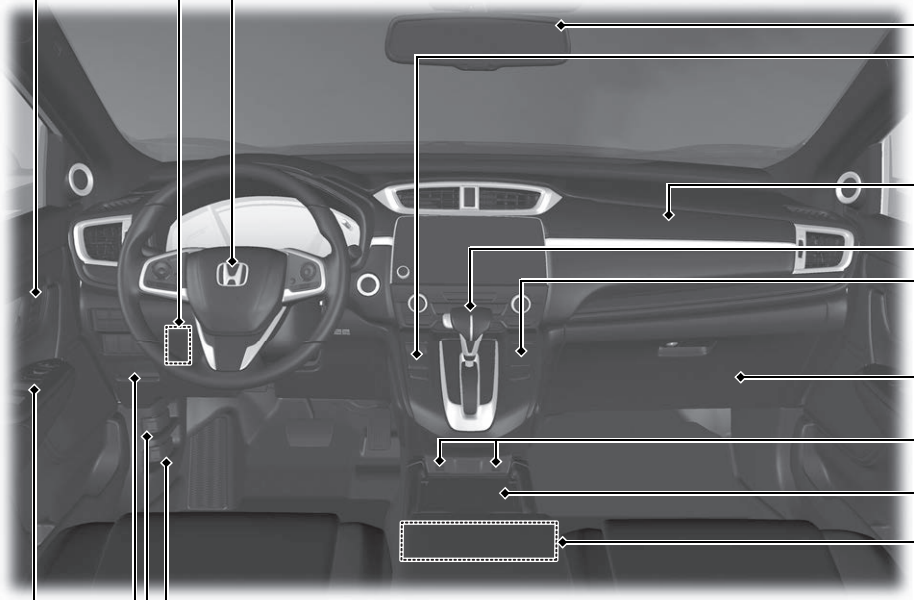
- System Indicators P. 84
- Gauges P. 118
- Driver Information Interface P. 119
- Hazard Warning Button
- Audio System P. 246, 267
- Navigation System*
  See the Navigation System Manual
- Rear Defogger P. 196
- Heated Door Mirror Button* P. 196
- Climate Control System P. 233
- Front Seat Heater Buttons* P. 230
- ENGINE START/STOP Button* P. 176
- Ignition Switch* P. 175
- Steering Wheel Adjustments P. 200
- (Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System OFF) Button P. 520
- Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Button P. 509
- Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) OFF Button P. 546
- Heated Windshield Button* P. 197
- Power Tailgate Button* P. 158



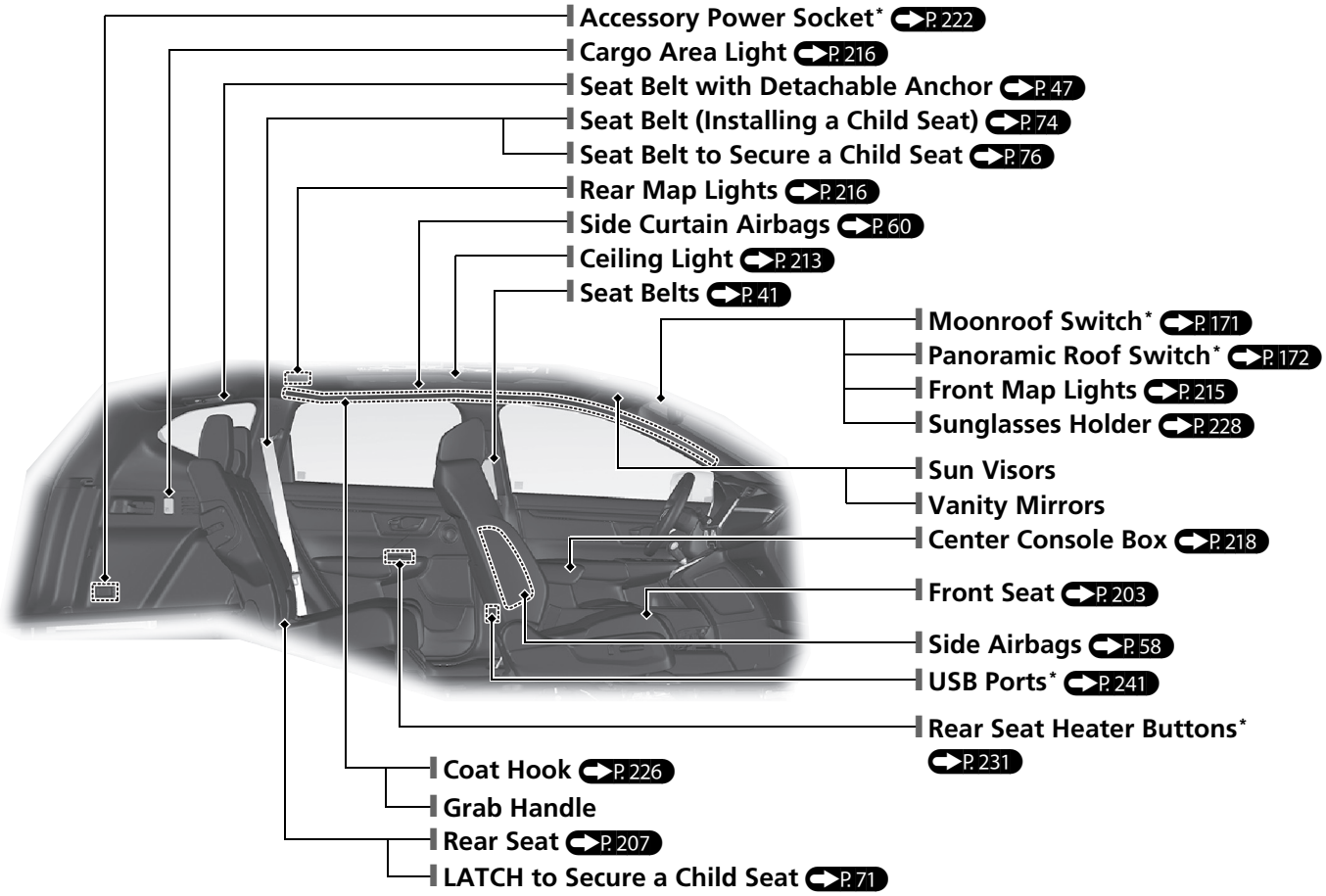
- Headlights/Turn Signals P. 180, 181
- Fog Lights* P. 185
- LaneWatch™* P. 525
- (Display/Information) Button P. 119, 268
- (TRIP) Knob P. 120
- Brightness Control P. 194
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons P. 491
- Wipers/Washers P. 191
- Interval Button P. 501
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button P. 511
- MAIN Button P. 492
- Heated Steering Wheel Button* P. 229
- Horn (Press an area around .)
- Navigation System Voice Control Buttons*
  See the Navigation System Manual
- *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® System Voice Control Buttons P. 396, 420
- ENTER Button P. 119, 243
- / / / Buttons P. 119, 243

* Not available on all models

# Visual Index

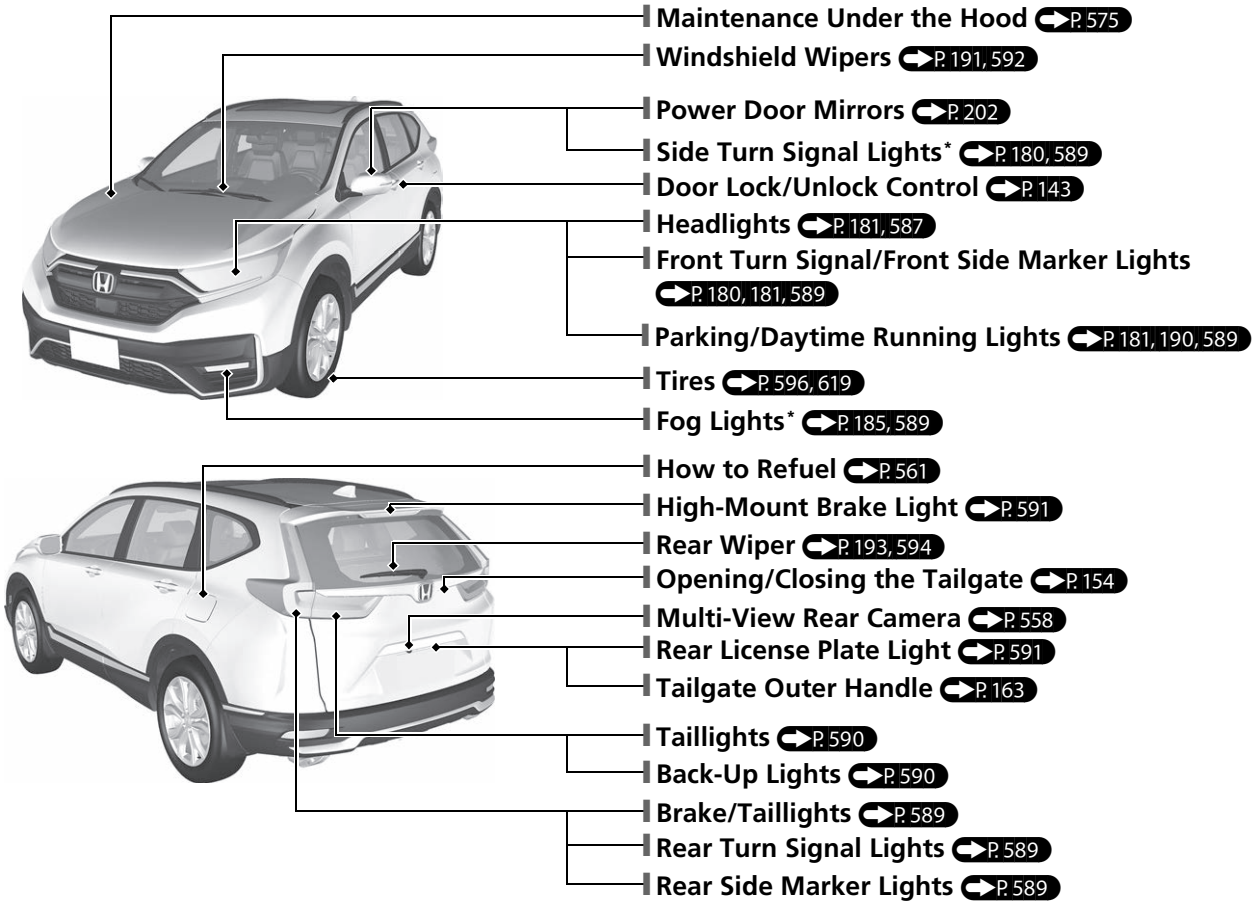


Memory Buttons* P. 199
SET Button* P. 199
Interior Fuse Box P. 642
Driver's Front Airbag P. 53
Rearview Mirror P. 201
Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 534
Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 538
Passenger's Front Airbag P. 53
Shift Lever P. 480
Auto Idle Stop OFF Button P. 483
ECON Button P. 488
Glove Box P. 217
USB Port(s) P. 241
Wireless Charger* P. 223
Accessory Power Socket P. 222
Hood Release Handle P. 576
Fuel Fill Door Release Handle P. 561
Driver's Pocket
Power Window Switches P. 168
Door Mirror Controls P. 202
Master Door Lock Switch P. 152



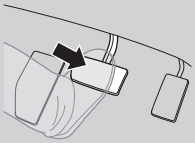
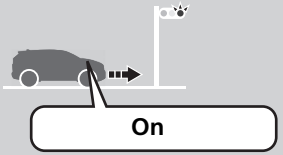
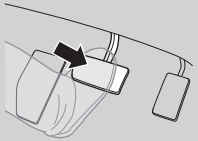
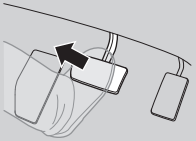
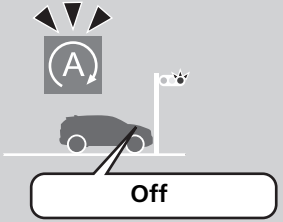
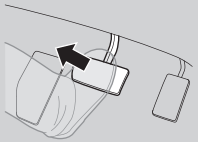
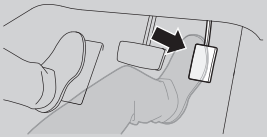
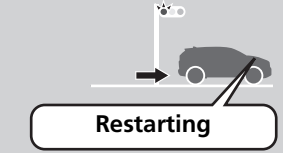

* Not available on all models

# Visual Index



# Auto Idle Stop Function

To improve fuel economy, the engine stops and then restarts as detailed below. When Auto Idle Stop is on, the Auto Idle Stop indicator (green) comes on. P. 482

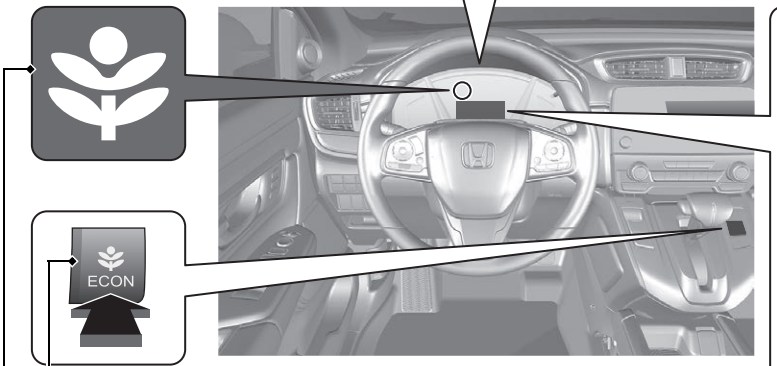
| At | Continuously variable transmission | Engine status |
|---|---|---|
| Deceleration |  Stop the vehicle and depress the brake pedal. |   |
| Stop |  Keep the brake pedal depressed. <br> U.S. Canada  With the automatic brake hold system activated, you can release the brake pedal when the Ⓐ indicator comes on. |   |
| Start-up |  Release the brake pedal. <br>  With the automatic brake hold system activated, depress the accelerator pedal. |   |

* Not available on all models

# Eco Assist® System P. 488

**Ambient Meter**

- The color of the ambient meter changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner.




**ECON Button** P. 488
Helps maximize fuel economy.

**ECON Mode Indicator** P. 95
Comes on when ECON mode is on.

The message is displayed for a few seconds when the **ECON** button is pressed.

# Safe Driving P. 35

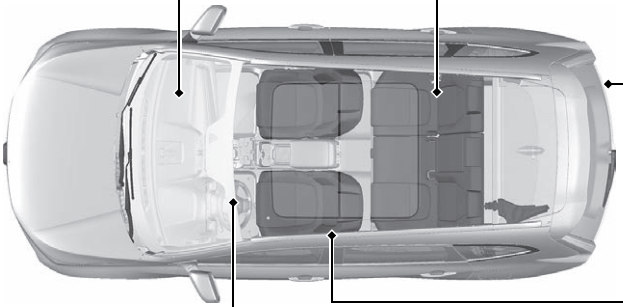


## Airbags P. 50

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

## Child Safety P. 66

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Smaller children should be properly restrained in a forward-facing child seat.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child seat.



## Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 80

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

## Seat Belts P. 41

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

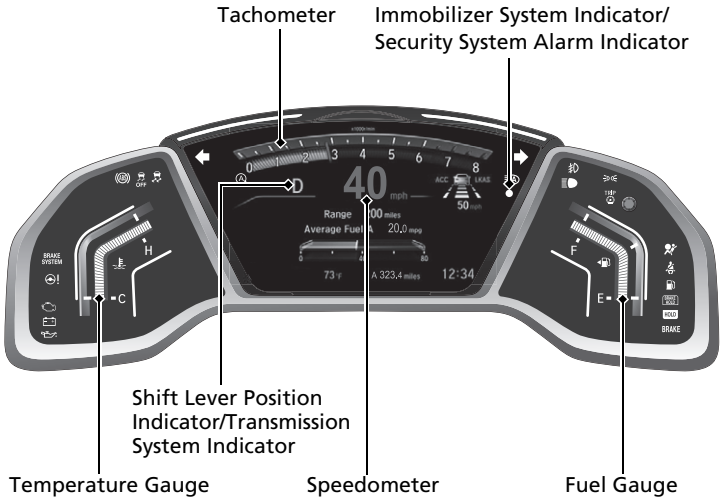
Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

## Before Driving Checklist P. 458

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

# Instrument Panel P. 83

## Gauges P. 118/Driver Information Interface P. 119/System Indicators P. 84




### System Indicators

- Malfunction Indicator Lamp
- Low Oil Pressure Indicator
- Charging System Indicator
- Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator
- Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System Indicator
- Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) **OFF** Indicator
- Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator
- Automatic Brake Hold Indicator
- ECON Mode Indicator
- Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
- Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)

### System Indicators

- System Message Indicator
- Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator
- Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators

### Lights Indicators

- Lights On Indicator
- High Beam Indicator
- Fog Light Indicator*
- Auto High-beam System Indicator

### System Indicators

- Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
- Low Fuel Indicator
- Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
- Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
- Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)/ Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)
- Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber/ Green)
- Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator
- Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator
- Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Amber/ Green)
- Blind spot information System Indicator*

# Controls P. 137

## Clock P. 138

Models with color audio system

1. Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to change hour, then press.
3. Rotate to change minute, then press.
4. Select **SET**, then press.

These indications are used to show how to operate the Selector knob.
- Rotate to select.
- Press to enter.

Models with navigation system

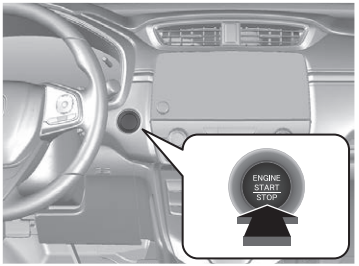
The navigation system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.

Models with Display Audio

1. Select the HOME (HOME) icon, then select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Touch the respective ▲ / ▼ icon to adjust the hours or minutes up or down.
4. Select **OK**.

## ENGINE START/STOP Button* P. 176

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.





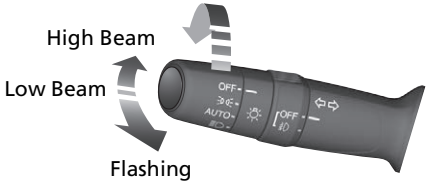

* Not available on all models

## Turn Signals P. 180

Turn Signal Control Lever

## Lights P. 181

Light Control Switches

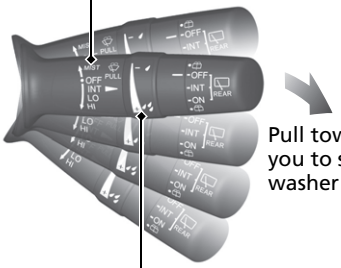



## Wipers and Washers

P. 191

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

**MIST**
**OFF**
**AUTO**[*1]: Wiper speed varies automatically
**INT**[*2]: Low speed with intermittent
**LO**: Low speed wipe
**HI**: High speed wipe




Adjustment Ring

−: Low Sensitivity[*1]
− : Lower speed, fewer sweeps[*2]
+: High Sensitivity[*1]
+ : Higher speed, more sweeps[*2]

*1: Models with automatic intermittent wipers
*2: Models without automatic intermittent wipers

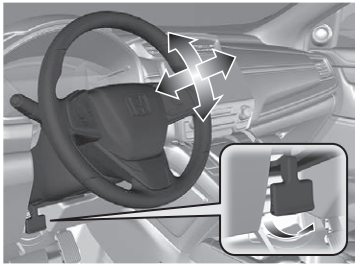
Models with automatic intermittent wipers

**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

## Steering Wheel P. 200

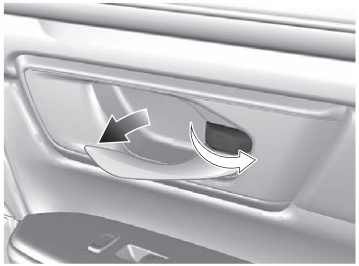
- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



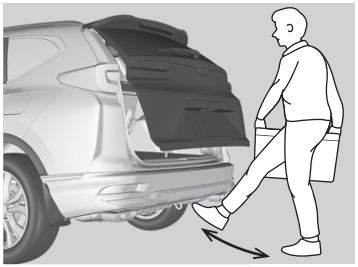
## Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

P. 151

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

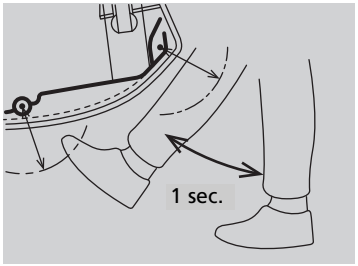


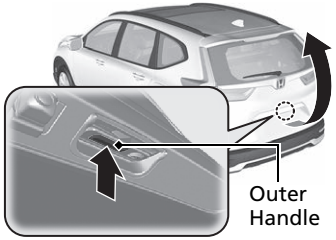
## Tailgate P. 154



Models with Hands Free Access

Use a forward and back kicking motion under the center of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the smart entry remote.




Models without smart entry system

- With all the doors unlocked, press the tailgate outer handle, and lift open the tailgate.

Models with smart entry system

- Press the tailgate outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you have the smart entry remote on you.

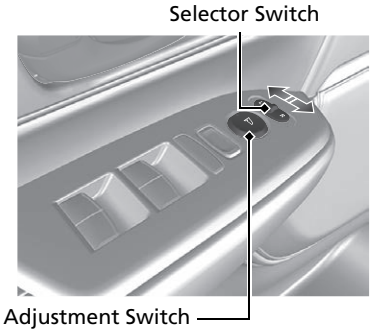
Models with power tailgate

- Press the power tailgate button on the driver side control panel, or press the remote transmitter to unlock and open the tailgate when you have the smart entry remote on you.

## Power Door Mirrors

P. 202

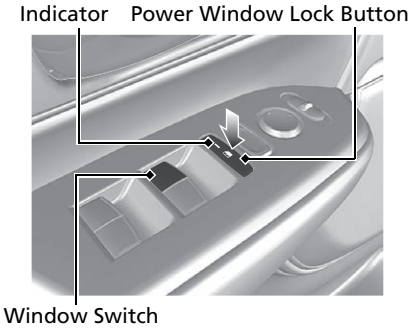
- With the ignition switch in ON II*1, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.




## Power Windows

P. 168

- With the ignition switch in ON II*1, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

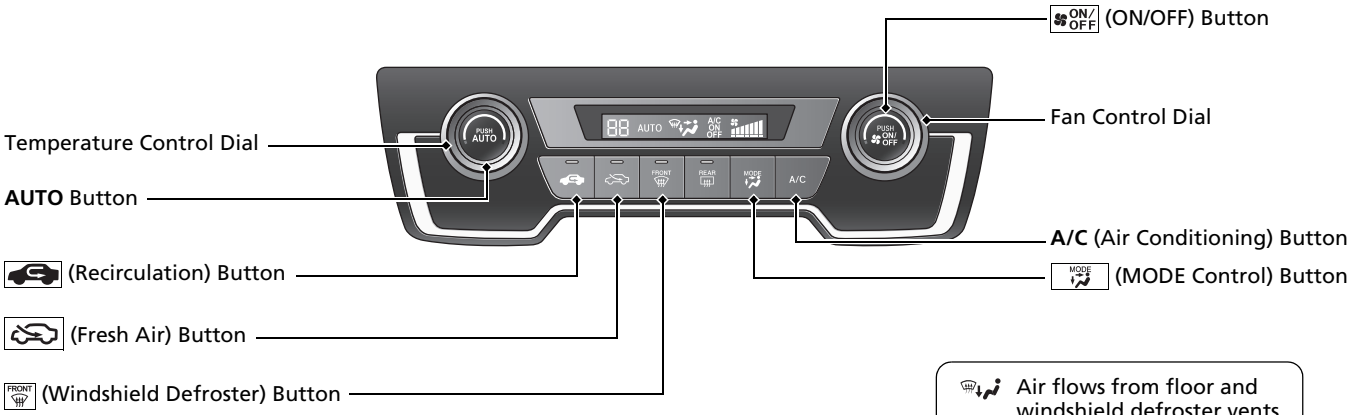



*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

# Climate Control System P. 233

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windshield.

Models without SYNC button



Models with SYNC button

Audio/Information Screen

**SYNC** (Synchronization) Button

CLIMATE (CLIMATE) Button

Driver's side Temperature Control Dial

Passenger's side Temperature Control Dial

**AUTO** Button

ON/OFF (ON/OFF) Button

(Recirculation) Button

(Fresh Air) Button

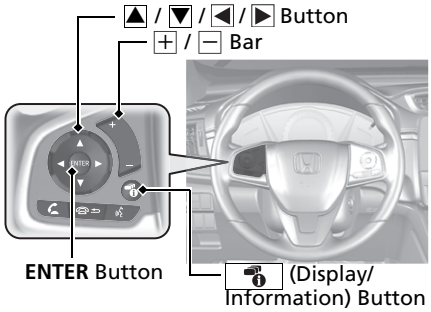
FRONT (Windshield Defroster) Button

- Air flows from floor and windshield defroster vents.
- Air flows from floor vents.
- Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.
- Air flows from dashboard vents.

# Features P. 239

## Audio Remote Controls

P. 243




- + / − Bar
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- ▲ / ▼ Button
  Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through the audio mode as follows:

  Models with color audio system
  FM1/FM2/AM/USB or iPod/Pandora®/ *Bluetooth*® Audio

  Models with Display Audio
  FM/AM/SiriusXM®*/USB/iPod/ *Bluetooth*® Audio/Pandora®*/Apps*/ Audio Apps*

Models with Display Audio

- **ENTER** Button
- When listening to the radio and SiriusXM®*

1. Press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a preset, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to a USB flash drive

1. Press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a folder.
3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of tracks in that folder.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to an iPod

1. Press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a category.
3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.
   ▶ Press **ENTER** and press ▲ or ▼ repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

- When listening to Pandora®*

1. Press **ENTER** to display the station list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to *Bluetooth*® Audio

1. Press **ENTER** to display the track list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

- ◀ / ▶ Button

Radio: Press to change the preset station.
Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.

USB device:
Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
Press and hold to change a folder.

Pandora®*:
Press to skip to the next track.
Press and hold to select the next or previous station.

- (Display/Information) Button

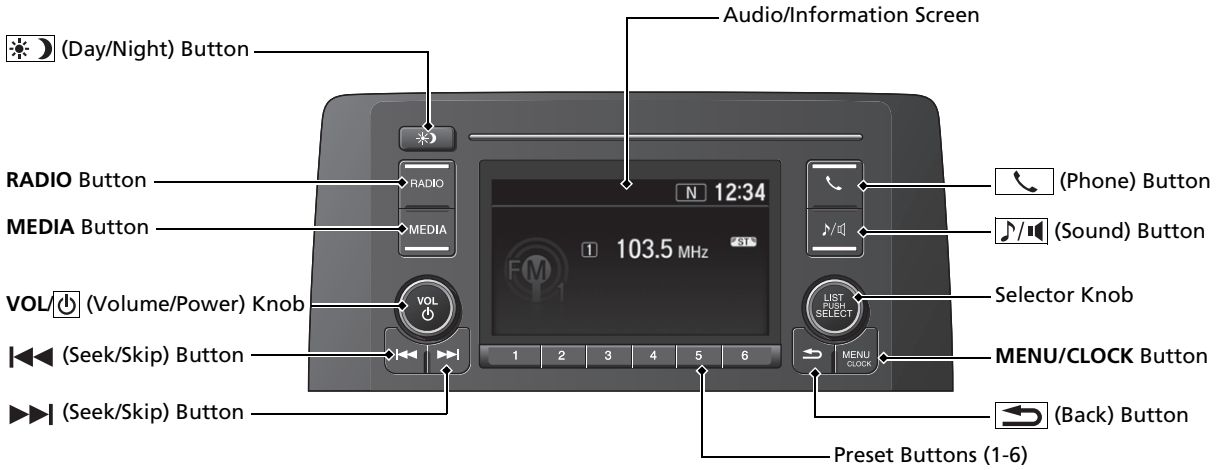
Press to change contents.

**Driver Information Interface**

P. 119

# Audio system P. 240

Models with color audio system P. 246

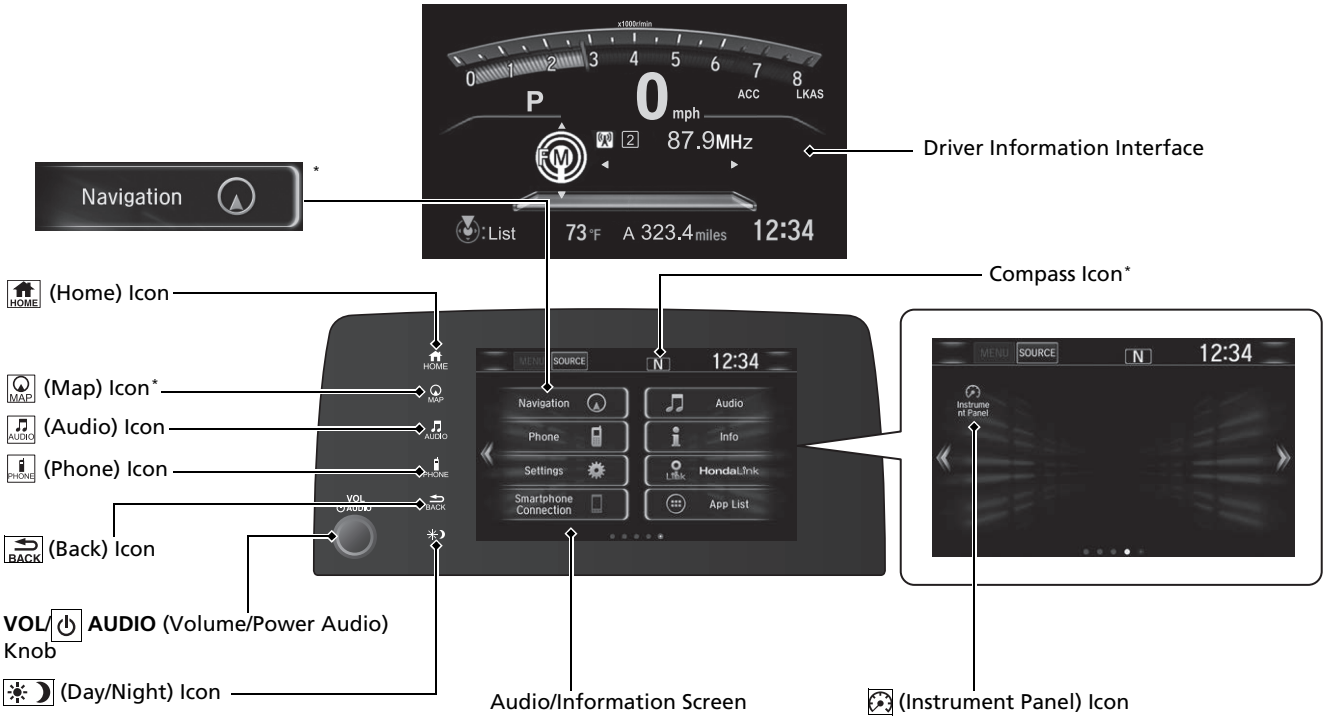





* Not available on all models

Models with Display Audio P. 267

For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



# Driving P. 457

## Continuously Variable Transmission P. 480

● Shift to P and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

● **Shifting**

P **Park**
Turn off or start the engine.
Transmission is locked.

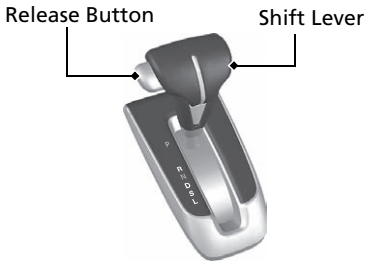
R **Reverse**
Used when reversing

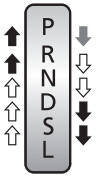
N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
Normal driving.

S **Drive (S)**
- Better acceleration
- Used to increase engine braking
- Used when going up or down hills

L **Low**
- Used to further increase engine braking
- Used when going up or down hills




Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of P.

Press the release button to move the shift lever.

Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.



* Not available on all models

## VSA® On and Off P. 520

- The Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering, and helps maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA® comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable VSA® functionality/ features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 528

- Detects a change in tire conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tire pressures.
- The TPMS is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- A calibration procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

## CMBS™ On and Off

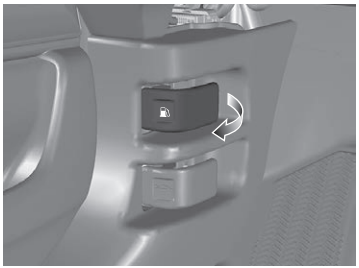
P. 546

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS™ can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS™ is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS™ on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

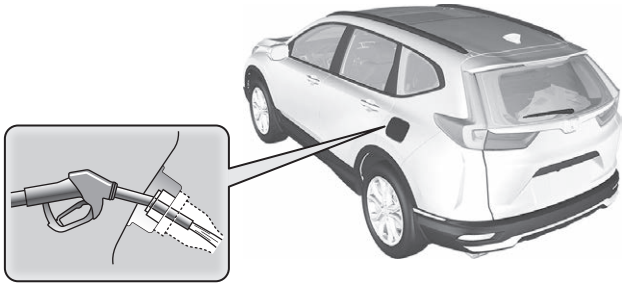
# Refueling P. 560

**Fuel recommendation: Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher**
**Fuel tank capacity:14 US gal (53 L)**

1. Pull the fuel fill door release handle.

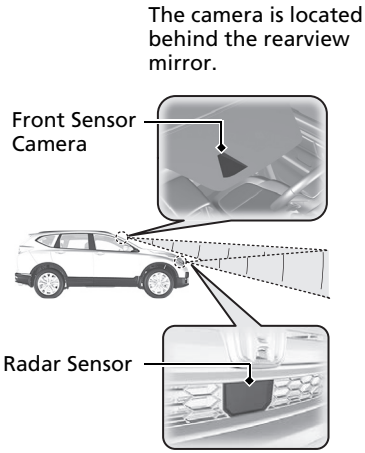


2. After refueling, wait for about five seconds before removing the filler nozzle.



# Honda Sensing®

Honda Sensing® is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors, a radar sensor located in the front grille and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windshield, behind the rear view mirror.




## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 491

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

## Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System P. 507

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 511

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

## Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) P. 542

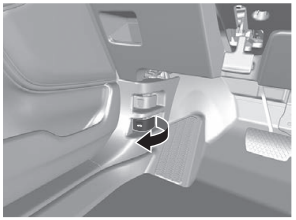
Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

# Maintenance P. 565

## Under the Hood P. 575

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windshield washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the hood release handle under the corner of the dashboard.

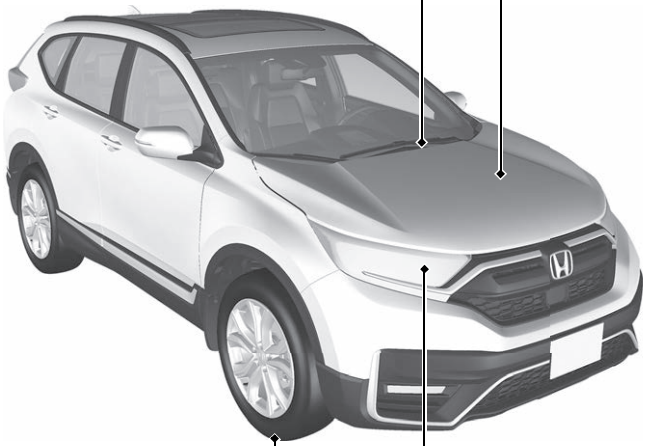


2. Locate the hood latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the hood. Once you have raised the hood slightly, you can release the lever.

3. When finished, close the hood and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

## Wiper Blades P. 592

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windshield or become noisy.



## Tires P. 596

- Inspect tires and wheels regularly.
- Check tire pressures regularly.
- Install snow tires for winter driving.

## Lights P. 587

- Inspect all lights regularly.

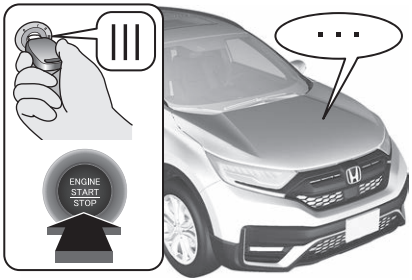
# Handling the Unexpected P. 617

## Flat Tire P. 619

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tire with the compact spare tire in the cargo area.

## Engine Won't Start P. 626

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



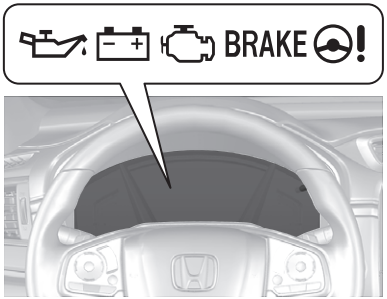

## Overheating P. 633

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the hood, open the hood, and let the engine cool down.

## Indicators Come On

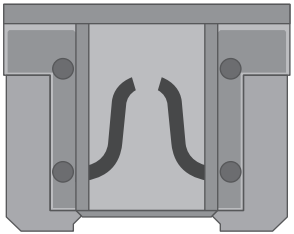
P. 635

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



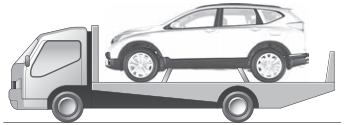

## Blown Fuse P. 641

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



## Emergency Towing P. 646

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



# What to Do If

**Q** U.S. models without smart entry system

**The ignition switch does not turn from 0 to I. Why?**

Canadian models

**The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?**

**A**

- The steering wheel may be locked.

U.S. models without smart entry system

- Try to turn the steering wheel left and right while turning the ignition key.

Canadian models

- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

**Q** Models without smart entry system

**The ignition switch does not turn from I to 0 and I cannot remove the key. Why?**

Models with smart entry system

**The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?**

**A** The shift lever should be moved to P.

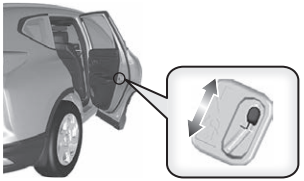
**Q** **Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?**

**A** This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

▶Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 540

**Q** **The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?**

**A** Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



**Q** **Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?**

**A** If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

**Q** **Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?**

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- The exterior lights are left on.
- The Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

Models without smart entry system

- The key is left in the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.

**Q** Models with walk away auto lock®
**Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?**

**A** The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto lock operating range before the door completely closes.
►Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock®) P. 144

**Q** **Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?**

**A** The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

**Q** **Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?**

**A** Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

**Q** **Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?**

**A**
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in P or N. If so, select any other position.

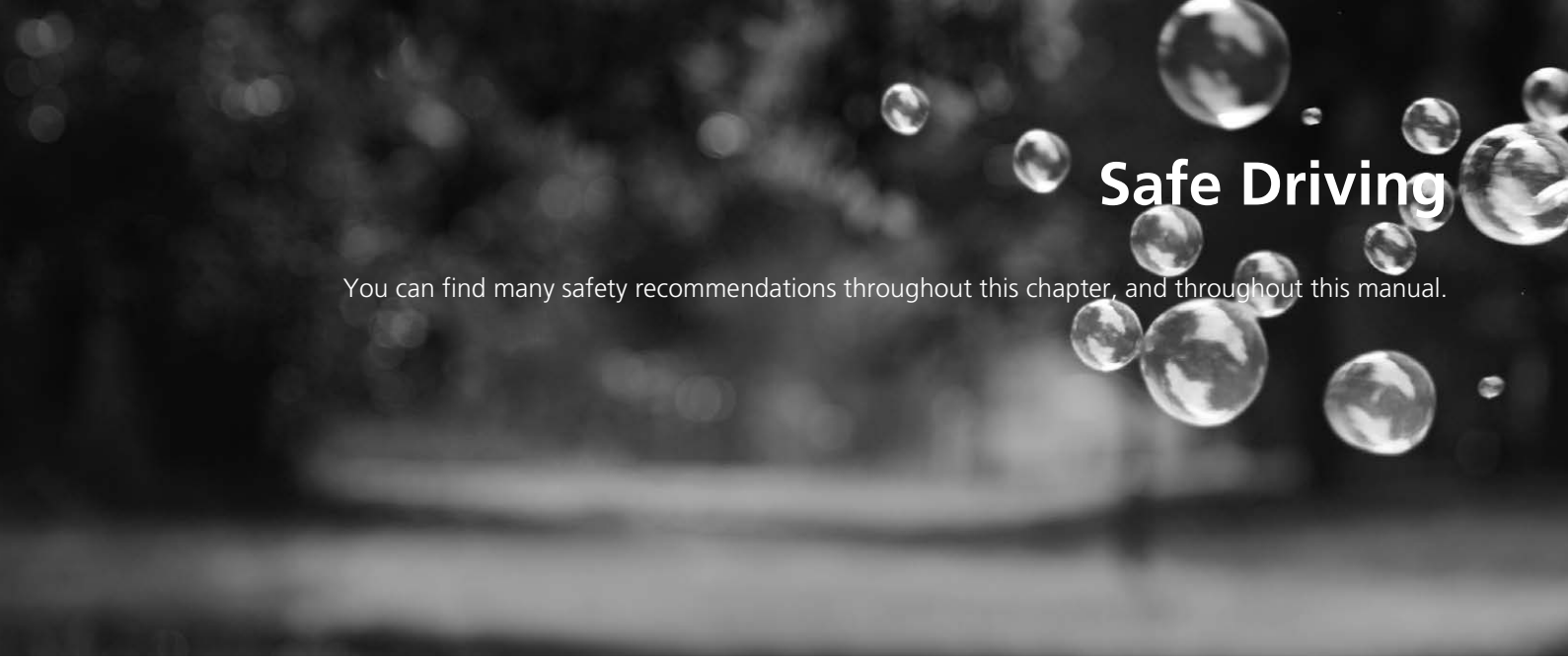
**Q** **Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**

**A** The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

**Q** **I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tire with an exclamation point. What is that?**

**A** The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tire, you have to recalibrate the system.

▶Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 528



# Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.


**For Safe Driving**
- Important Safety Precautions ..... 36
- Important Handling Information ..... 38
- Your Vehicle's Safety Features ..... 39
- Safety Checklist ..... 40

**Seat Belts**
- About Your Seat Belts ..... 41
- Fastening a Seat Belt ..... 45
- Seat Belt Inspection ..... 49

**Airbags**
- Airbag System Components ..... 50
- Types of Airbags ..... 53
- Front Airbags (SRS) ..... 53
- Side Airbags ..... 58
- Side Curtain Airbags ..... 60
- Airbag System Indicators ..... 62
- Airbag Care ..... 65

**Child Safety**
- Protecting Child Passengers ..... 66
- Safety of Infants and Small Children ..... 68
- Safety of Larger Children ..... 78

**Exhaust Gas Hazard**
- Carbon Monoxide Gas ..... 80

**Safety Labels**
- Label Locations ..... 81

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

## Important Safety Precautions

**■ Always wear your seat belt**

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

**■ Restrain all children**

Children ages 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

**■ Be aware of airbag hazards**

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

**■ Don't drink and drive**

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Important Safety Precautions

Some states, provinces and territories prohibit the use of cell phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ **Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in cell phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ **Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ **Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ **Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle**

Children, pets and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

# Important Handling Information

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-highway driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a higher center gravity making it more susceptible to tipping or roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

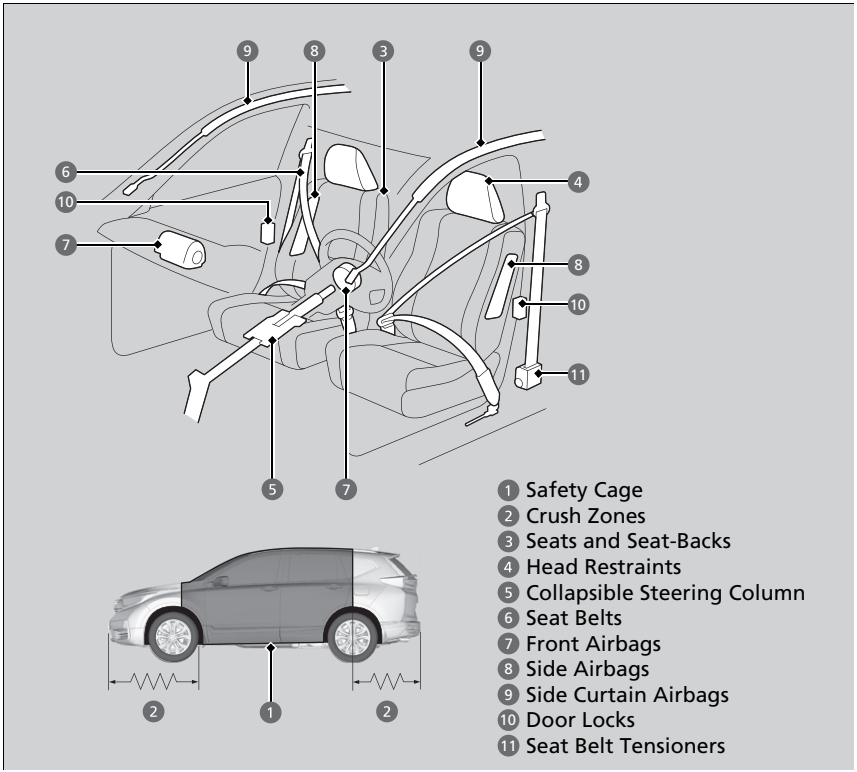
Important Handling Information

For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read:

**Precautions While Driving** P. 478
**Off-Highway Driving Guidelines** P. 469

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

# Your Vehicle's Safety Features




The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

## Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

# Safety Checklist

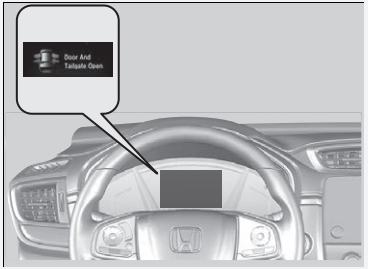
For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure all doors and the tailgate are closed and locked. Locking the doors and the tailgate helps prevent an occupant from being ejected and an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door or the tailgate.
  ➡ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 151
- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 203
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the center of the head restraint aligns with the center of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 209
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 45
- Protect children by using seat belts or child seats according to a child's age, height and weight.
  ➡ **Child Safety** P. 66

Safety Checklist

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.

➡ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 103



## About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

### ■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.
The front passenger's and rear seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child seats.

➢ **Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 74

About Your Seat Belts

**⚠WARNING**

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most states and all Canadian provinces and territories require you to wear seat belts.

*Continued*

### ■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

About Your Seat Belts

If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

## Seat Belt Reminder

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.
If the ignition switch is turned to ON II*1 and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the ignition switch is turned to ON II*1.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.
The indicator also may not come on and the beeper may not sound when the occupant is not heavy enough to trigger the weight sensor. Such occupants (e.g., infants and smaller children) should be moved to the rear seat as a deploying front airbag likely will injure or kill them.

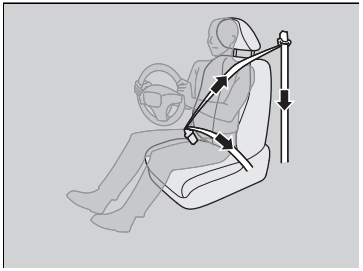
**Protecting Child Passengers** P. 66

*Continued*

## ■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

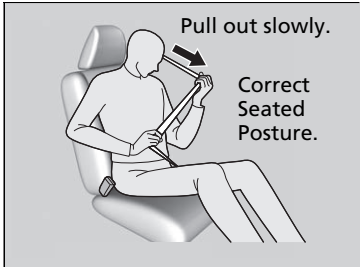
The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

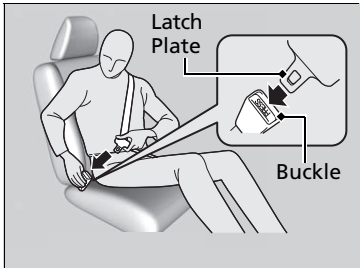
# Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

**Adjusting the Seats** P. 203




**1.** Pull the seat belt out slowly.




**2.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

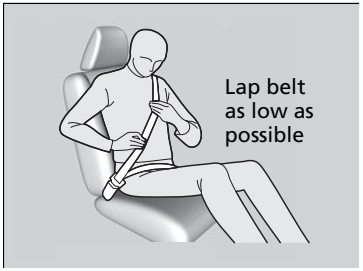
Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.
Then smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

**About Your Seat Belts** P. 41
**Seat Belt Inspection** P. 49



*Continued*

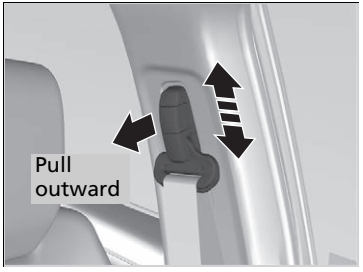



**3.** Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

**4.** If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

## ■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.




**1.** Move the anchor up and down while pulling the shoulder anchor outward.

**2.** Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.

### Fastening a Seat Belt

**⚠WARNING**

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

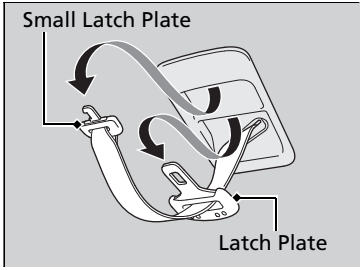
To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

### Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

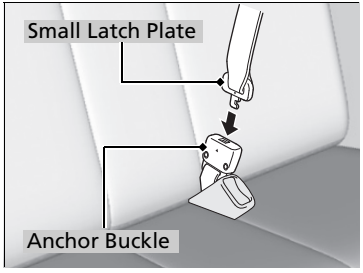
The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

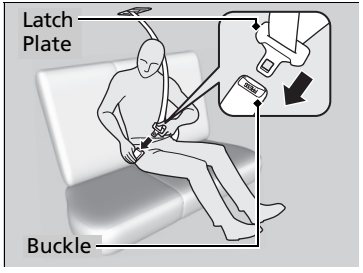
## Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor




**1.** Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.




**2.** Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchor buckle.




**3.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

Continued

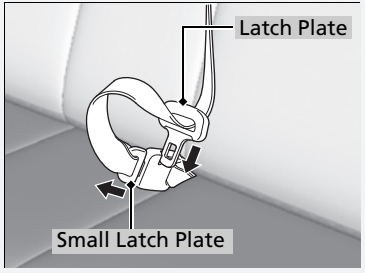
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor

**⚠WARNING**

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.



## ■ Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.

Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

## Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

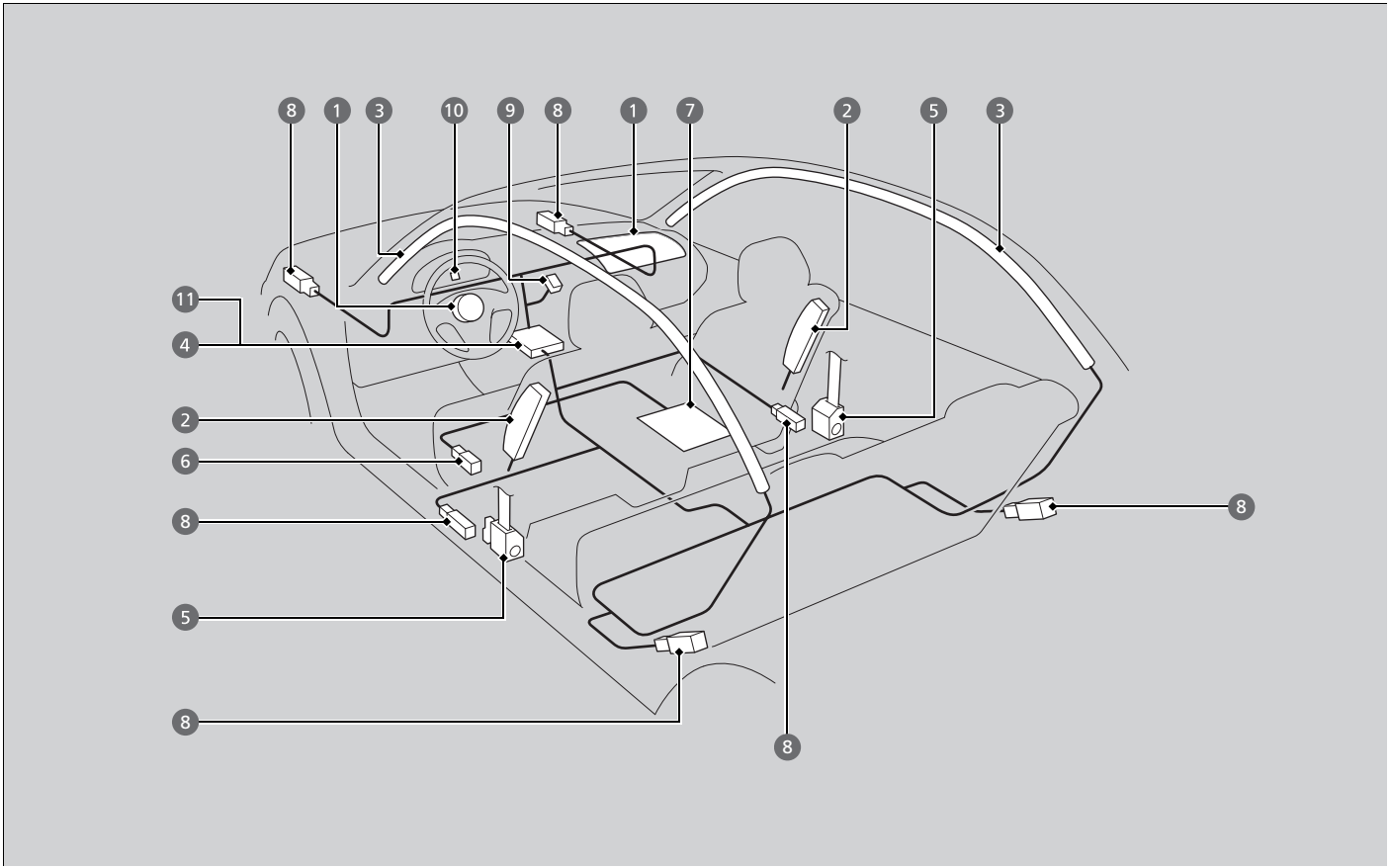
Seat Belt Inspection

**⚠WARNING**

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

## Airbag System Components



The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. Both side curtain airbags are deployed in a rollover. The airbag system includes:

❶ Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

❷ Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

❸ Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

❹ An electronic control unit that, when the vehicle is on, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, rollover sensor, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.

❺ Automatic front seat belt tensioners. In addition, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt buckles incorporate sensors that detect whether or not the belts are fastened.

❻ Driver’s seat position sensor. This sensor detects the driver’s seat slide position to help determine the optimal deployment of the driver’s airbag.

❼ Weight sensors in the front passenger’s seat. The sensors are used for occupant classification to activate or deactivate the front passenger’s airbag.

❽ Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.

❾ An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the front passenger's front airbag has been turned off.

❿ An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

⓫ A rollover sensor that can detect if your vehicle is about to roll over and signal the control unit to deploy both side curtain airbags.

*Continued*

## Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

**Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

# Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:
- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

# Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

**SRS** (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

## ■ Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the center of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

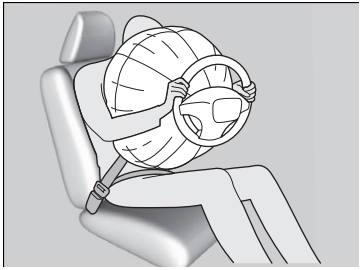
*Continued*

## ■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

## ■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

How the Front Airbags Work

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

■ **When front airbags should not deploy**

**Minor frontal crashes:** Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

**Side impacts:** Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move toward the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move toward the side of the vehicle.

**Rear impacts:** Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

**Rollovers:** In a rollover, your best form of protection is a seatbelt or, if your vehicle is equipped with a rollover sensor, both a seatbelt and a side curtain airbag. Front airbags, however, are not designed to deploy in a rollover as they would provide little if any protection.

■ **When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage**

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

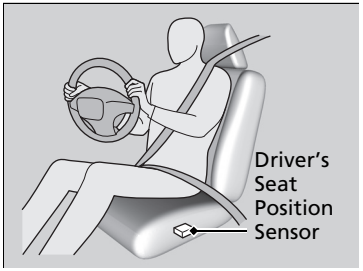
■ **When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe**

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

*Continued*

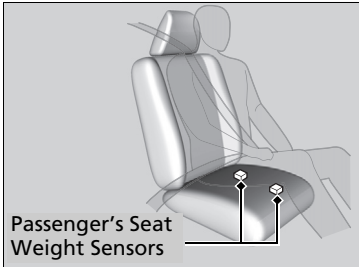
## ■ Advanced Airbags

The airbags have advanced features to help reduce the likelihood of airbag related injuries to smaller occupants.




The driver's advanced airbag system includes a seat position sensor.

Based on information from this sensor and the severity of the impact, the advanced airbag system determines the optimal deployment of the driver's airbag.




The front passenger's advanced airbag system has weight sensors. The sensors are used for occupant classification to activate or deactivate the front passenger's airbag.

For adult size occupants, the system will automatically activate the front passenger's airbag. If a small adult sits in the front passenger seat and the system does not recognize him/her as an adult, see

➡ **Passenger Airbag Off Indicator** P. 63

### Advanced Airbags

If there is a problem with the driver's seat position sensor or the passenger's seat weight sensors, the SRS indicator will come on, and in the event of a crash, the airbag will deploy (regardless of the driver's seating position or passenger's occupant classification) with a force corresponding to the severity of the impact.

➡ **Airbag System Indicators** P. 62

For the advanced front airbags to work properly, confirm that:

- The occupant is sitting in an upright position, wearing the seat belt properly and the seat back is not excessively reclined.
- The occupant is not leaning against the door or center console.
- The occupant's feet are placed on the floor in front of them.
- There are no objects hanging from the front passenger's seat.
- Only small, lightweight objects are in the seat back pocket.
- The steering wheel and passenger's side dashboard are not obstructed by any object.
- No liquid has been spilled on or under the seat.
- There is no child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat or seat back.
- There is no rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.

We advise against allowing a child age 12 or under to ride in the front passenger's seat. However, if you do allow a small child or infant to ride in the front passenger's seat, the system is designed to automatically deactivate the front passenger's airbag. Do not let a small child or infant ride in the front passenger's seat if the airbag does not automatically deactivate.

Advanced Airbags

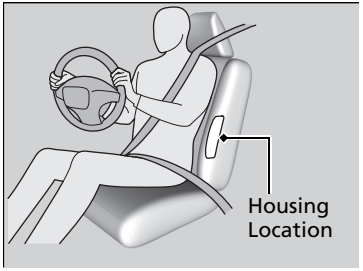
- There are no objects placed under or beside the front passenger's seat. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- The head restraint is not contacting the roof.
  ➔ **Passenger Airbag Off Indicator** P. 63
- The floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is set in the correct position evenly on the floor. An improperly placed mat can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
  ➔ **Floor Mats** P. 611

# Side Airbags

The side airbags help protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.



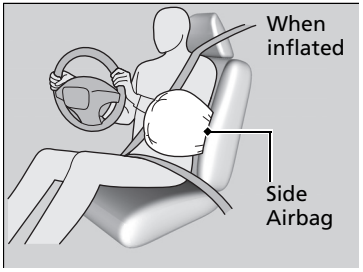
## ■ Housing Locations




The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

## ■ Operation




When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

### Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the airbag may not deploy when there is no passenger in the front passenger seat.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

### ■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

### ■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

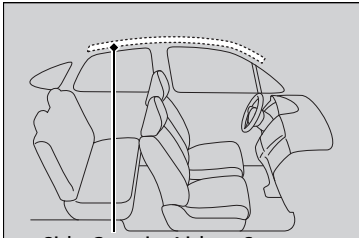
It is possible for a side airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was toward the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

# Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help protect the heads of the driver and passengers in the outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact. The side curtain airbags equipped in this vehicle are also designed to help reduce the likelihood of partial and complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in crashes, particularly rollover crashes.



## ■ Housing Locations



Side Curtain Airbag Storage

The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

### Side Curtain Airbags

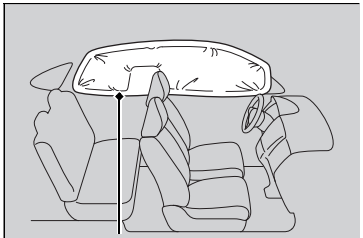
To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts properly and sit upright and well back in their seats.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

If the SRS control unit senses that your vehicle is about to rollover, it immediately deploys both side curtain airbags and activates both front seat belt tensioners.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag deploys even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

## ■ Operation


Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a rollover or a moderate-to-severe side impact.

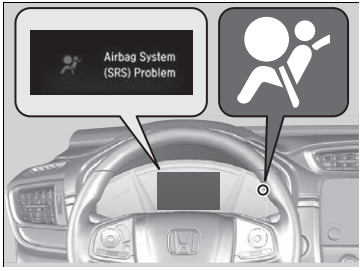
### ■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

# Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

## ■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator




### ■ When the ignition switch is turned to ON II*1

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

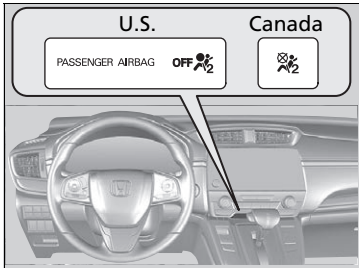
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

**⚠WARNING**

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

## ■ Passenger Airbag Off Indicator




### ■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator comes on to alert you that the passenger's airbag has been turned off.

This occurs if the seat is empty or when the weight sensors determine that a small child or infant is on the passenger seat.

Children age 12 or under should always ride properly restrained in a back seat.

➡ **Child Safety** P. 66

If the indicator is on in the event of a crash, the passenger's airbag will not deploy.

Passenger Airbag Off Indicator

To ensure the passenger is detected properly, confirm that:

- The occupant is sitting in an upright position, wearing the seat belt properly and the seat back is not excessively reclined.
- The occupant is not leaning against the door or center console.
- The occupant's feet are placed on the floor in front of them.
- There are no objects hanging from the front passenger's seat.
- Only small, lightweight objects are in the seat back pocket.
- No liquid has been spilled on or under the seat.
- There is no child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat or seat back.
- There is no rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- There are no objects placed under or beside the front passenger's seat. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- The floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is set in the correct position evenly on the floor. An improperly placed mat can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- The head restraint is not contacting the roof.

*Continued*

### Passenger Airbag Off Indicator

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and go off periodically if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold. For a small adult, depending on physique and posture, the system may not recognize him/her as an adult and thus deactivate the front passenger's airbag.
If this occurs, please confirm that the conditions set forth in the above bullet points on the previous page are met.
If the above conditions are met and the indicator is still on, then with the transmission in park, turn the ignition off and back on.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if:

- All of the above conditions are met, and the indicator comes on with an adult seated in the front passenger seat.
- The seat is empty and the indicator is off.

Do not allow an adult passenger to ride in the front seat when the indicator is on.

# Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

**■ When the airbags have deployed**

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

**■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision**

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the driver's seat position sensor, weight sensors in the passenger's seat, front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

**■ Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting a dealer**

This would likely disable or affect the proper operation of the driver's seat position sensor or the weight sensors in the passenger's seat. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact a Honda dealer, or for U.S. vehicles, American Honda Automobile Customer Service at 1-800-999-1009 and for Canadian vehicles, Honda Canada Customer Relations at 1-888-9-HONDA-9.

Airbag Care

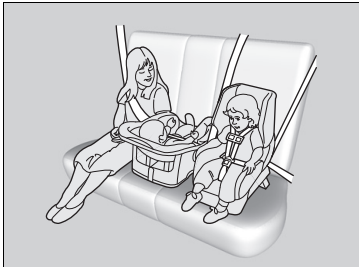
We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

## Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children ages 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state, Canadian province and territory requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

**Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat.** This is because:



- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

**⚠WARNING**

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in a rear seat. Some states or provinces/territories have laws restricting where children may ride.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt correctly must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle using either the seat belt or the lower anchors of the LATCH system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

Protecting Child Passengers

**⚠WARNING**

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle warning came with a label on the dashboard (U.S. models) and has labels on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

**Safety Labels** P. 81

# Safety of Infants and Small Children



## ■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child seat until the infant reaches the seat manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.

### ■ Positioning a rear-facing child seat

Child seats must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position. Make sure that there is no contact between the child seat and the seat in front of it.

It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

➡ **Airbags** P. 50

If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

Protecting Infants

**⚠WARNING**

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a crash.

Always place a rear-facing child seat in the rear seat, not the front.

Experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat for a child so long as the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.

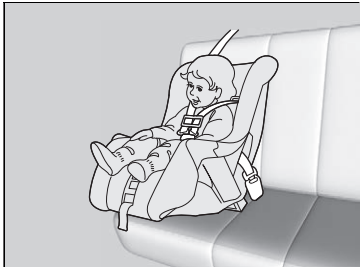
Infants should never be seated in a forward-facing position.

Always refer to the child seat manufacturer's instructions before installation.

Do not allow a front seat to rest against a child seat installed in a rear seating position:
The weight sensor in the front seat may not correctly detect the actual weight of the occupant.

## ■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child seat, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured forward-facing child seat until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the forward-facing child seat.



**■ Forward-facing child seat placement**

We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can be hazardous, even with advanced front airbags that automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Protecting Smaller Children

**⚠WARNING**

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child seat use where you are driving, and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.

*Continued*

## ■ Selecting a Child Seat

Most child seats are LATCH-compatible (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children). Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child seats can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child seat manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child seats are required to be designed so that they can be secured with a lap belt or the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt. In addition, the child seat manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach a LATCH-compatible seat once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child seat owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

### ■ Important consideration when selecting a child seat

Make sure the child seat meets the following three requirements:

- The child seat is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child seat is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child seat is compliant with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.

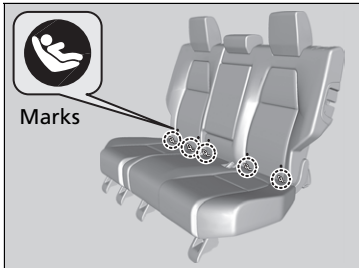
Selecting a Child Seat

Installation of a LATCH-compatible child seat is simple.

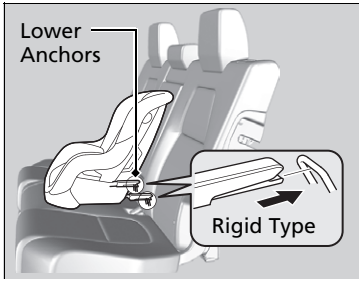
LATCH-compatible child seats have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

## ■ Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

A LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed in any rear seat. A child seat is attached to the lower anchors with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



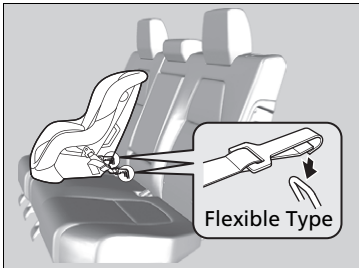

**1.** Locate the lower anchors under the marks.

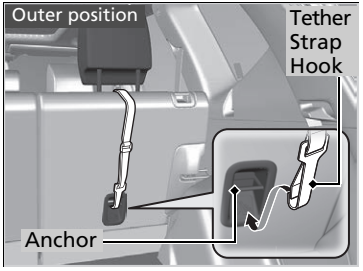



**2.** Place the child seat on the vehicle seat, then attach the child seat to the lower anchors according to the instructions that came with the child seat.

▶ When installing the child seat, make sure that the lower anchors are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

*Continued*

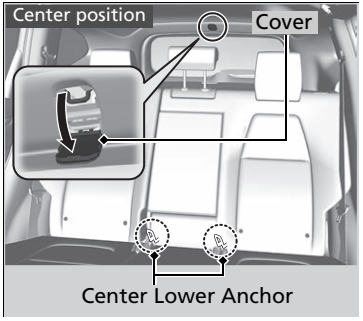



**Outer position**

**3.** Put the head restraint to its upper-most position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.

**4.** Go to step 7.




**Center position**

**3.** Put the head restraint to its upper-most position.

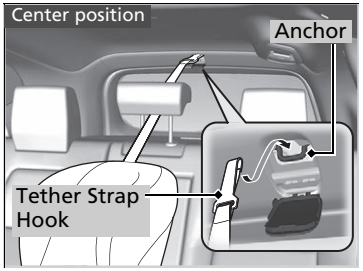
**4.** Open the anchor cover.

Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

**⚠WARNING**

Never attach two child seats to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

For your child's safety, when using a child seat installed using the LATCH system, make sure that the child seat is properly secured to the vehicle. A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.




**5.** Route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

**6.** Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.

All models

**7.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.

**8.** Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.

**9.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

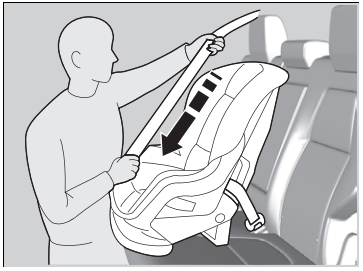


*Continued*

## ■ Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat can be installed with a lap/shoulder belt in any rear seat or, if absolutely necessary, the front passenger seat.

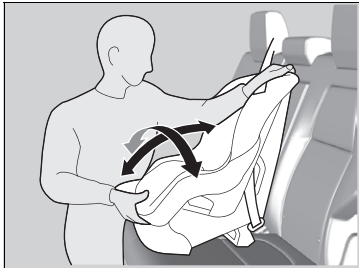
**1.** Place the child seat on the vehicle seat.
**2.** Route the seat belt through the child seat according to the seat manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.



**3.** Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
**4.** Let the seat belt if it is completely retracted it unlocks wind up into the retractor, then try to pull it out to make sure the retractor is locked.
▶ If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 3 – 4.

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.



**5.** Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child seat and push it into the vehicle seat.

**6.** Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; less than one inch of movement should occur near the seat belt.

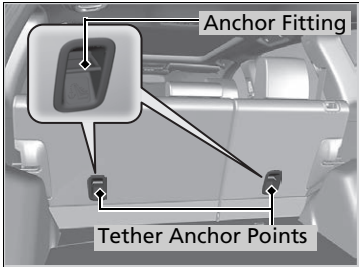
**7.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

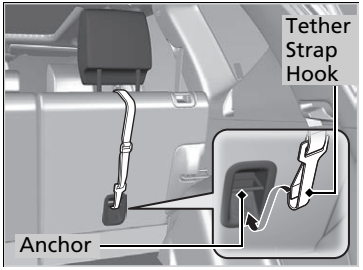
To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

*Continued*

## ■ Adding Security with a Tether

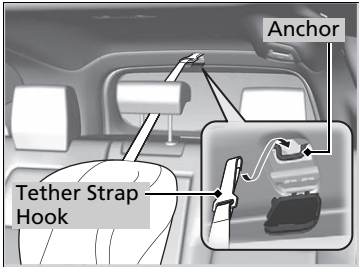



A tether anchor point is provided behind each rear seating position.
If you have a child seat that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.




### ■ Using an outer anchor

1. Put the head restraint to its upper-most position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs.
   Make sure the strap is not twisted.
2. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
3. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.




### ■ Using the center anchor

1. Put the head restraint to its upper-most position.
2. Open the anchor cover.
3. Route the tether strap through the head restraint legs.
   Make sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.

**Adding Security with a Tether**

Always use a tether for forward facing child seats whether using the seat belt or lower anchors.

**5.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.

# Safety of Larger Children

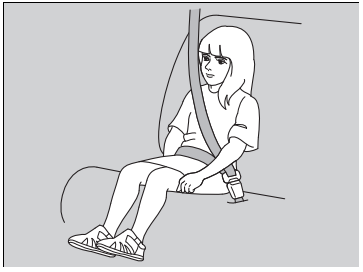


## ■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

## ■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child seat, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



### ■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

**⚠WARNING**

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

## Booster Seats

If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.

## Protecting Larger Children-Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

### Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.
There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

Some U.S. states, and Canadian provinces and territories require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g. 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the state or province, or territory where you intend to drive.

## Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ **Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever**
- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

**1.** Select the fresh air mode.
**2.** Select the mode.
**3.** Set the fan speed to high.
**4.** Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

**⚠WARNING**

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

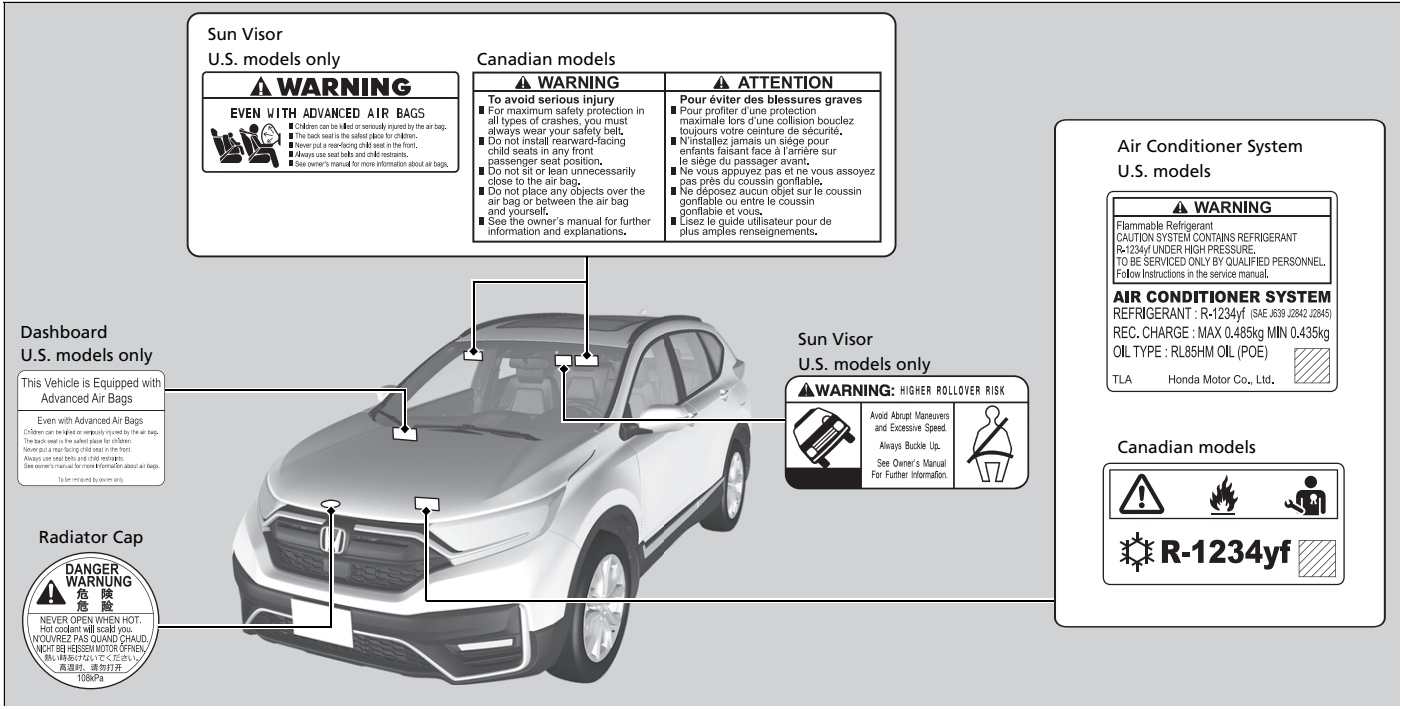
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

## Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

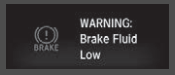
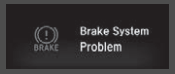
If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact a dealer for a replacement.



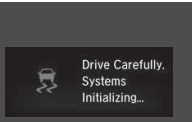
# Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

**Indicators**
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages..... 103
**Gauges and Displays**
Gauges..... 118
Driver Information Interface..... 119

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| U.S.<br>BRAKE<br>Canada<br>(Red) | Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off if the parking brake has been released.<br>• Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.<br>• Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.<br>• Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.<br>• The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.<br>• Comes on for about 15 seconds when you pull the electric parking brake switch while the ignition switch is in LOCK 0*1.<br>• Stays on for about 15 seconds when you turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 while the electric parking brake is set. | • **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level.<br>➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 637<br>• **Comes on along with the brake system indicator (amber)** - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do.<br>• **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks** P. 637<br>• **Blinks and the brake system indicator (amber) comes on at the same time** - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set.<br>Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.<br>➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 638 | <br>  <br>  |

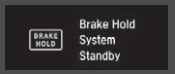
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| U.S.<br>BRAKE SYSTEM<br>Canada<br>(Amber) | Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off.<br>• Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.<br>• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system or the automatic brake hold system. | • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>• **Comes on while driving** - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. | |
| | | • Comes on if the parking brake and brake system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. | • Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |  |

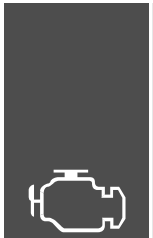
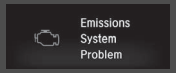
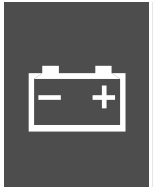
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



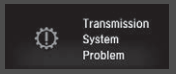
*Continued*

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| U.S.<br>BRAKE SYSTEM<br>Canada<br> <br>(Amber) | Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) | • Comes on if there is a problem with the radar sensor.<br>• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. | • Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit.<br>➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 461<br>• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. | — |
| | Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off.<br>• Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on. | ➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 538 |  |
| U.S.<br> <br>Canada<br> | Automatic Brake Hold Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off.<br>• Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated. | ➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 538 | — |

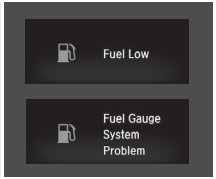
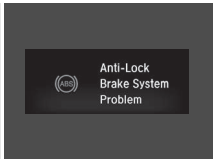
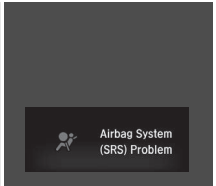
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Low Oil Pressure Indicator | • Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1, and goes off when the engine starts.<br>• Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low. | • **Comes on while driving** - Immediately stop in a safe place.<br>➡ **If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On** P. 635 | |
|  | Malfunction Indicator Lamp | • Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1, and goes off when the engine starts, or after several seconds if the engine did not start. If "readiness codes" have not been set, it blinks five times before it goes off.<br>• Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control system.<br>• Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected. | • Readiness codes are part of the on board diagnostics for the emissions control systems.<br>➡ **Testing of Readiness Codes** P. 655<br>• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>• **Blinks while driving** - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take your vehicle to a dealer.<br>➡ **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 636 |  |
|  | Charging System Indicator | • Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1, and goes off when the engine starts.<br>• Comes on when the battery is not charging. | • **Comes on while driving** - Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger in order to reduce electricity consumption.<br>➡ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 635 | |

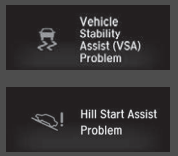
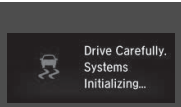
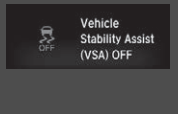
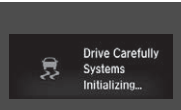
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Shift Lever Position Indicator | • Indicates the current shift lever position. | ➡ **Shifting** P. 480 | — |
| | Transmission System Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off.<br>• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem. | • **Blinks while driving** - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. |  |
| | Seat Belt Reminder Indicator | • Comes on and the beeper sounds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.<br>• If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later.<br>• Blinks while driving if either you or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. | • The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts.<br>• **Stays on after you or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 43 | <br> |

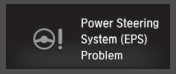
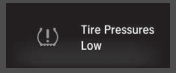
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Low Fuel Indicator | • Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 2.1 U.S. gal/8.0 liter left).<br>• Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge. | • **Comes on** - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.<br>• **Blinks** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |  |
| | Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off.<br>• If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS. | • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.<br>**Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 540 |  |
| | Supplemental Restraint System Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off.<br>• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected:<br>- Supplemental restraint system<br>- Side airbag system<br>- Side curtain airbag system<br>- Seat belt tensioner | • **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |  |

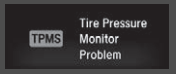
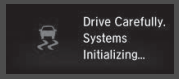
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off.<br>• Blinks when VSA® is active.<br>• Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA® system or hill start assist system. | • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>➡ **Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System** P. 519 |  |
| | | • Comes on if the VSA® system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. | • Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |  |
| | Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) **OFF** Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off.<br>• Comes on when you partially disable VSA®. | ➡ **VSA® On and Off** P. 520 |  |
| | | • Comes on if the VSA® system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. | • Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |  |

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator | • Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, and goes off when the engine starts.<br>• Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system. | • **Stays on constantly or does not come on at all** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>➡ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 639 |  |
| | Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off.<br>• May come on briefly if the ignition switch is turned to ON II*1 and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete.<br>• Comes on and stays on when:<br>- One or more tires' pressures are determined to be significantly low.<br>- The system has not been calibrated. | • **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tire pressures, and inflate the tire(s) if necessary.<br>• **Stays on after the tires are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be calibrated.<br>➡ **TPMS Calibration** P. 529 |  |

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator | • Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS, or when a compact spare tire is temporarily installed. | • **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare, get your regular tire repaired or replaced, and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can. |  |
| | | • Comes on if the TPMS is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. | • Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |  |
| | System Message Indicator | • Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time. | • While the indicator is on, press the (display/information) button to see the message again.<br>• Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message.<br>• The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is canceled, or the button is pressed. | — |

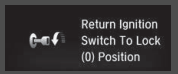
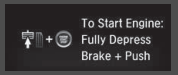
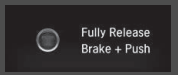
| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators | • Blink when you operate the turn signal lever.<br>• Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button. | • **Does not blink or blinks rapidly**<br>➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 589 | — |
| | High Beam Indicator | • Comes on when the high beam headlights are on. | — | — |
| | Auto High-beam System Indicator | • Comes on when all the operating conditions of the Auto high-beam system are met. | ➡ **Auto High-Beam** P. 186 | — |
| | Lights On Indicator | • Comes on when the light switch in a position other than OFF or when the switch is set to **AUTO** and the exterior lights come on. | • If you remove the key from the ignition switch*1 while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened. | — |
| | Fog Light Indicator* | • Comes on when the fog lights are on. | — | — |

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



* Not available on all models

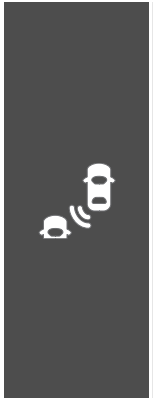
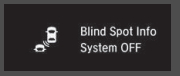
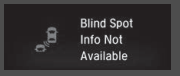
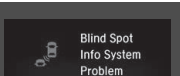
*Continued*

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Immobilizer System Indicator | • Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information. | • **Blinks** - You cannot start the engine. Depress the brake pedal, then turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0 *1. Pull the key out*2, and then insert the key and turn it to ON II *1 again.<br>• **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>• Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur. | Models without smart entry system<br> <br>  <br>Models with smart entry system<br>  <br>   |
| | Security System Alarm Indicator | • Blinks when the security system alarm has been set. | **Security System Alarm*** P. 165 | — |

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2:Canadian models only: Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the ignition on.



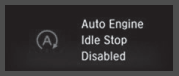
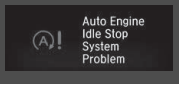
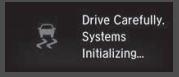
* Not available on all models

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
|  | Blind spot information System Indicator* | • Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.<br>• Stays on while blind spot information system is turned off. | — |  |
| | | • Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of sensor. | • **Comes on while driving** - Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of sensor.<br>➡ **Blind spot information System*** P. 522 |  |
| | | • Comes on if there is a problem with the system. | • **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |  |
| | ECON Mode Indicator | • Comes on when you press the **ECON** button. | ➡ **ECON Button** P. 488 | |
| | Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green) | • Comes on when Auto Idle Stop is in operation. The engine automatically shuts off. | ➡ **Auto Idle Stop** P. 482 | — |

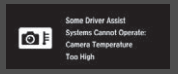


* Not available on all models

*Continued*

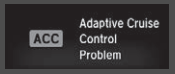
| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber) | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off. | — | — |
| | | • Comes on when Auto Idle Stop system has been turned off by the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button. | **Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF** P. 483 |  |
| | | • Blinks if there is a problem with the Auto Idle Stop system. | • **Blinks** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |  |
| | Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off.<br>• Comes on if there is a problem with the RDM system. | • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. | |
| | | • Comes on if the RDM is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. | • Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |  |

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

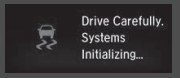
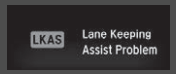
| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator | • Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off. | • Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as a tunnel.<br>• The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned.<br>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover.<br>➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 542 | |
| | | • Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off. | • **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high.<br>Use the climate control system to cool down the camera.<br>The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.<br>➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 489 |  |



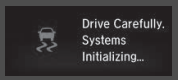
*Continued*

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) Indicator | • Comes on when the RDM system shuts itself off. | • **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.<br>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.<br>➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 489 | |
| | | • Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. | • Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit.<br>➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 461<br>• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. | — |
| ACC | Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber) | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off.<br>• Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow. | • **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |  |

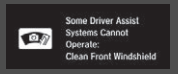
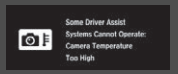
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ACC | Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber) | • Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. | • Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |  |
| | | • Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.<br>• ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically canceled. | • Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit.<br>➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 461<br>• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. | — |
| ACC | Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Green) | • Comes on when you press the **MAIN** button. | ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 | — |
| LKAS | Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Amber) | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II *1, then goes off.<br>• Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS. | • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |  |

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| LKAS | Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Green) | • Comes on when you press the **MAIN** button. | ➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 511 | — |
| | Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator | • Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, then goes off.<br>• Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS™. A driver information interface message appears for five seconds.<br>• Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS™. | • **Stays on constantly without the CMBS™ off** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>➔ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 542 | <br> |
| | | • Comes on if the CMBS™ is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected. | • Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |  |

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator | • Comes on when the CMBS™ shuts itself off. | • **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.<br>➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 489<br>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the camera. |  |
| | | | • Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as a tunnel.<br>• The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned.<br>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover.<br>➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 542 | |
| | | | • **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.<br>➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 489 |  |

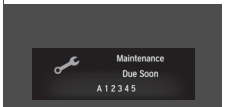
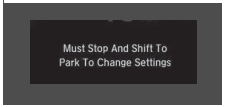


*Continued*

| Indicator | Name | On/Blinking | Explanation | Message |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) Indicator | • Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. | • Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit.<br>➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 461<br>• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. | — |

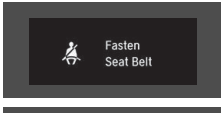
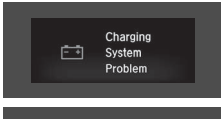
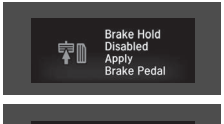
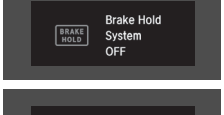
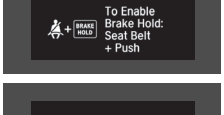
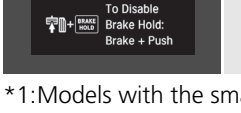
# Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

The following messages appear only on the driver information interface. Press the (display/information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

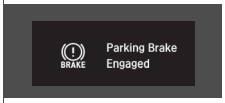
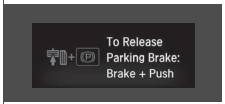
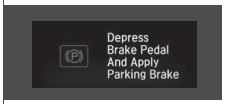
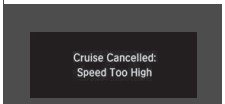
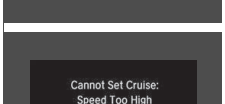
| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| | • Appears if any door or the tailgate is not completely closed.<br>• Appears if any door or the tailgate is opened while driving. The beeper sounds. | • Goes off when all doors and the tailgate are closed. |
| | • Appears if there is a problem with the shutter grille, and the radiator coolant temperature is too high. | • Power output will be reduced, so you may not be able to accelerate or maintain your current speed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
| Canadian models<br> | • Appears when the washer fluid gets low. | • Refill the washer fluid.<br>➡ **Refilling Window Washer Fluid** P. 586 |
|  | • Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon.<br>• Consequently, **Maintenance Due Now** and **Maintenance Past Due** follow. | ➡ **Maintenance Minder Messages on the Driver Information Interface** P. 571 |
|  | Models with color audio system<br>• Appears while you are customizing the settings and the transmission is in other than P. | ➡ **Customized Features** P. 127 |



*Continued*

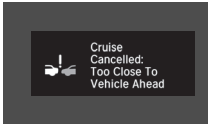
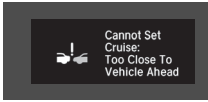
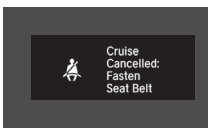
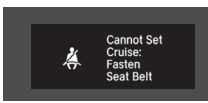
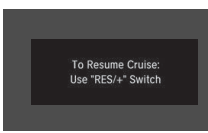
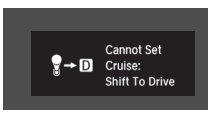
| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| | • Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high. | ➔ **Overheating** P. 633 |
|  | • Appears when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1 without fastening the driver's seat belt. | • Fasten the seat belt properly before you start to drive. |
|  | • Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery. | • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>➔ **Checking the Battery** P. 605 |
|  | • Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically canceled while it is in operation. | • Immediately depress the brake pedal. |
|  | • Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off. | ➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 538 |
|  | • Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver's seat belt. | • Fasten the driver's seat belt.<br>➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 538 |
|  | • Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation. | • Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.<br>➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 538 |

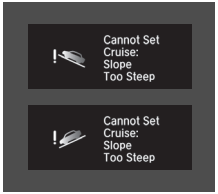
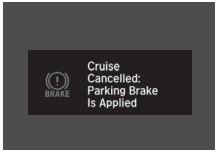
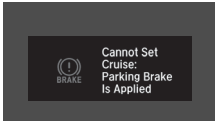
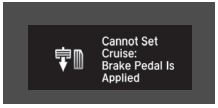
*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
|  | • Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while it is in operation. | ➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 538<br>➔ **Parking Brake** P. 534 |
|  | • Appears when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation. | • **Appears while driving** - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.<br>➔ **Parking Brake** P. 534 |
| | • Appears if there is something wrong with the vehicle while you are driving. | • Immediately stop in a safe place.<br>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
|  | • Appears if the shift position cannot be changed to P due to a problem with the vehicle. | • Apply the parking brake once you have stopped.<br>➔ **Parking Brake** P. 534<br>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
| | • Appears when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically canceled. | • You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC with Low Speed Follow to cancel improves. Press the **RES/+** button.<br>➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 |
|  | • Appears when ACC with Low Speed Follow is canceled due to excessive high vehicle speed. | • Reduce the speed, then reset ACC with Low Speed Follow.<br>➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 |
|  | • Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too high for you to set ACC with Low Speed Follow. | • Reduce the speed, then set ACC with Low Speed Follow.<br>➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 |



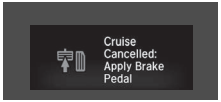
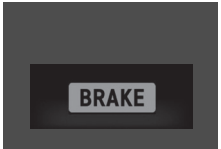
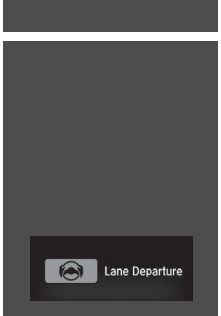
*Continued*

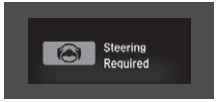
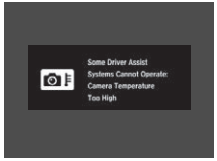
| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
|  | • Appears when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close while ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation. | • ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically canceled.<br>➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 |
|  | • Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close. | • ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot be set.<br>➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 |
|  | • Appears when the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow. | • ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically canceled.<br>➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 |
|  | • Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the driver's seat belt is unfastened. | • ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot be set.<br>➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 |
|  | • Appears when the vehicle in front of you starts moving while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow. | • Either press the **RES/+** button or **–/SET** button, or depress the accelerator pedal.<br>➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 |
| | • Appears when the shift lever is moved into any position other than [D] or [S] while ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation. | • ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically canceled.<br>➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 |
|  | • Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the shift lever is in any position other than [D] or [S]. | • ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot be set.<br>➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 |

| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| | • Appears when the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope while ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation. | • ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically canceled.<br>➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 |
|  | • Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope. | • ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot be set.<br>➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 |
|  | • Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation. | • ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically canceled.<br>➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491<br>➡ **Parking Brake** P. 534 |
|  | • Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the parking brake is applied. | • ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot be set.<br>➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491<br>➡ **Parking Brake** P. 534 |
|  | • Appears when pressing the **–/SET** button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed. | • ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot be set.<br>➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 |



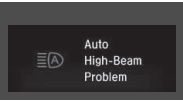
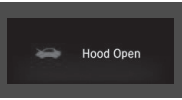
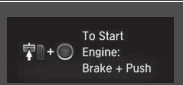
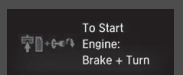
*Continued*

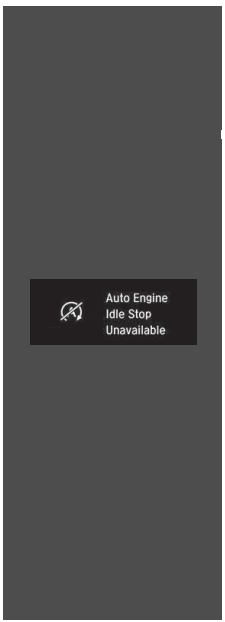
| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
|  | • Appears if ACC with Low Speed Follow is canceled while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow. | • Immediately depress the brake pedal. |
|  | • Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. | • Take the appropriate means to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)<br>➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 542<br>➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 491 |
|  | Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)<br>• Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected line. The steering wheel vibrates rapidly. | • Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving.<br>➡ **Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System** P. 507 |
| | Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System<br>• Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane.<br>When you selected **Warning Only**<br>- The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.<br>When you selected **Normal**, **Wide** or **Narrow**<br>- The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected line. The system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane. | • Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving.<br>➡ **Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System** P. 507<br>• You can change the setting for the road departure mitigation system. **Normal**, **Wide**, **Warning Only**, and **Narrow** can be selected.<br>➡ **Customized Features** P. 127, 366 |

| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| | Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System<br>When you selected **Narrow**<br>• Appears when the vehicle is likely to drive out of a detected lane.<br>The Road Departure Mitigation system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane. | — |
|  | • Blinks when you fail to steer the vehicle. The beeper sounds simultaneously. | • Operate the steering wheel to resume the LKAS. |
| | • Appears if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front.<br>• May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) | • When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. The message may take some time to go off.<br>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover.<br>➡ **Honda Sensing®** P. 28 |
|  | • Appears if the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high and some driver assist systems cannot be activated. | • Use the climate control system to cool down the camera.<br>• **Disappears** - The camera has been cooled down and the systems are activated normally.<br>➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 489<br>➡ **Auto High-Beam** P. 186 |



*Continued*

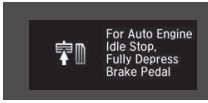
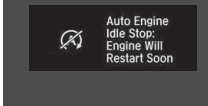
| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| | • Appears if the area around the front sensor camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. and be prevented from detecting a vehicle in front.<br>• May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) | • When the front window gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.<br>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you cleaned the area around the camera.<br>➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 489<br>➡ **Auto High-Beam** P. 186 |
|  | • Appears if there is a problem with the Auto high-beam system. | • Manually operate the headlight switch.<br>• If you are driving with the high-beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams. |
|  | • Appears when the hood is opened. | • Close the hood. |
| Models with smart entry system<br>  <br>Models without smart entry system<br>  | • Appears when the engine does not restart automatically due to the following reason:<br>• The hood is open.<br>• There is a problem in the system that disables Auto Idle Stop. | • Follow the normal procedure to start the engine.<br>➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 471, 473<br>• Close the hood. |

| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| | • Appears when the engine stops without the transmission in P, and does not restart automatically.<br>• Appears if you open the hood while Auto Idle Stop activates. | • If you want to turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, change the gear position to P.<br>• If you want to start the engine, follow the normal procedure.<br>➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 471, 473 |
|  | • Appears when **Auto Idle Stop Display ON*** or **Auto Engine Idle Stop Guidance Screens ON*** has been selected from the customization menu.<br>➡ **Customized Features** P. 127, 366 | ➡ **Auto Idle Stop** P. 482 |
| | • Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate for some reason.<br>• Appears when the engine restarts automatically.<br>• Appears when the battery temperature is around 41°F (5°C) or lower. | ➡ **Auto Idle Stop Activates When:** P. 484 |
| | • Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant. | |
| | • Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the engine coolant temperature is too low or high. | |
| | • Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the battery charge level is low.<br>• Appears when the battery is low performance. | |

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

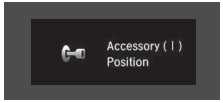
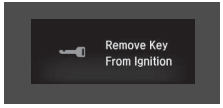
* Not available on all models

*Continued*

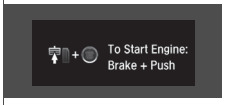
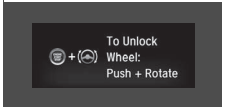
| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
|  | • Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the pressure to the brake pedal is not enough. | • Depress the brake pedal firmly. |
| | • Appears when **Auto Idle Stop Display ON*** or **Auto Engine Idle Stop Guidance Screens ON*** has been selected from the customization menu.<br>➡ **Customized Features** P. 127, 366 | ➡ **Auto Idle Stop** P. 482 |
|  | • Appears when the system is under the following conditions while Auto Idle Stop activates:<br>- The climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.<br>- The humidity in the interior is high.<br>- The battery charge level is low. | • The engine restarts automatically in a few seconds.<br>➡ **Auto Idle Stop** P. 482<br>➡ **The Engine Automatically Restarts When:** P. 486 |

 * Not available on all models

Models without smart entry system

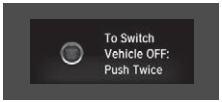
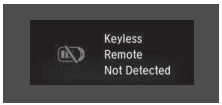
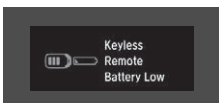
| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| | • Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in ACCESSORY I. | • Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0, then remove the key. |
|  | • Appears when the ignition key is turned to ACCESSORY I from ON II. (The driver's door is closed.) | — |
|  | • Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in LOCK 0. | • Remove the key from the ignition switch. |

Models with smart entry system

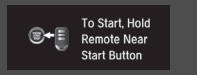
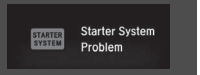
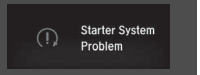
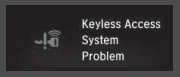
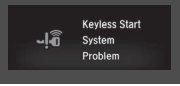
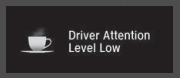
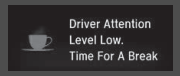
| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
|  | • Appears after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. | **Starting the Engine** P. 473 |
|  | • Appears when the steering wheel is locked. | • Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. |



*Continued*

| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| | • Appears if you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in P. | U.S. models<br>• Move the shift lever to P. The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.<br>Canadian models<br>• Move the shift lever to P, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice. |
| | • Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY. | — |
|  | • Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY. | • Change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.<br>➡ **ENGINE START/STOP Button*** P. 176 |
|  | • Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the smart entry remote inside the vehicle. | • Disappears when you bring the smart entry remote back inside the vehicle and close the door.<br>➡ **Smart Entry Remote Reminder** P. 178 |
|  | • Appears when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak. | • Replace the battery as soon as possible.<br>➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 607 |

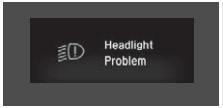
 * Not available on all models

| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
|  | • Appears if the smart entry remote battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine.<br>A beeper sounds six times. | • Bring the smart entry remote in front of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to be touched with.<br>➔ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 627 |
| U.S.<br>  <br>Canada<br>  | • Appears when the starter system has a problem. | • As a temporary measure, press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine.<br>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
|  <br>  | • Appears as soon as a problem is detected in the smart entry system or push button starting system. | • **Appears constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
|  <br>  | • Appears if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. | ➔ **Driver Attention Monitor** P. 122 |

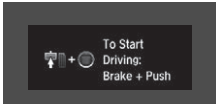


*Continued*

Models with LED headlight

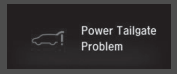
| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| | • Appears if there is a problem with the light control system. | • **Appears while driving** - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
|  | • Appears if there is a problem with the headlights. | • **Appears while driving** - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible. |

Models with remote engine starter

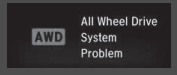
| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
|  | • Appears when you unlock and open the driver's door while the engine is running by remote engine start. | ➡ **Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback*** P. 475 |

 * Not available on all models

Models with power tailgate

| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
| U.S.<br> <br>Canada<br>  | • Appears when there is a problem with the power tailgate system. | • Manually open or close the power tailgate.<br>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |

Models with real time AWD with intelligent control system™

| Message | Condition | Explanation |
|---|---|---|
|  | • Appears if there is a problem with the real time AWD with intelligent control system™. | • The engine drives the front wheels only in this state. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. |
| | • Appears when the differential temperature is too high. | • Stop in a safe place, put the transmission into P, and idle the engine until the message disappears. If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>➡ **Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™*** P. 527 |



* Not available on all models

# Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.



## ■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in mph (U.S.) or km/h (Canada).

## ■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

## ■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

## ■ Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Gauges

Press the (display/information) button repeatedly until the icon is shown on the driver information interface. Press **ENTER**, then press and hold it again. The speedometer reading and the displayed measurements will switch between mph (U.S.) and km/h (Canada).

### Fuel Gauge

**NOTICE**

You should refuel when the reading approaches E. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

### Temperature Gauge

**NOTICE**

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

**Overheating** P. 633

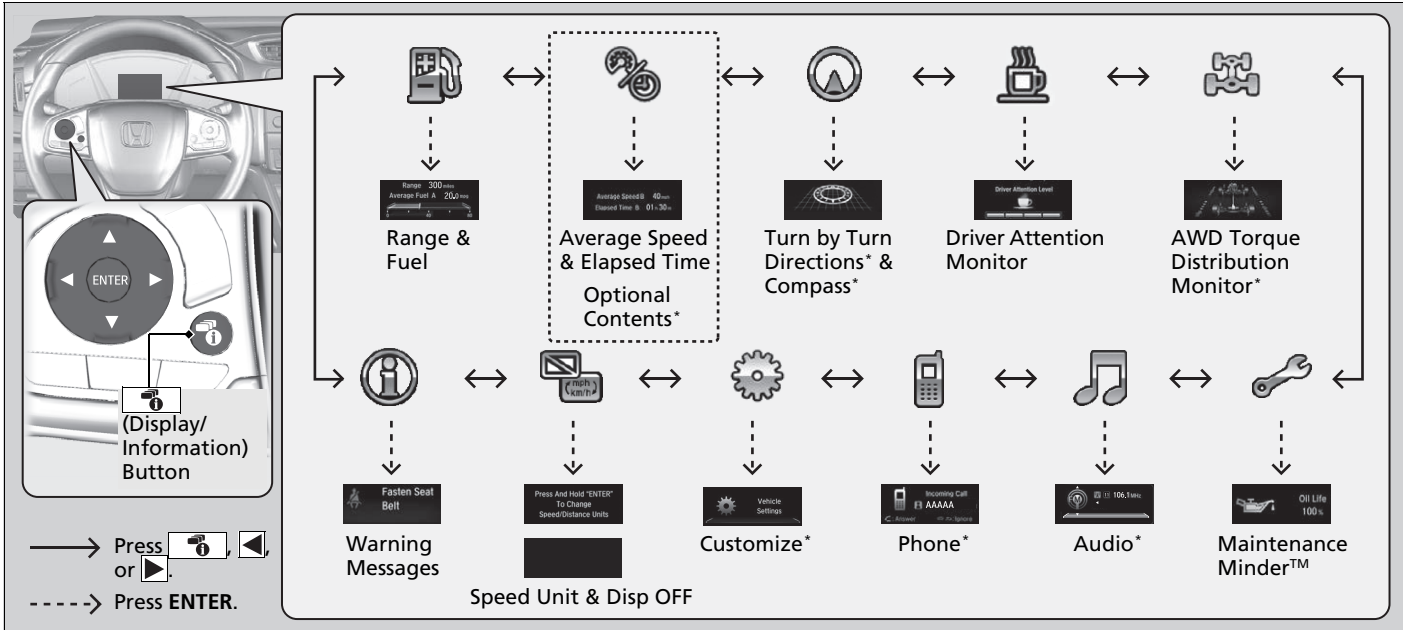
# Driver Information Interface

The driver information interface shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.
It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

## ■ Switching the Display

### ■ Main displays

Press the (display/information) button and press ◀ or ▶ to change the display. Press **ENTER** to see detailed information.

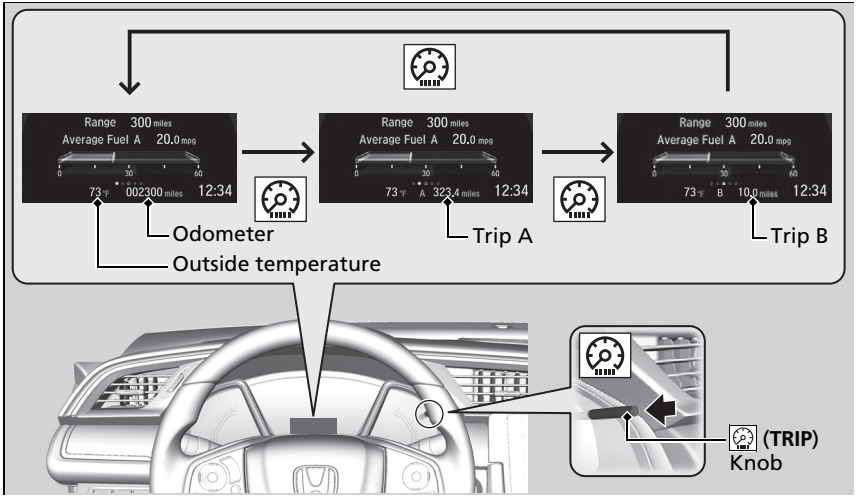



* Not available on all models

Continued

### ■ Trip computer

Press the (**TRIP**) knob to change the display.




## ■ Odometer

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) that your vehicle has accumulated.

## ■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the knob, or by using the customized features on the driver information interface or audio/information display.

**Customized Features** P. 127, 366

■ **Resetting a trip meter**
To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

## ■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in mpg or l/100 km. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

## ■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

## ■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

## ■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in mph (U.S.) or km/h (Canada) since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

## ■ Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.
➔ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 569

Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 127, 366

Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 127, 366

Average Speed

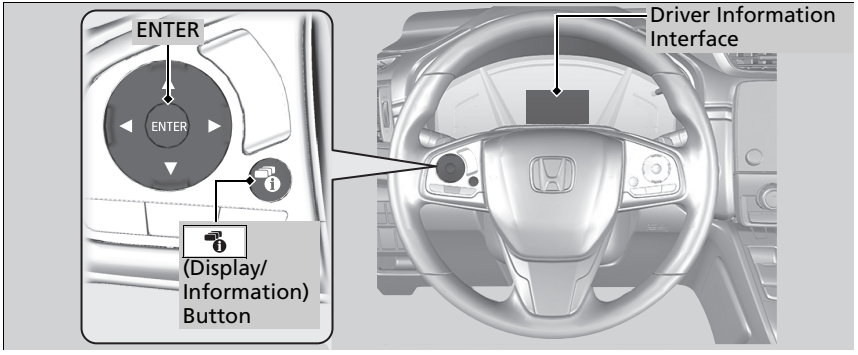
You can change when to reset the average speed.
➔ **Customized Features** P. 127, 366



*Continued*

## ■ Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyzes steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention in the Driver Information Interface.



Level

When the (display/information) button is pressed, bars in the Driver Information Interface light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

**Switching the Display** P. 119

### Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.
Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

If two bars light up, the **Driver Attention Level Low** message will appear.

If one bar lights up, the **Driver Attention Level Low. Time For A Break** message will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate.
If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.
The message will disappear when the **ENTER** button is pressed or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.
If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.
The message does not appear when the traveling time is 30 minutes or less.

### ■ The Driver Attention Monitor resets when

- the engine is turned off.
- the driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

*Continued*

■ **For the Driver Attention Monitor to function**

- the vehicle must be traveling above 25 mph (40 km/h).
- the electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ **Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances.**

- the steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active.
  **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 511
- the condition of the road is poor, e.g. the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- it is windy.
- the driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ **Customizing**

You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile And Audible Alert**, **Tactile Alert**, or **OFF**.

**Customized Features** P. 127, 366

For the Driver Attention Monitor to function

The bars in the Driver Information Interface remain grayed out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

## ■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

**■ Adjusting the outside temperature display**

Adjust the temperature reading up to ±5°F or ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Use the customized features in the driver information interface or audio/information screen to correct the temperature.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 127, 366

## ■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg or l/100 km.

## ■ AWD Torque Distribution Monitor*

The indicators on the display show the amount of torque being transferred to the right front, left front, right rear, and left rear wheels.

➡ **Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™*** P. 527

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Turn-by-Turn Directions*

Shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination linked with the navigation system.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

## ■ Audio*

Show the current audio information.

➡ **Audio System Basic Operation** P. 267

## ■ Phone*

Show the current phone information.

➡ ***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** P. 420

Turn-by-Turn Directions*

The driver information interface shows a compass when the route guidance is not used.

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 366

 * Not available on all models

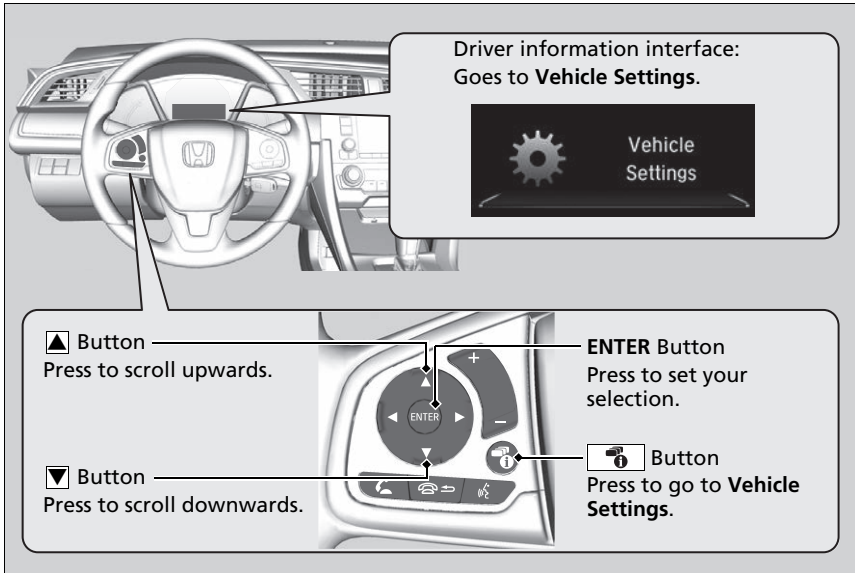
Models with color audio system

## ■ Customized Features

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

### ■ How to customize

Select the **Vehicle Settings** screen by pressing the [ ] button while the ignition switch is in ON [II], and the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift lever is in [P]. Select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **ENTER** button.




*Continued*

Customized Features

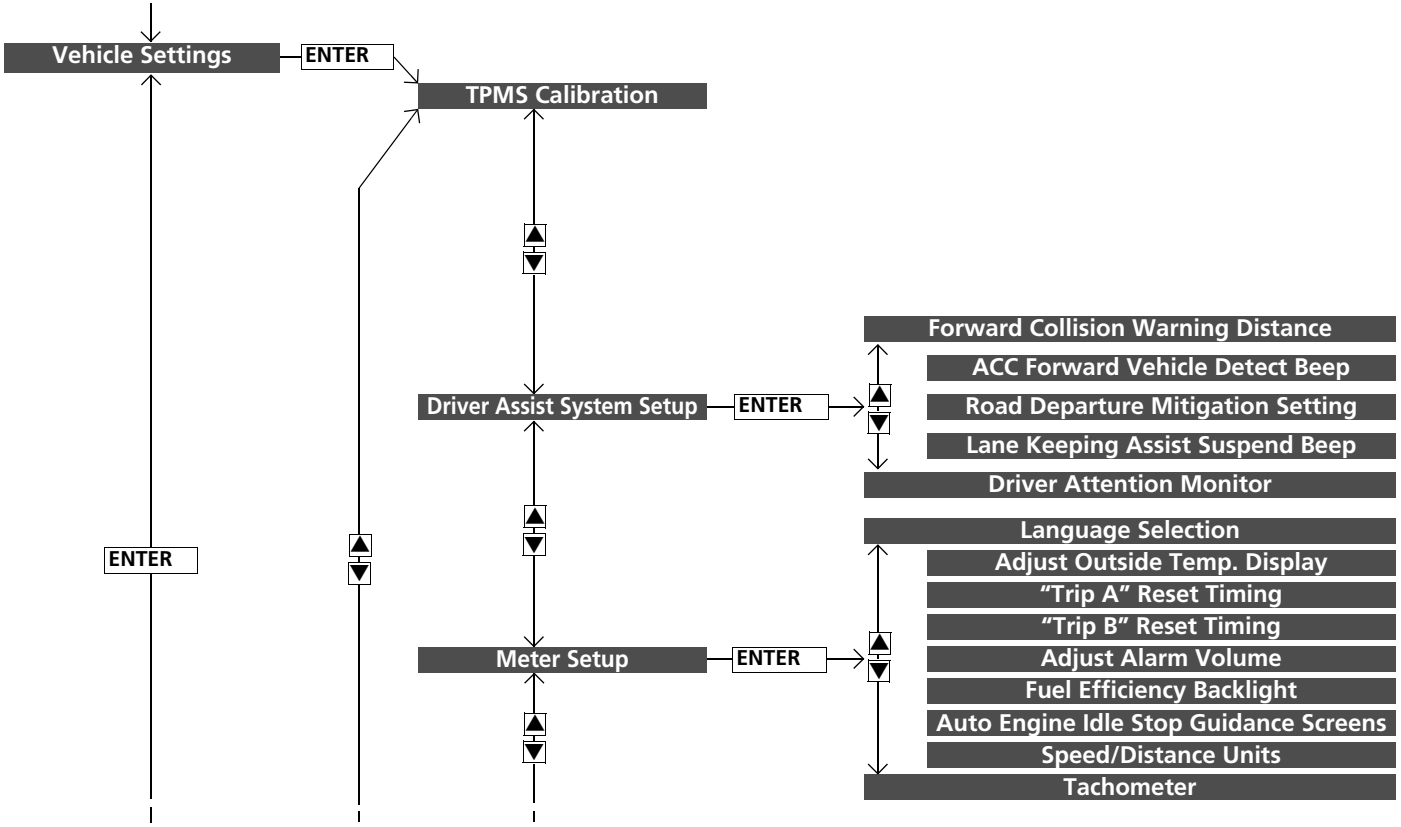
To customize other features, press the ▲ / ▼ button.

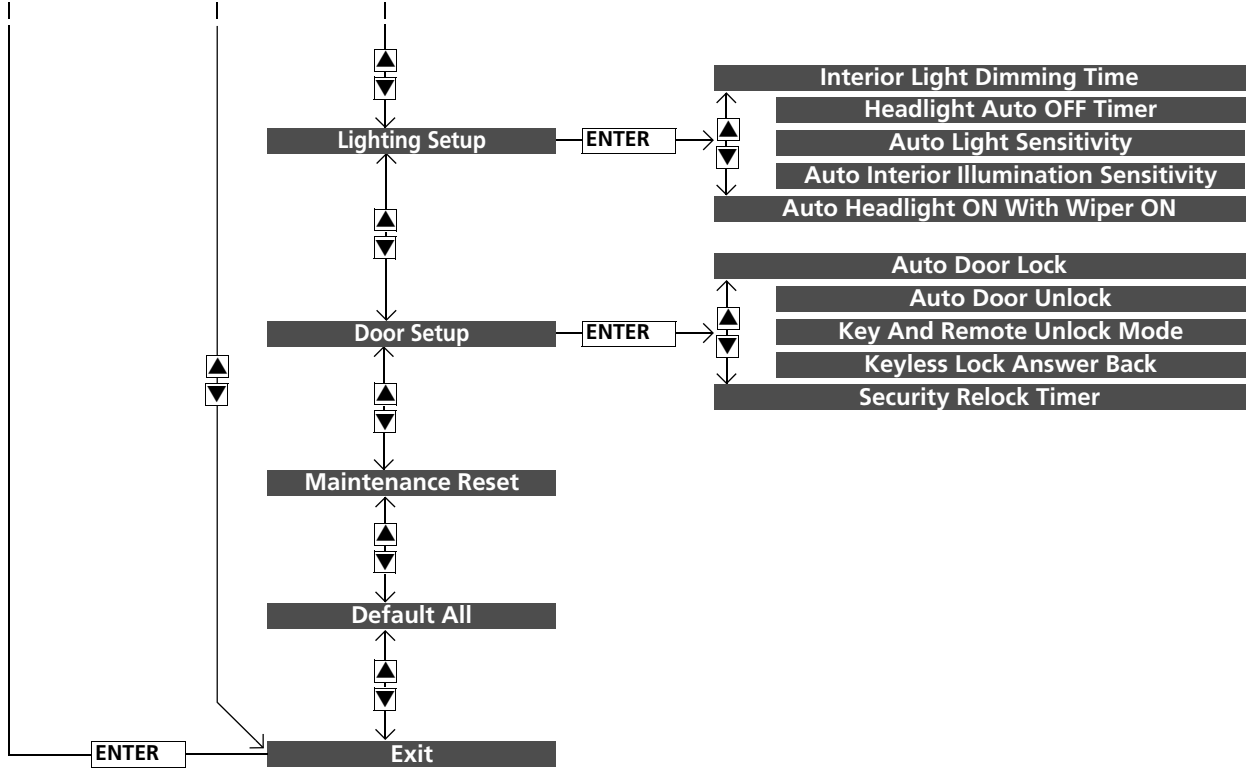
**List of customizable options** P. 130
**Example of customization settings** P. 134

When you customize settings:
Shift to [P].

## ■ Customization flow

Press the [i] button.




Lighting Setup
ENTER
Interior Light Dimming Time
Headlight Auto OFF Timer
Auto Light Sensitivity
Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity
Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON
Door Setup
ENTER
Auto Door Lock
Auto Door Unlock
Key And Remote Unlock Mode
Keyless Lock Answer Back
Security Relock Timer
Maintenance Reset
Default All
ENTER
Exit



*Continued*

■ **List of customizable options**

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **TPMS Calibration** | — | Calibrates the TPMS. | **Cancel/Calibrate** |
| **Driver Assist System Setup** | **Forward Collision Warning Distance** | Changes the distance at which CMBS™ alerts. | **Long/Normal***1**/Short** |
| | **ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep** | Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of ACC range. | **ON/OFF***1 |
| | **Road Departure Mitigation Setting** | Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system. | **Narrow/Normal***1**/Wide/ Warning Only** |
| | **Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep** | Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended. | **ON/OFF***1 |
| | **Driver Attention Monitor** | Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor. | **Tactile And Audible Alert***1**/ Tactile Alert/OFF** |

*1:Default Setting

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Meter Setup** | **Language Selection** | Changes the displayed language. | **English**[*1]**/Français/Español** |
| | **Adjust Outside Temp. Display** | Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees. | **-5°F ~ ±0°F**[*1] **~ +5°F** |
| | **"Trip A" Reset Timing** | Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A. | **When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/Manually Reset**[*1] |
| | **"Trip B" Reset Timing** | Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B. | **When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/Manually Reset**[*1] |
| | **Adjust Alarm Volume** | Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on. | **High/Mid**[*1]**/Low** |
| | **Fuel Efficiency Backlight** | Turns the ambient meter feature on and off. | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |
| | **Auto Engine Idle Stop Guidance Screens** | Turns the engine idle-stop guidance displayed in the meter display on and off during the auto engine idle stop system is in operation. | **ON/OFF**[*1] |
| | **Speed/Distance Units** | Selects the trip computer units. | **mph·miles**[*1]**/km/h·km** |
| | **Tachometer** | Selects whether the tachometer is displayed on the driver information interface. | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |

*1:Default Setting

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Lighting Setup** | **Interior Light Dimming Time** | Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors. | **60sec/30sec**[*1]**/15sec** |
| | **Headlight Auto OFF Timer** | Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. | **60sec/30sec/15sec**[*1]**/0sec** |
| | **Auto Light Sensitivity** | Changes the timing for the headlights to come on. | **Max/High/Mid**[*1]**/Low/Min** |
| | **Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity** | Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position. | **Max/High/Mid**[*1]**/Low/Min** |
| | **Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON** | Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position. | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |

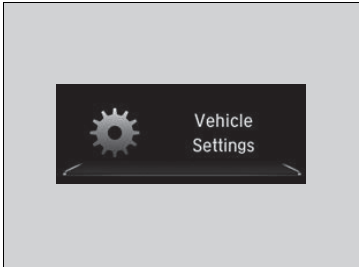
*1: Default Setting

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Door Setup** | **Auto Door Lock** | Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock. | **With Vehicle Speed**[*1]**/Shift from P/OFF** |
| | **Auto Door Unlock** | Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock. | **When Driver's Door Opens**[*1]**/ When Shifting Into Park/ When Ignition Switched OFF/OFF** |
| | **Key And Remote Unlock Mode** | Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first operation of the remote or ignition key. | **Driver Door**[*1]**/ All Doors** |
| | **Keyless Lock Answer Back** | LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash.<br>LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds. | **ON**[*1]**/OFF** |
| | **Security Relock Timer** | Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door. | **90sec/60sec/30sec**[*1] |
| **Maintenance Reset** | — | Cancels/Resets the engine oil life display when you have performed the maintenance service. | **Cancel/All Due Items** |
| **Default All** | — | Cancels/Resets all the customized settings as default. | **Cancel/Set** |

*1: Default Setting

■ **Example of customization settings**

The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **When Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manually Reset**.




**1.** Press the [i] button to select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **ENTER** button.

**2.** Press the ▲ / ▼ button until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.

**3.** Press the **ENTER** button.

▶ **Language Selection** appears first in the display.

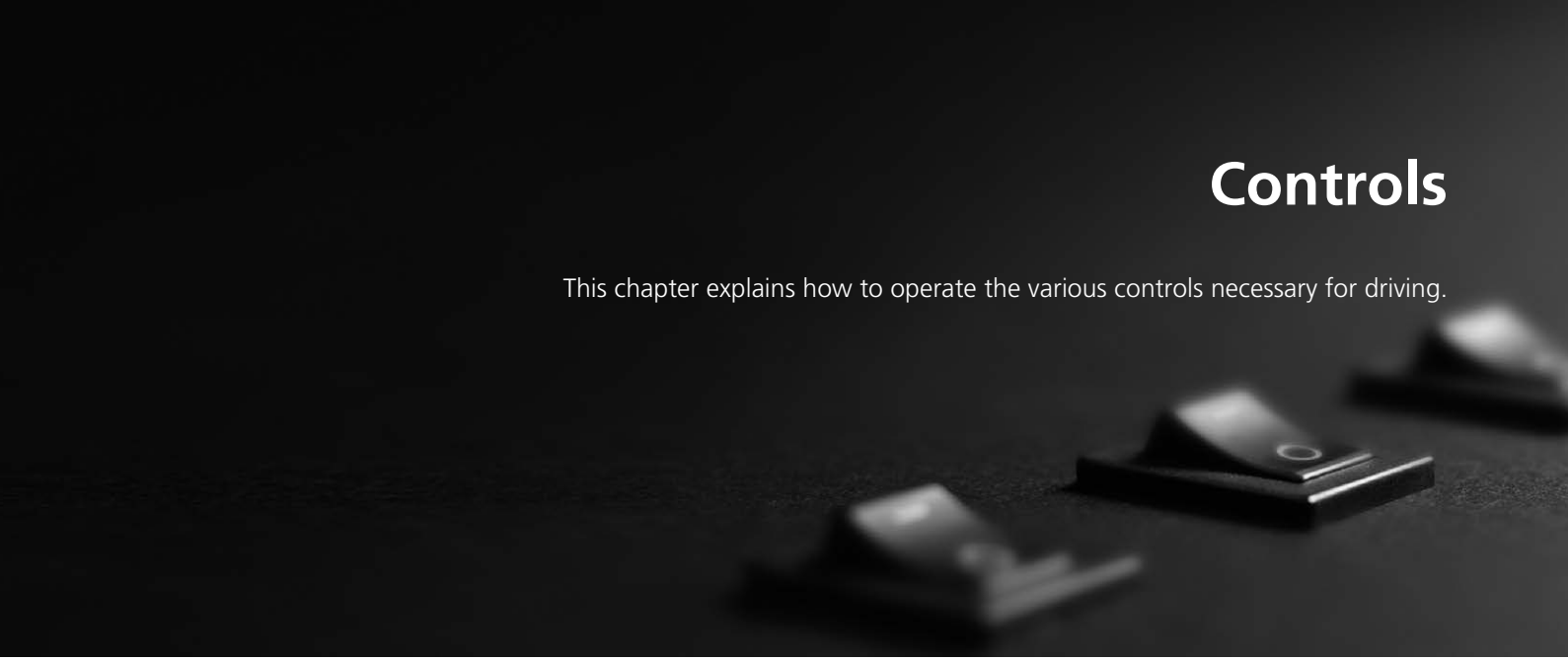
**4.** Press the ▲ / ▼ button until **"Trip A" Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the **ENTER** button.
▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Fully Refueled**, **IGN OFF**, **Manually Reset**, or **Exit**.

**5.** Press the ▲ / ▼ button and select **When Refueled**, then press the **ENTER** button.
▶ The **When Fully Refueled Setup** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

**6.** Press the ▲ / ▼ button until **Exit** appears on the display, then press the **ENTER** button.
**7.** Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

# Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.




**Clock** ..... 138
**Locking and Unlocking the Doors**
Key Types and Functions ..... 140
Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength* ..142
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside ..... 143
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside ...151
Childproof Door Locks ..... 152
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking ..... 153
**Opening and Closing the Tailgate**... 154
**Security System**
Immobilizer System ..... 165
Security System Alarm* ..... 165
**Opening and Closing the Windows** .... 168
**Moonroof*** ..... 171
**Panoramic Roof*1** ..... 172
**Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel**
Ignition Switch* ..... 175
ENGINE START/STOP Button* ..... 176
Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison ..... 179
Turn Signals ..... 180
Light Switches..... 181
Fog Lights* ..... 185
Auto High-Beam ..... 186
Daytime Running Lights ..... 190
Wipers and Washers ..... 191
Brightness Control ..... 194
Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* ..... 196
Driving Position Memory System* .... 198
Adjusting the Steering Wheel ..... 200
**Adjusting the Mirrors**..... 201
**Adjusting the Seats** ..... 203
**Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items**. 213
**Climate Control System**
Using Automatic Climate Control .... 233
Synchronization Mode* ..... 236
Automatic Climate Control Sensors .....237

(*1: Canadian models only, if equipped)

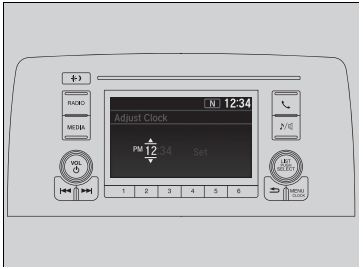
* Not available on all models

# Adjusting the Clock

Models without navigation system

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the ignition switch in ON II*1.

## ■ Adjusting the Time




Models with color audio system

### ■ Using the MENU/CLOCK button

1. Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
   ▶ **Adjust Clock** is selected.
2. Rotate to change hour, then press.
3. Rotate to change minute, then press.
4. To enter the selection, rotate and select **Set**, then press.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Adjusting the Clock

Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the navigation system, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

Models with color audio system

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 359

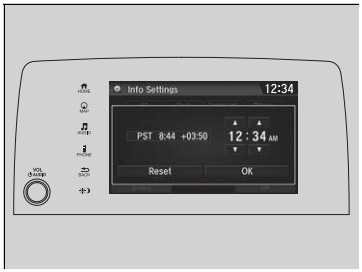
Using the MENU/CLOCK button

Models with color audio system

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.




Models with Display Audio

## ■ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
4. Select ▲ or ▼ to change hour.
5. Select ▲ or ▼ to change minute, then select **OK**.

Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

Models with Display Audio

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock and turn the clock display on and off.

**Customized Features** P. 366

Models with Display Audio

The clock is automatically updated when your smartphone is connected to the audio system.

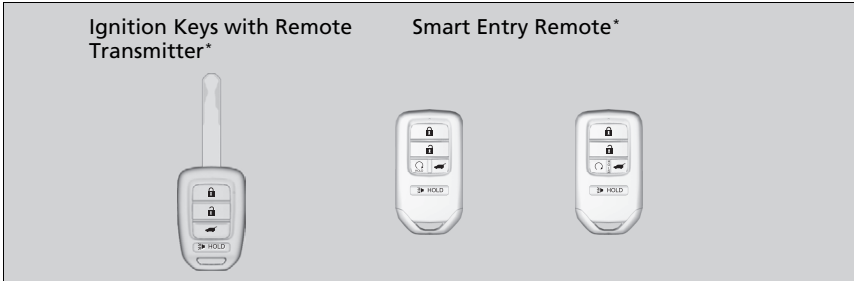
You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the upper right corner of the display.

1. Touch the clock on the display for a few seconds.
2. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Select ▲ or ▼ to change hour.
4. Select ▲ or ▼ to change minute, then select **OK**.

## Key Types and Functions

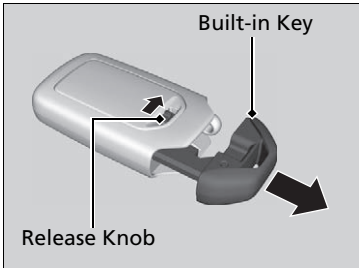
This vehicle comes with the following keys:

### ■ Keys




Use the key to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock the doors and tailgate. You can also lock and unlock the doors and tailgate pressing the buttons on remote transmitter.

### ■ Built-in Key*




The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.
To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the smart entry remote until it clicks.

**Key Types and Functions**

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps protect against vehicle theft.

➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 165

The keys contain precision electronics.
Adhere to the following advice to prevent damage to the electronics:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

**Models with remote engine starter**

You can remotely start the engine using the one-way smart entry remote.

➡ **Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback*** P. 475





* Not available on all models

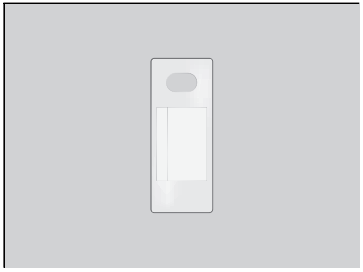
## ■ Valet Key*

Can be used to start and stop the engine, and lock and unlock driver's door.

### Valet Key*

When you need to leave a key with a third party, leave the valet key.

## ■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

### Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.



* Not available on all models

# Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength*

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the smart entry remote when locking/unlocking the doors, opening the tailgate, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors, opening the tailgate, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the smart entry remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the smart entry remote.

## Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength*

Communication between the smart entry remote and the vehicle consumes the smart entry remote's battery.

Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the smart entry remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

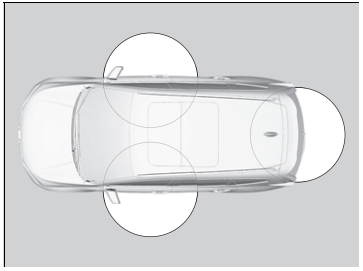




* Not available on all models

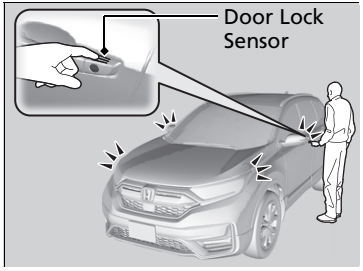
# Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

## ■ Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*



When you carry the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the tailgate.

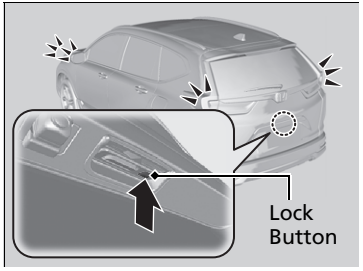
You can lock/unlock the doors within a radius of about 32 inches (80 cm) of the outside door handle. You can open the tailgate within about 32 inches (80 cm) radius from the tailgate outer handle.




### ■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Touch the door lock sensor on a front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.




Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

➡ **Interior Lights** P. 213

Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*

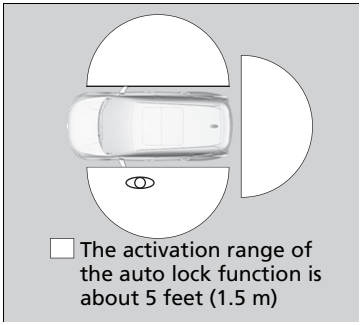
If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the smart entry system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

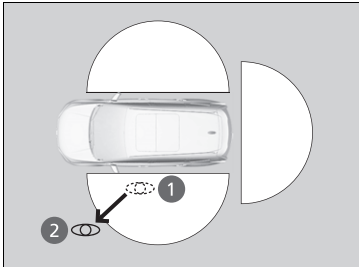
You can lock or unlock doors using the smart entry system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*




## ■ Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock®)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors and tailgate closed while carrying the smart entry remote, the doors will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors are closed, and the smart entry remote is within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the outside door handle.

Exit vehicle while carrying smart entry remote and close door(s).

**1.** While within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the vehicle.
▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

**2.** Carry the smart entry remote beyond about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors will then lock.

### Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock®)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the audio/information screen.

**Customized Features** P. 366

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the smart entry remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be canceled.

When all doors have been closed and the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle, or if the smart entry remote is not detected within about 5 feet (1.5 m) of the vehicle, auto lock function will not be activated.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

**1.** Set the power mode to OFF.
**2.** Open the driver's door.
**3.** Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
▶ The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- Walk away at least more than about 5 feet (1.5 m) away from the vehicle while carrying the smart entry remote.

**Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock®)**

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door or the hood is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The smart entry remote is not located within a radius of about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

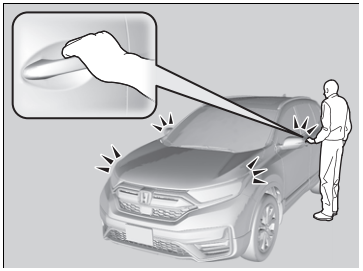
**Auto lock function operation stop beeper**

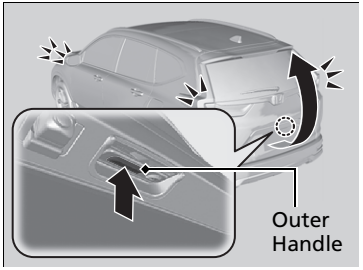
After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The smart entry remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The smart entry remote is put inside the tailgate.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the smart entry remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

*Continued*






## ■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Grab the driver's door handle:

▶ The driver's door unlocks.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

▶ All the doors and tailgate unlock.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Press the tailgate outer handle:

▶ The tailgate unlocks.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

➡ **Using the Outer Handle** P. 163

### Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System*

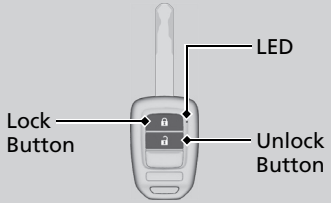
- Do not leave the smart entry remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be locked or unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the smart entry remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door might not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 32 inches (80 cm) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the smart entry remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The smart entry remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.
- The light flashes, and beeper sounds and unlock settings can be customized on the audio/information screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 366

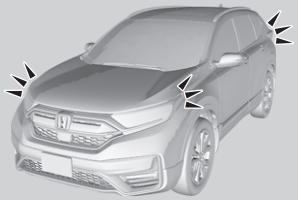
 * Not available on all models

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter

Ignition keys with remote transmitter




Models with smart entry remote



### ■ Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

**Once:**

▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system* sets.

**Twice (within five seconds after the first push):**

▶ The beeper sounds and verifies the security system* is set.

### ■ Unlocking the doors

Press the unlock button.

**Once:**

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door unlocks.

**Twice:**

▶ The remaining doors and tailgate unlock.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can change the relock timer setting.

Models with Display Audio

➡ **Customized Features** P. 366

Models with color audio system

➡ **Customized Features** P. 127

The remote transmitter will not work when:

Ignition keys with remote transmitter

- The key is in the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry remote

- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 607

Controls

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

Using the Remote Transmitter

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

Models with Display Audio

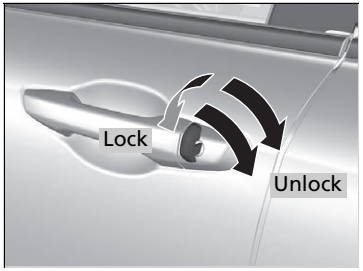
➡ **Customized Features** P. 366

Models with color audio system

➡ **Customized Features** P. 127

## ■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the smart entry remote battery or the vehicle battery is dead, use the key instead of the smart entry remote.




Fully insert the key and turn it.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door with a key, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

Models with Display Audio

➔ **Customized Features** P. 366

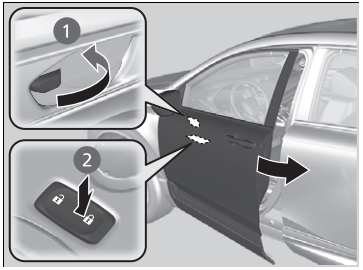
Models with color audio system

➔ **Customized Features** P. 127



*Continued*

## ■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key




### ■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ❶ or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ❷, and close the door.

### ■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

### ■ Lockout prevention system

Ignition keys with remote transmitter

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry remote

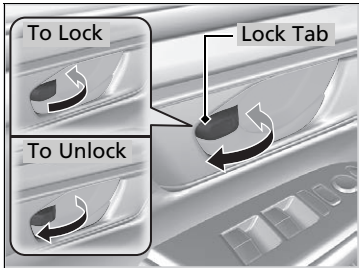
The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.
Make sure you have the key in your hand when you lock the driver's door, any of the other doors or the tailgate, otherwise you may end up locking the key inside the vehicle.

# Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

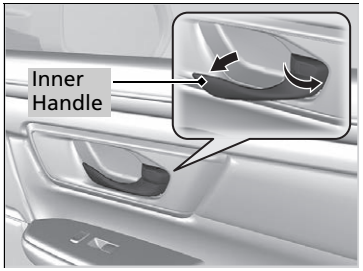
## ■ Using the Lock Tab




**■ Locking a door**
Push the lock tab forward.

**■ Unlocking a door**
Pull the lock tab rearward.

## ■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle




Pull the front door inner handle.
▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

To avoid all the doors to be unlocked, use the lock tab on the driver's door to unlock, then lock again before opening the door. This setting works for one time only. If you do not want all the doors to be unlocked all the time, customize the Auto Door Unlock setting to Off using the Display Audio* or driver information interface*.

➡ **Auto Door Locking/Unlocking** P. 153

Using the Lock Tab

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all of the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.
When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

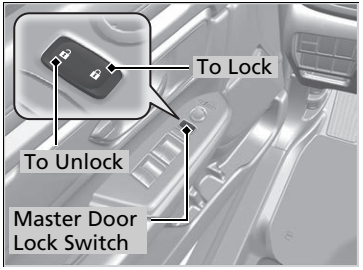
➡ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 152



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

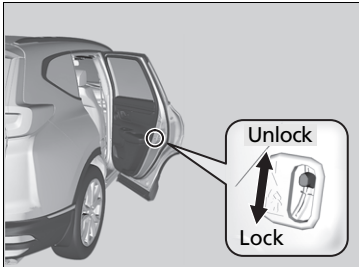



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors and the tailgate.

# Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

## ■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks




Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

**■ When opening the door**

Open the door using the outside door handle.

Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

The front passenger's door also has the master door lock switch.

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

# Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks all doors and unlocks the all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

## ■ Auto Door Locking

**■ Drive lock mode**

All doors and tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).

## ■ Auto Door Unlocking

**■ Driver's door open mode**

All doors unlock when the driver's door is opened.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Models with Display Audio

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the audio/information screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 366

Models with color audio system

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the driver information interface.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 127

## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Models without power tailgate

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

All models

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

▶ Avoid possible damage.

▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 80



**⚠WARNING**

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the cargo area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up cargo from the cargo area, or by using a forward and back kicking motion under the center of the rear bumper for hands free access*, while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the cargo space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.





* Not available on all models

Models with power tailgate

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button in the driver side control panel, pressing the button on the tailgate, or by raising and lowering your foot under the center of the rear bumper for hands free access*.

The power tailgate can be opened/closed when the transmission is in P.

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Models with power tailgate

**⚠WARNING**

**Closing a power tailgate while anyone is in the path of the tailgate can cause serious injury.**

**Make sure everyone is clear before closing the power tailgate.**

NOTICE

Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed.
Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:
- You start the engine while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

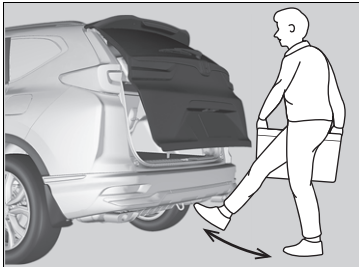
If you close the power tailgate with all the doors locked, the power tailgate locks automatically.

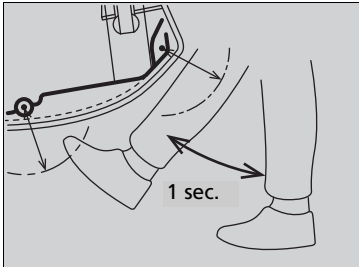


* Not available on all models

# Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

## ■ Using the Hands Free Access*






Use a forward and back kicking motion for about 1 second under the center of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the smart entry remote.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and a beeper sounds once, then the tailgate begins to move.

### Using the Hands Free Access*

During rain or in other instances when the vehicle becomes wet, the sensor may not properly detect your foot motion.

When performing work on or around the rear section of the vehicle, you may inadvertently open or close the tailgate.
To prevent this from happening, select Customized Features on the audio/information screen and then select OFF for the feature.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 366

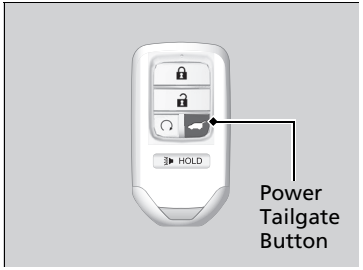
If you hold your foot under the bumper for too long or sweep your foot from side to side, the power tailgate does not open or close.

This function will not operate if you don't have the smart entry remote on you. Please make sure you have the smart entry remote on you.



 * Not available on all models

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter




Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the button for more than one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

### ■ Customizing when to open the tailgate

**Anytime:** The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.

**When Unlocked:** The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked.

➲ **Customized Features** P. 366

### Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

If you close the power tailgate when all the doors are locked, the power tailgate locks automatically.

If you replace the battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

Installing aftermarket components other than genuine Honda accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your cargo in and out.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully closed before you start the vehicle.

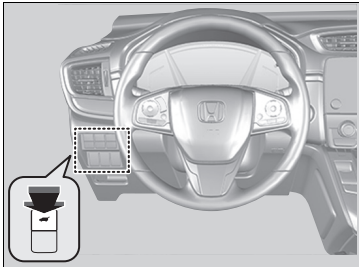
The beeper sounds when you start driving while the power tailgate is still open, or closing.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Using the Power Tailgate Button



To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second.

▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the button for about one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

### Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. The beeper sounds three times.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

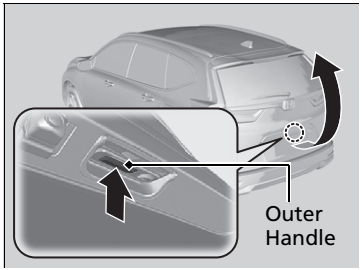
Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.





* Not available on all models

## ■ Using the Tailgate Outer Handle




If you press the outer handle of the tailgate for no longer than one second, the tailgate opens automatically.

▶ The beeper sounds.

▶ If you want to open the tailgate manually, press the button for more than one second.

➡ **Opening and Closing the Tailgate** P. 154

If you are carrying the smart entry remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

If you press the outer handle again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.
Press the outer handle, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

**Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate***

Do not leave the key, remote transmitter*, or smart entry remote* in the cargo area before closing the tailgate.

Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

You can change the power tailgate operation setting on and off.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 366



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

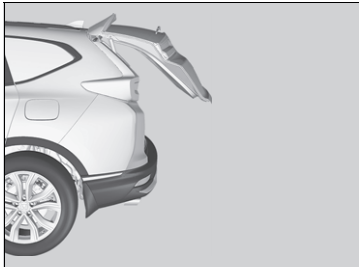
## ■ Using the Tailgate Inner Button

Press the button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

▶ The beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press and release the button again, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

## Programming Tailgate Position



The extent to which the power tailgate automatically opens can be programed.

To program:

**1.** Open the tailgate to the desired position.

**2.** Press and hold the tailgate inner button until you hear short two beeps following one long buzzer.

Programming Tailgate Position

If the tailgate is only slightly opened, the position cannot be programmed, even if you push the inner button.

If you want to reprogram the power tailgate to open all the way, manually raise the tailgate to its upper most position and follow the directions step 2.

*Continued*

## ■ Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

### Auto-Closer

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you press the tailgate outer handle while the power tailgate is closing.

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

## ■ Power Tailgate Fall Detection

Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, by snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

### Power Tailgate Fall Detection

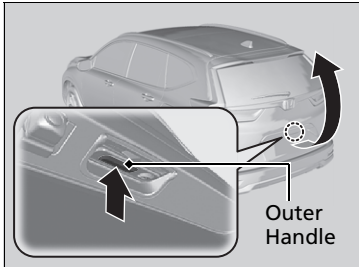
If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may be activated.

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult at a dealer.

# Opening/Closing the Tailgate

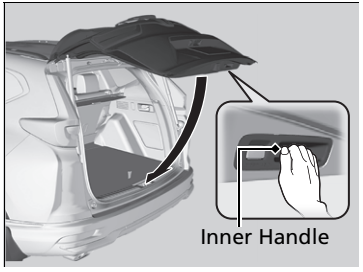
## ■ Using the Outer Handle




When all the doors are unlocked or press the tailgate unlock button on the remote transmitter, the tailgate is unlocked.
Press the outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

Models with smart entry system

If you are carrying the smart entry remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.




To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

Using the Outer Handle

Do not leave the key, remote transmitter*, or smart entry remote* in the cargo area before closing the tailgate.

Models with smart entry system

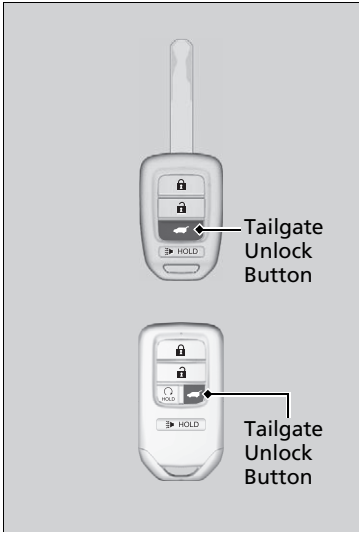
Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter*




Press the tailgate unlock button to unlock the tailgate.

### Using the Remote Transmitter*

If you have unlocked and opened the tailgate using the remote transmitter or smart entry remote*, when closing, the tailgate locks automatically.



 * Not available on all models

## Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch* or pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.
Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

*Canadian models only:* Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the vehicle on the first time after the battery has been disconnected.

## Security System Alarm*

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, hood or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not go off if the tailgate or doors are opened with the key, remote transmitter or smart entry system.

However, the alarm goes off if a door is opened with the key, then the shift lever is moved out of P or the hood is opened before the power mode is set to ON.

### ■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and all the exterior lights flash.

Security System Alarm*

The security alarm continues for a maximum of two minutes until the security system deactivates.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

### ■ To deactivate the security system alarm
Unlock the vehicle using the key, remote transmitter or smart entry system. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

### ■ Setting the security system alarm
The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:
- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The hood and tailgate are closed.
- All doors and tailgate are locked with the key, the remote transmitter, or smart entry system.

### ■ When the security system alarm sets
The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

### ■ To cancel the security system alarm
The security system alarm is canceled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or smart entry system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

**Security System Alarm***

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:
- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the hood with the hood release handle.
- Moving the shift lever out of P.

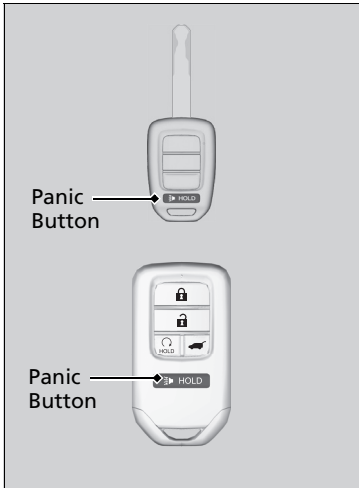
If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.
If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key or remote transmitter.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.



 * Not available on all models

## ■ Panic Mode




### ■ The panic button on the remote transmitter

If you press the panic button for approximately one second, the following will occur for about 30 seconds:

- The horn sounds.
- Some exterior lights flash.

### ■ Canceling panic mode

Press any button on the remote transmitter, or turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

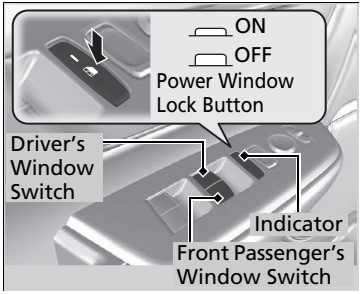
## Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON (II)*1, using the switches on the doors. The driver side switches can be used to open and close all the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is switched on (pushed in, indicator on), you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

### ■ Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function




**■ Automatic operation**
**To open:** Push the switch down firmly.
**To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

**■ Manual operation**
**To open:** Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
**To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

**⚠WARNING**

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch off*1. Opening either front door cancels this function.

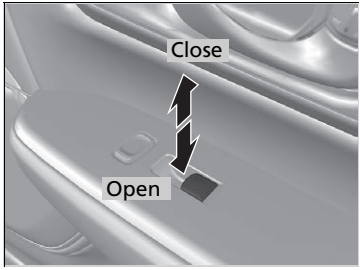
**Auto Reverse**
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it stops closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

You cannot fully open the rear windows.

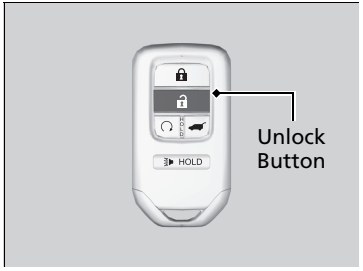
## Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function




**To open:** Push the switch down.
**To close:** Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

## Opening Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Remote




**To open:** Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and keep it pressed. If the windows and moonroof* or panoramic roof*1 stop midway, repeat the procedure.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

* Not available on all models

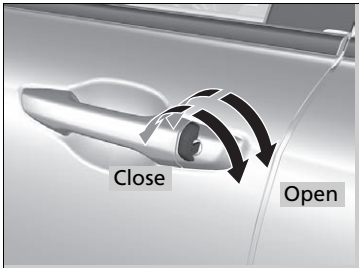
*Continued*

### Opening/Closing the Power Windows

While driving with any of the windows open, you may hear a booming, throbbing, or helicopter-type noise or pressure. This is called wind buffeting. This is a normal occurrence that can be minimized.

If you hear a wind buffeting noise with any of the windows open, lower all of the other windows slightly or open the moonroof* or panoramic roof*1.

## ■ Opening/Closing Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Key




**To open:** Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

**To close:** Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows/moonroof* or panoramic roof*1 at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.



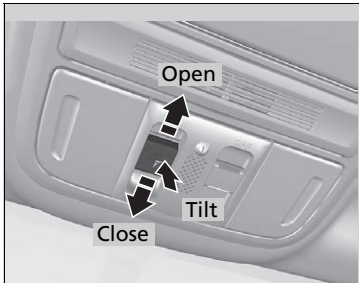
*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

 * Not available on all models

## Opening and Closing the Moonroof

You can operate the moonroof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the moonroof.

### ■ Using the Moonroof Switch




**■ Automatic operation**
**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.
**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The moonroof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the moonroof midway, touch the switch briefly.

**■ Manual operation**
**To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
**To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**■ Tilting the moonroof up**
**To tilt:** Push on the center of the moonroof switch.
**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

Using the Moonroof Switch

**⚠WARNING**

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

NOTICE
Opening the moonroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the moonroof panel or motor.
The power moonroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
Opening either front door cancels this function.
When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the moonroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the moonroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the moonroof.
You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the moonroof.

➡ **Opening Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Remote** P. 169
➡ **Opening/Closing Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Key** P. 170

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped
* Not available on all models

## Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

You can operate the panoramic roof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the panoramic roof.

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

**⚠WARNING**

Opening or closing the panoramic roof or sunshade on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the panoramic roof and sunshade before opening or closing it.

NOTICE

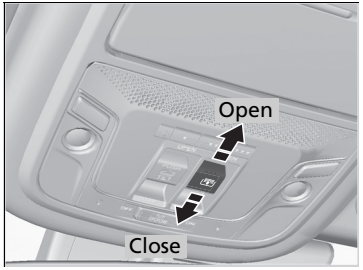
Opening the panoramic roof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the panoramic roof panel or motor.

The panoramic roof and sunshade can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
Opening either front door cancels this function.

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the panoramic roof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the panoramic roof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the panoramic roof.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

## ■ Using the Sunshade Switch




### ■ Automatic operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.
**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunshade automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunshade midway, touch the switch briefly.

### ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
**To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the panoramic roof.

➡ **Opening Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Remote** P. 169
➡ **Opening/Closing Windows and the Moonroof* or Panoramic Roof*1 with the Key** P. 170

Using the Sunshade Switch

The sunshade can be opened or closed to adjust the amount of light that enters the cabin.

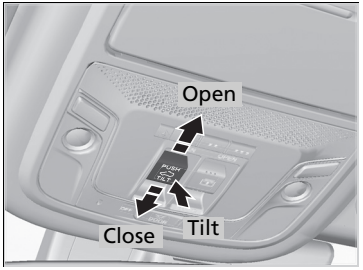
When you use the sunshade switch to open the sunshade, the panoramic roof does not move.

The sunshade cannot be fully closed if the panoramic roof is open. When you close the sunshade with the panoramic roof open, the sunshade stops slightly ahead of the panoramic roof glass. When you push the switch forward again, the sunshade and the panoramic roof close together.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped
* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Using the Panoramic Roof Switch



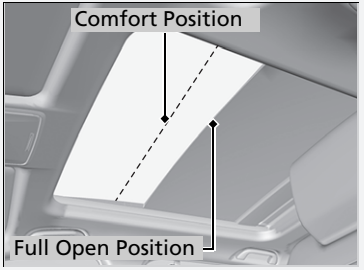

**■ Automatic operation**
**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.
**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The panoramic roof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the panoramic glass midway, touch the switch briefly.

**■ Manual operation**
**To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
**To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**■ Tilting the panoramic roof up**
**To tilt:** Push on the center of the panoramic roof switch.
**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

Using the Panoramic Roof Switch

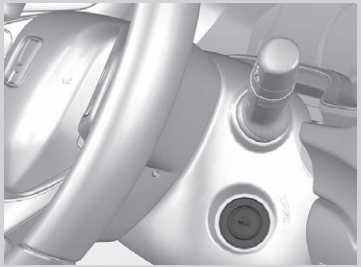



The panoramic roof cannot be fully opened in a single operation. The panoramic roof has a "comfort" position or wind noise reduction position at which the roof first stops. To open fully, pull the switch back again after the roof has stopped at this position.

Whenever the panoramic roof is opening, the sunshade moves along with it. However, when the panoramic roof is closing, the sunshade does not move.

When you tilt open the panoramic roof, the sunshade opens slightly to let in fresh air. When you close the panoramic roof from this position, the sunshade returns to its closed position.

## Ignition Switch*



0 LOCK: Insert and remove the key in this position.

I ACCESSORY: Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.

II ON: This is the position when driving.

III START: This position is for starting the engine. The switch returns to ON II when you let go of the key.

### Ignition Switch*

You cannot take the key out unless the shift lever is in P.

If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK 0 or ACCESSORY I, a warning buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key out.

When this happens, the following messages appear on the driver information interface:

- In LOCK 0: or the symbol with a **Remove Key From Ignition**
- In ACCESSORY I: or the symbol with a **Return Ignition Switch To Lock (0) Position**
  The buzzer will stop when you take the key out.

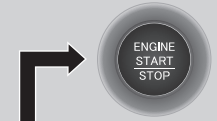
If the key won't turn from LOCK 0 to ACCESSORY I, turn the key while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the key to turn.



* Not available on all models

# ENGINE START/STOP Button*

## ■ Changing the Power Mode




**VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)**
The button is off.
The steering wheel is locked*1.
The power to all electrical components is turned off.

**ACCESSORY**
The button blinks (in red).
Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.

**ON**
The button blinks (in red).
All electrical components can be used.

**Without pressing the brake pedal**

Press the button without the shift lever in P.

Press the button.

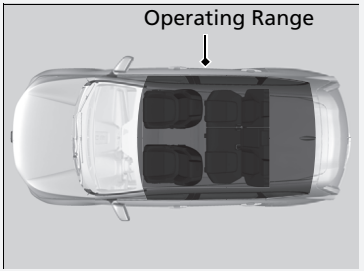
Shift to P then press the button.

U.S. models
Shift to P.

*1:Except U.S. models

ENGINE START/STOP Button*

**ENGINE START/STOP** Button Operating Range




You can start the engine when the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.
The engine may also run if the smart entry remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

If the battery of the smart entry remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

➡ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 627

The power system may also start if the smart entry remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.





* Not available on all models

## ■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the shift lever in P and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid the battery drain.

Canadian models

When in this mode:
The steering wheel does not lock.
You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the smart entry system.
Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

ENGINE START/STOP Button*

Canadian models

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.



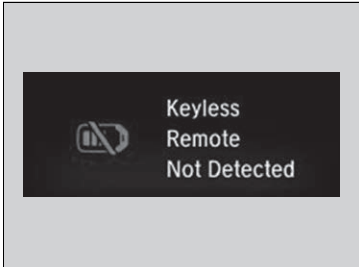
* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning buzzer sounds.

## ■ Smart Entry Remote Reminder




When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the smart entry remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the smart entry remote in another location.

### ■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

### ■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

Smart Entry Remote Reminder

When the smart entry remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the smart entry remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

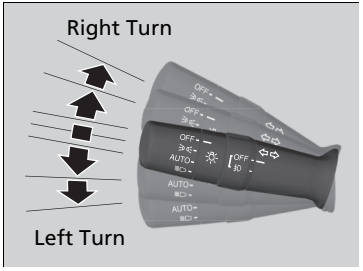
Do not put the smart entry remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

# Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

| Ignition Switch Position | LOCK (0) (with/without the key) | ACCESSORY (I) | ON (II) | START (III) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Without Smart Entry System | • Engine is turned off and power is shut down.<br>• The steering wheel is locked*1.<br>• No electrical components can be used. | • Engine is turned off.<br>• Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated. | • Normal key position while driving.<br>• All electrical components can be used. | • Use this position to start the engine.<br>• The ignition switch returns to the ON (II) position when you release the key. |
| Power Mode | VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) | ACCESSORY | ON Button is: Blinking On | START |
| With Smart Entry System and **ENGINE START/STOP** Button | Button-Off<br>• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.<br>• The steering wheel is locked*1.<br>• No electrical components can be used. | Button-Blinking<br>• Engine is turned off.<br>• Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated. | Button-Blinking (engine is turned off)<br>On (engine is running)<br>• All electrical components can be used. | Button-On<br>• The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts. |

*1:Canadian models

# Turn Signals




The turn signals can be used when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

■ **One-touch turn signal**

When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times.

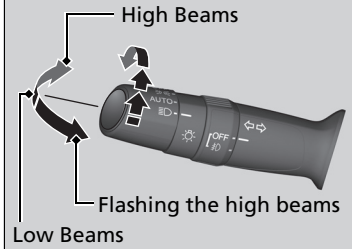
This feature can be used when signaling for a lane change.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

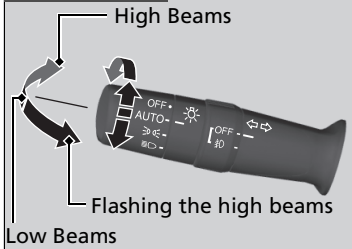
# Light Switches

## ■ Manual Operation

U.S. models




Canadian models




Turns on parking, side marker, tail, and rear license plate lights

Turns on headlights, parking, side marker, tail, and rear license plate lights

Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting or position of the ignition switch.

### ■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

### ■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

### ■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

Canadian models

### ■ Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The transmission is in P.
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to **OFF** to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The transmission is taken out of P and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

Light Switches

Models without smart entry system

If you remove the key from the ignition switch with the lights on, a light on reminder chime sounds when you open the driver's door.

Models with smart entry system

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

All models

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

**Indicators** P. 84

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

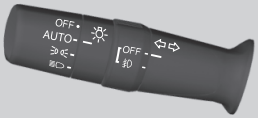


*Continued*

## ■ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

U.S. models

Canadian models



Automatic lighting control can be used when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

The headlights comes on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

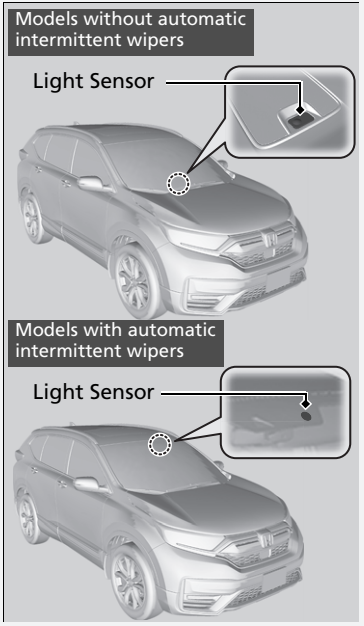
▶ Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.



## ■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

U.S. models

You can adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

| Setting | The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at |
|---|---|
| **Max** | Bright |
| **High** | |
| **Mid** | |
| **Low** | |
| **Min** | Dark |

U.S. models with Display Audio

➔ **Customized Features** P. 366

U.S. models with color audio system

➔ **Customized Features** P. 127

Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

*Continued*

## ■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

Models with smart entry system

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

Models without smart entry system

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you remove the key, and close the driver's door.

If you turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

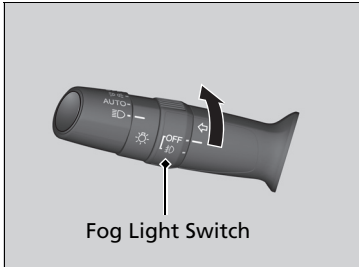
Models with smart entry system

➡ **Customized Features** P. 366

Models without smart entry system

➡ **Customized Features** P. 127

# Fog Lights*



Fog Light Switch

Can be used when the low beam headlights are on.

Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the position.

Fog Lights*

When the fog lights are on, the indicator in the instrument panel will be on.
They go off when the headlights turn off, or when the daytime running lights are on.

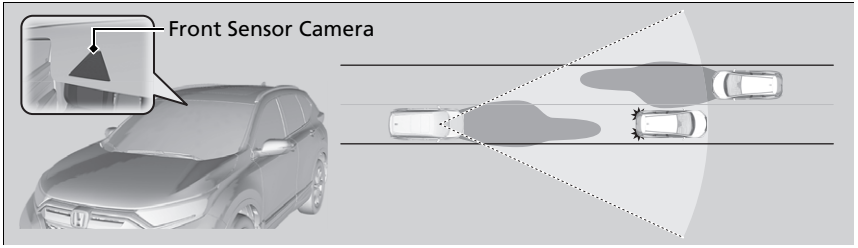
**Daytime Running Lights** P. 190



* Not available on all models

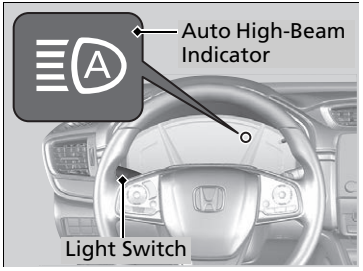
# Auto High-Beam

The front sensor camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.




## ■ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and the auto high-beam is activated.




- The ignition switch is in ON II*1.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Auto High-Beam

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognize varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windshield, refer to the following.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 489

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windshield around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windshield, be careful not to apply the windshield cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out the following procedure and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever toward you for flashing the high beams then release it while driving.

### ■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When auto high-beam is active, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

| Switching to high beam: | | Switching to low beam: |
|---|---|---|
| All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.<br>• Your vehicle speed is 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.<br>• There are no preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.<br>• There are few street lights on the road ahead. | ⟷ | One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.<br>• Your vehicle speed is 15 mph (24 km/h) or less.<br>• There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.<br>• There are many street lights on the road ahead. |

#### How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windshield frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light toward the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:

- Windshield wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

*Continued*

### ■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

**Using the lever:**

Pull the lever toward you for flashing the high beams then release it within about one second while driving.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, pull the lever toward you for flashing the high beams then release it while driving. The auto high-beam indicator will come on.

**Using the light switch:**

Turn the light switch to .

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

How to Use the Auto High-Beam

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

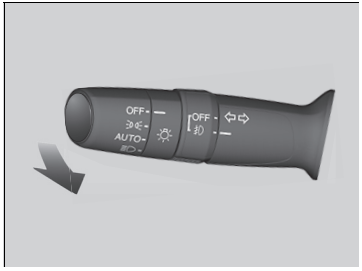
- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed toward the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windshield** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windshield. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windshield and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## How to Turn Off the Auto High-Beam

You can turn the auto high-beam system off. If you want to turn the system off or on, turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1, then carry out the following procedures while the vehicle is stationary.




**To turn the system off:**
With the light switch is in **AUTO**, pull the lever toward you and hold it for at least 40 seconds. After the auto high-beam indicator light blinks twice, release the lever.

**To turn the system on:**
With the light switch is in **AUTO**, pull the lever toward you and hold it for at least 30 seconds. After the auto high-beam indicator light blinks once, release the lever.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

How to Turn Off the Auto High-Beam

If you turn the auto high-beam system off, the system does not operate until you turn the system on.

Park in a safe place before turning the system off or on.

## Daytime Running Lights

The parking/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in ON (II)*1.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO**, **OFF*** or ≡DOC≡.
- The parking brake is released.

The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake. Turning off the ignition switch or setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the headlight switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.



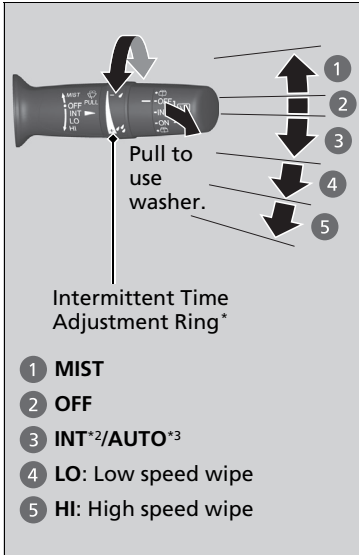
*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



* Not available on all models

# Wipers and Washers

## ■ Windshield Wipers/Washers




The windshield wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

### ■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT*2/AUTO*3, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

### ■ Adjusting wiper operation*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.

Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

### ■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windshield, then stop.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2: Models with manual intermittent operation
*3: Models with automatic intermittent operation

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windshield is dry. The windshield will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windshield.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the defogger to warm the windshield, then turn the wipers on.

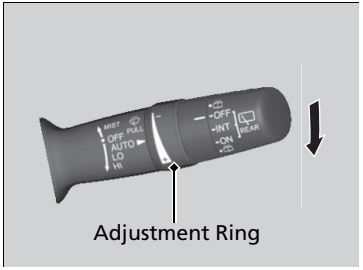
Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.
When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting (4) and the **LO** setting become the same.

If the wiper stops operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY I or LOCK 0*1, then remove the obstacle.

## ■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers*




When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windshield wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

### ■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

**Sensor sensitivity**

Low Sensitivity

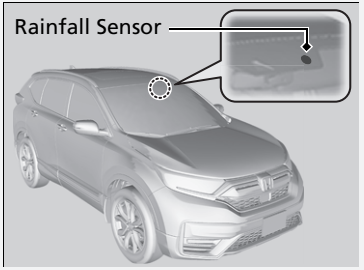
High Sensitivity

**Wipers and Washers**

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

**Automatic Intermittent Wipers***

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



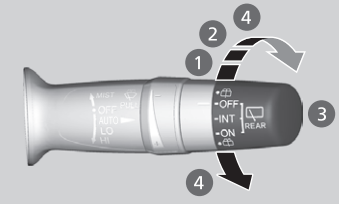

**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present



* Not available on all models

## ■ Rear Wiper/Washer




1. **INT**: Intermittent
2. **ON**: Continuous wipe
3. **OFF**
4. Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

### ■ Washer ( )

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, it stops operating after a few more sweeps.

### ■ Operating in reverse

When you shift the transmission to R with the windshield wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

| Front Wiper Position | Rear Wiper Operation |
|---|---|
| **INT** (Intermittent) | Intermittent |
| **LO** (Low speed wipe)<br>**HI** (High speed wipe) | Continuous |

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

# Brightness Control

With the parking lights are turned on and the ignition switch is in ON II*1, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.

**Brighten:** Turn the knob to the right.

**Dim:** Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beeper when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Brightness Control

Instrument panel brightness differs between when the exterior lights are on and when they are off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when the lights are on.

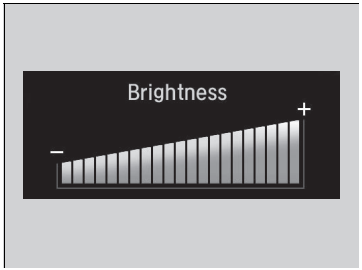
**Models with headlight integration with wipers**

When it is bright outside and the headlight integration with the wiper is activated, the instrument panel brightness does not change.

Turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max. This cancels the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

To cancel the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds.



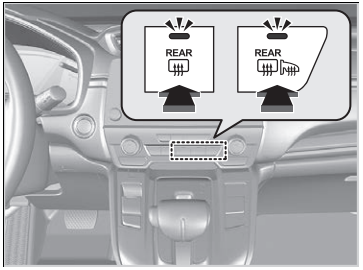

■ **Brightness level indicator**

The brightness level is shown on the driver information interface while you are adjusting it.

# Defogger/Heated Door Mirror*

## ■ Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* Button

Press the rear defogger and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.




**Models without heated door mirror**

The rear defogger automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, it does not automatically switch off.

**Models with heated door mirror**

The rear defogger and heated door mirror automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, they do not automatically switch off.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Defogger/Heated Door Mirror*

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged or deiced. Also, do not use the system for a long period when the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

**Models with heated door mirror**

When the outside temperature is below 41°F (5°C), the heated door mirror may activate automatically for 10 minutes when you set the power mode to ON.

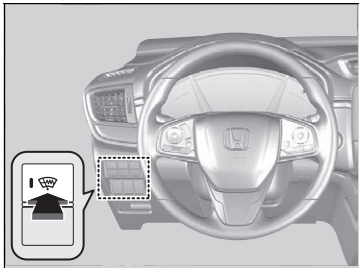




* Not available on all models

Canadian models

## ■ Heated Windshield Button



Press the heated windshield button to deice the windshield at the wiper park area and along the driver side edge of the windshield when the power mode is in ON.
The heated windshield will automatically switch off after 15 minutes.

Heated Windshield Button

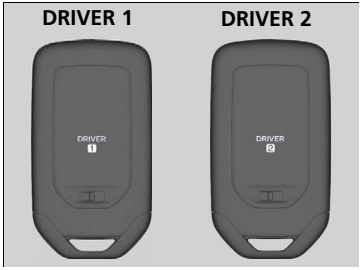
This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged or deiced. Also, do not use the system for a long period when the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

# Driving Position Memory System*

You can store two driver's seat positions (except for power lumbar) with the driving position memory system.

When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote transmitter or the smart entry system, the seat adjusts automatically to one of the two preset positions.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.




Driving Position Memory System*

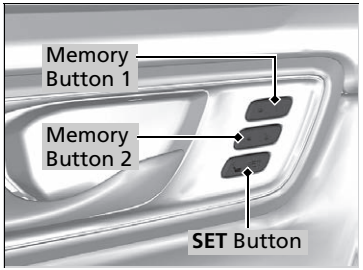
Using the audio/information screen, you can disable the automatic seat adjustment function.

**Customized Features** P. 366



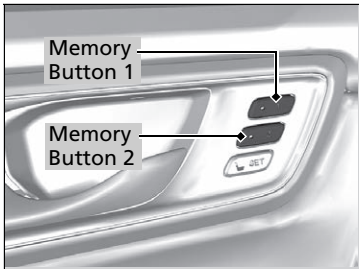
 * Not available on all models

## ■ Storing a Position in Memory




**1.** Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
**2.** Press the **SET** button.
▶ You will hear a beep, and the memory button indicator light will blink.
**3.** Press and hold memory button 1 or 2 within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
▶ Once the seat position has been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on.

## ■ Recalling the Stored Position




**1.** Move the shift lever to P.
**2.** Apply the parking brake.
**3.** Press a memory button (1 or 2).
▶ You will hear a beep, and the indicator light will blink.

The seat will automatically move to the memorized position. When it has finished moving, you will hear a beeper, and the indicator light stays on.

### Storing a Position in Memory

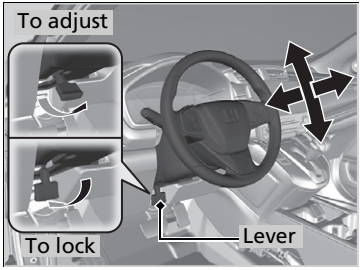
After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be canceled when:
- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

### Recalling the Stored Position

The seat will stop moving if you:
- Press the **SET** button, or a memory button (1 or 2).
- Adjust the seat position.
- Shift into any position except P.

# Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.




**1.** Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
**2.** Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
**3.** Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

**⚠WARNING**

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

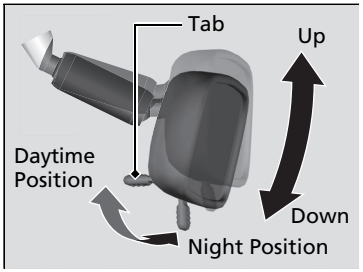
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.

## Interior Rearview Mirror

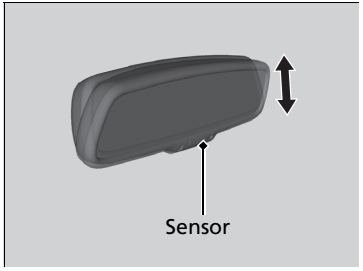
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

### ■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*




Flip the tab to switch the position.
The night position will help reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

### ■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*




When driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. This feature is always active.

**Adjusting the Mirrors**

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

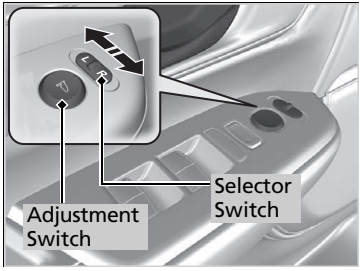
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
➡ **Front Seats** P. 203

**Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror***

The auto dimming function cancels when the shift position is in R.

* Not available on all models

# Power Door Mirrors




You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON II*1.

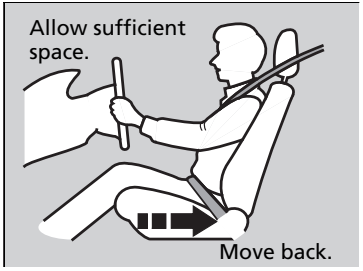
■ **Mirror position adjustment**

**L/R selector switch:** Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the center position.

**Mirror position adjustment switch:** Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Front Seats




Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Adjusting the Seats

**⚠WARNING**

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

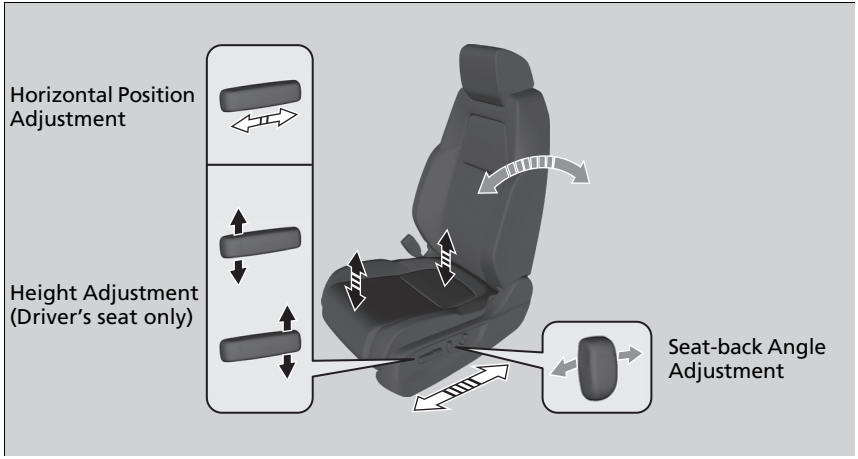
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

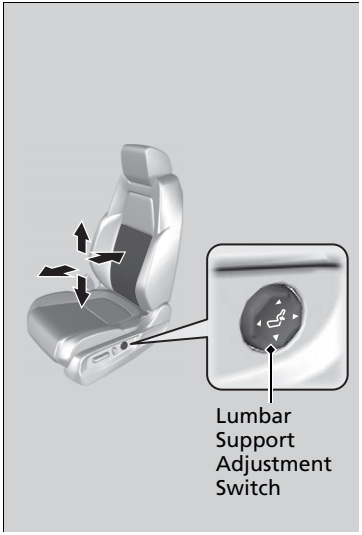
### Adjusting the Seat Positions

#### Adjusting the front power seat*




* Not available on all models

*Continued*




■ **Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch***

**Press the top:** To move the lumbar support up.

**Press the bottom:** To move the lumbar support down.

**Press the front:** To increase the entire lumbar support.

**Press the rear:** To decrease the entire lumbar support.



 * Not available on all models

## ■ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*

Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*

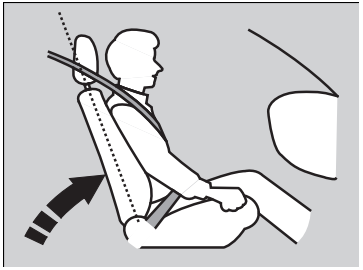
Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

**⚠WARNING**

**Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.**

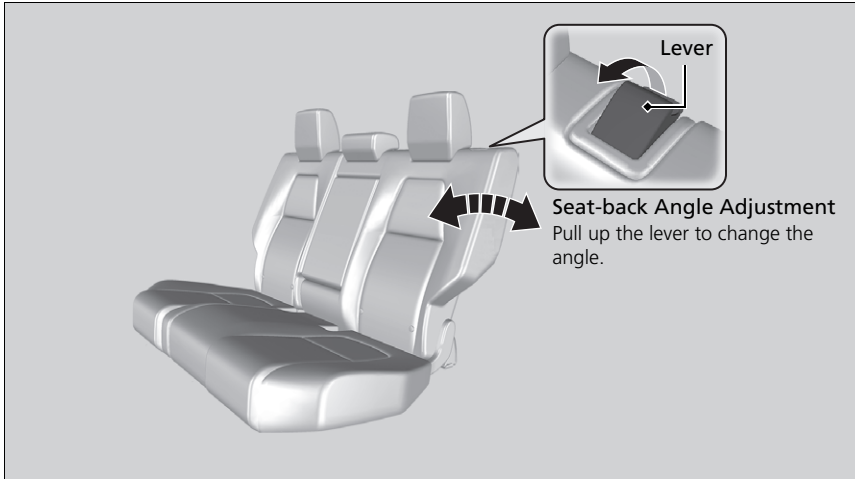
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

# Rear Seats

## ■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

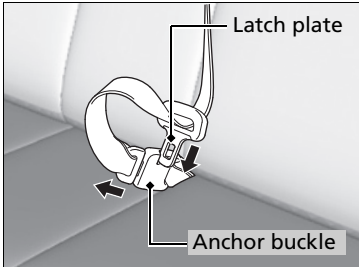



Rear Seats

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

*Continued*

## ■ Folding Down the Rear Seats

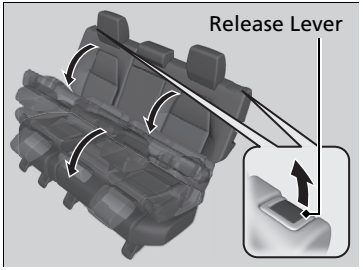



**1.** Store the center seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.

**2.** Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.

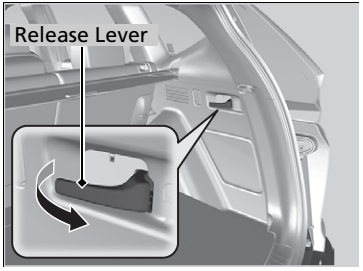
➡ **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor** P. 47

**3.** Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position. Put the armrest back into the seat-back.




From the rear seat side

**4.** Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.




From the cargo area side

**4.** Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

### Folding Down the Rear Seats

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the cargo area.

Remove any items from the rear seat cushion and floor before you fold down the rear seat.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the tailgate open.

➡ **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 80

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

**Make sure all items in the cargo area or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.**

Make sure that the folded seat-back does not press against the front passenger seat, as this can cause the weight sensors in the front passenger seat to work improperly.

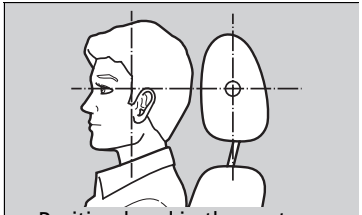
➡ **Passenger Airbag Off Indicator** P. 63

Make sure the seat-back, head restraints and seat cushion are securely latched back into place before driving.

# Head Restraints

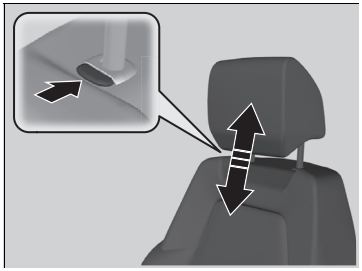
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

## Adjusting the Front Head Restraints



Position head in the center of the head restraint.

Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the center height of the restraint.



**To raise the head restraint:** Pull it upward.
**To lower the head restraint:** Push it down while pressing the release button.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints

**⚠WARNING**

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

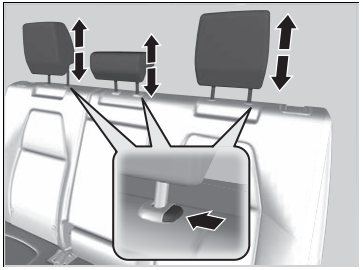
Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

*Continued*

## ■ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position



A passenger sitting in the rear seat should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

**To raise the head restraint:**
Pull it upward.

**To lower the head restraint:**
Push it down while pressing the release button.

## ■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

**To remove a head restraint:**
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

**To reinstall a head restraint:**
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

**⚠WARNING**

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

# Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

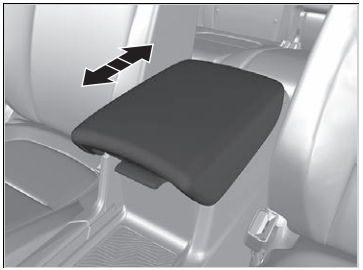
**⚠WARNING**

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

# Armrest

## ■ Using the Front Seat Armrest

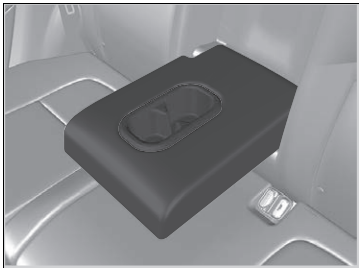


The console lid can be used as an armrest.

**To adjust:**

Slide the armrest to a desired position.

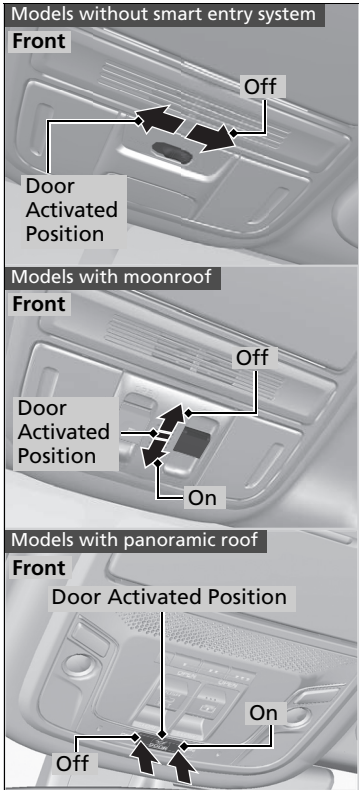
## ■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest



Pull down the armrest in the center seat-back.

# Interior Lights

## ■ Interior Light Switches




### ■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

### ■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.

Models without smart entry system

- You remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

### ■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.

Models without smart entry system

- When you remove the key from the ignition switch but do not open a door.

Models with smart entry system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

Models with Display Audio

**Customized Features** P. 366

Models with color audio system

**Customized Features** P. 127

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.

Models without smart entry system

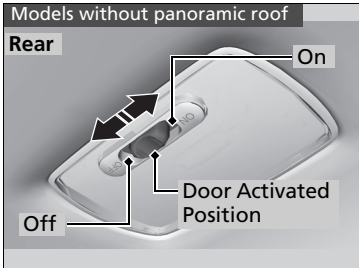
- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch.

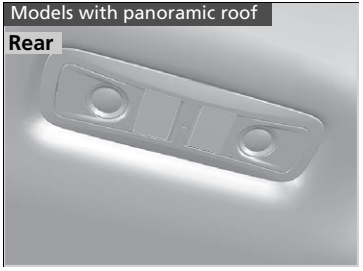
Models with smart entry system

- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.



*Continued*



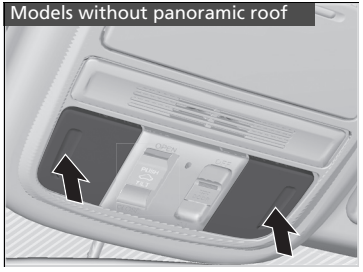

### Interior Light Switches

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine or power system is off.

If you leave any doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, or without the key in the ignition switch, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

## ■ Map Lights

Models without panoramic roof



### ■ Front

Models without panoramic roof

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lens.

Models with panoramic roof

Models with panoramic roof

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the button.

Map Lights

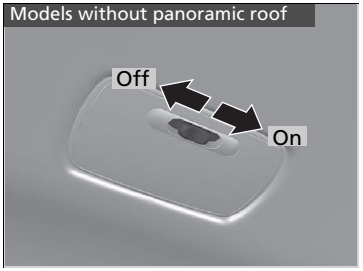
Models without panoramic roof

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the lens.

Models with panoramic roof

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and a door is opened or interior light switch is in the **ON** position, the rear map light will not go off when you press the button.

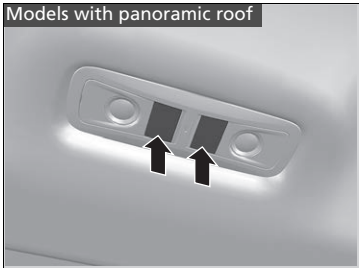
*Continued*




### ■ Rear

Models without panoramic roof

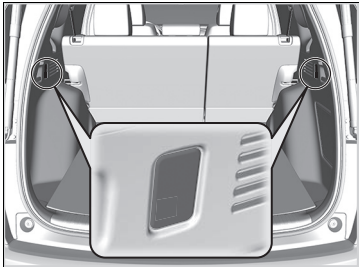
The map lights can be turned on and off by sliding the switch.




Models with panoramic roof

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the button.

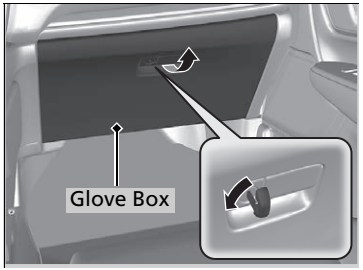
## ■ Cargo Area Lights



The lights come on when you open the tailgate.

# Interior Convenience Items

## ■ Glove Box




Pull the handle to open the glove box. You can lock the glove box with the master key or the built-in key.

Glove Box

**⚠WARNING**

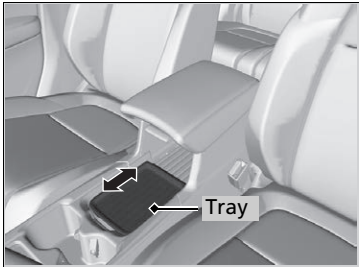
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

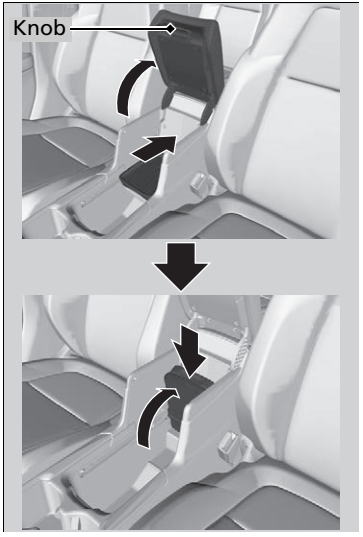


*Continued*

## ■ Center Console Box




You can change the position of the tray by sliding it forward or back.



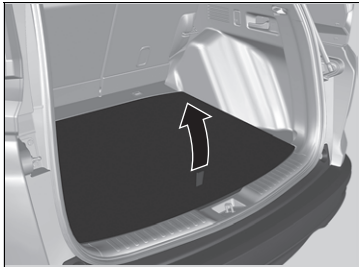

If you want to make greater use of the console box:

**1.** Pull the knob to open the armrest.

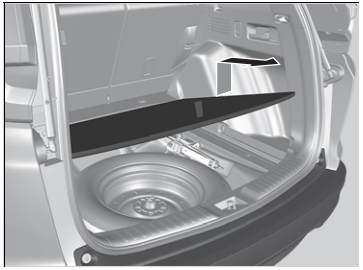
**2.** Slide the tray back.

**3.** Hold the front of the tray and pull it up.

## ■ Under-floor Storage Area



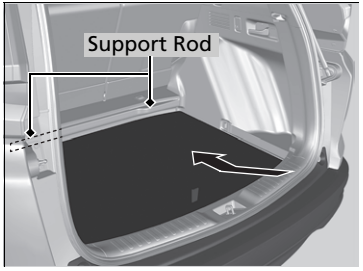
Pull the strap to open the cargo floor lid.



### ■ Storing items on the lid at the bottom position

This is convenient when storing a tall item.

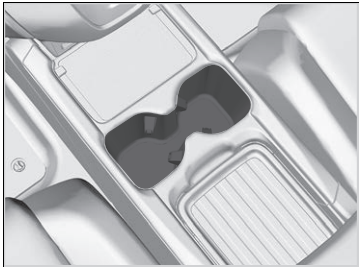
1. Pull the strap upwards to lift the lid.
2. Pull the lid towards you until it disengages from the support rods.




3. Push the far end of the lid down to the bottom under the support rod, then lower the other end.

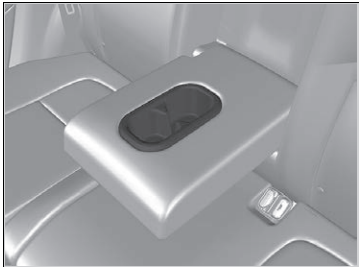
*Continued*

## ■ Beverage Holders



### ■ Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.



### ■ Rear seat beverage holders

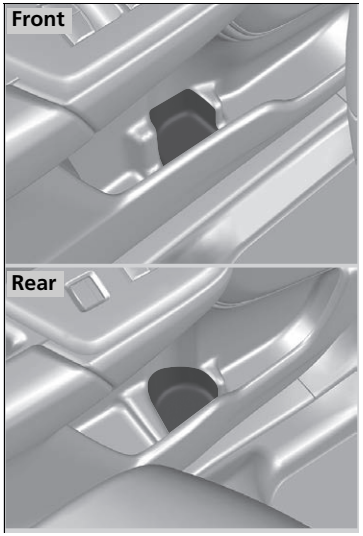
Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

Beverage Holders

NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.




■ **Door side beverage holders**

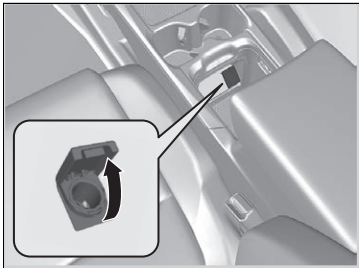
Are located on the both of front and rear door side pockets.



*Continued*

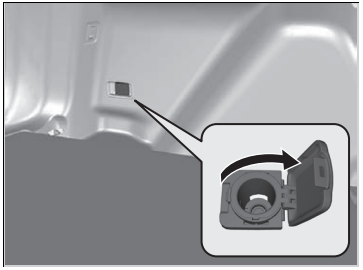
## ■ Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY I or ON II*1.



### ■ Accessory power socket in the console compartment

Open the console lid and the cover to use it.



### ■ Accessory power socket (cargo area)*2

Open the cover to use it.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2: Canadian models only, if equipped

Accessory Power Sockets

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element.
This can overheat the power socket.

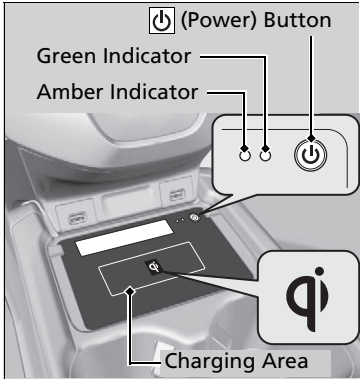
The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts or less (15 amps).

To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

## ■ Wireless Charger*

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.
Charge a compatible device on the area indicated by the mark as follows:




1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the (power) button.
   ▶ When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.
2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
   ▶ The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
   ▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the center of the charging area.
3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
   ▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

Wireless Charger*

### ⚠CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the engine is not running. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

### ■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

| Indicator | | Cause | Solution |
|---|---|---|---|
| Green & Amber | Blinking simultaneously | There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device. | Remove the obstacle(s). |
| | | The device is not within the charging area. | Move the device to the center of the charging area where ⓠ is located. |
| Amber | Blinking | The wireless charger is faulty. | Contact a dealer for repairs. |

Wireless Charger*

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charging area while charging. The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also precision machines such as watches can be affected.

"Qi" and ⓠ marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:
- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic wave or noises such as TV station, electric power plant, or gas station.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

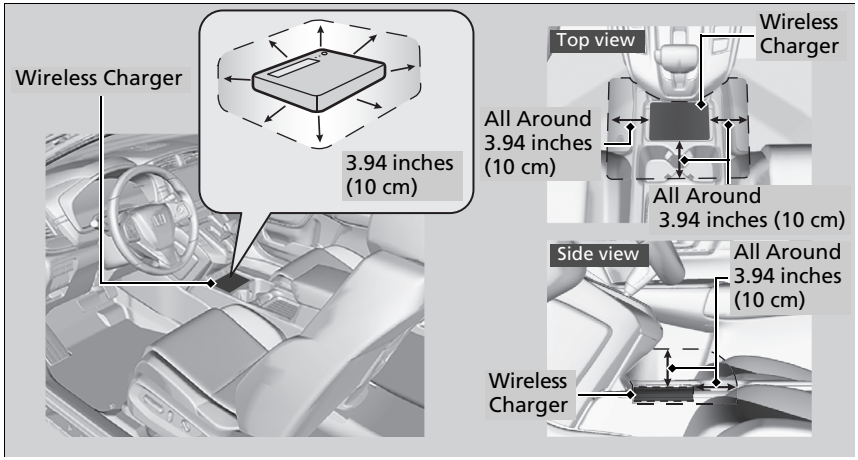
Charging may be briefly interrupted when:
- All the doors and the tailgate are closed - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the smart entry system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

 * Not available on all models

## ■ FCC statement

RF Exposure Notice:
This wireless charger complies with FCC RF exposure guidelines at the distance of 3.94 inches (10 cm).
Keep a distance of at least 3.94 inches (10 cm) between all occupants and the wireless charger when charging.
Don't remove the wireless charger yourself; contact a dealer for assistance.




≫Wireless Charger*

**FCC statement**

This product complies with the appropriate requirements or the required standards of FCC (Federal Communication Commission), described below:
This device complies with Part 18 of the FCC rules. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used per the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

In order to use safely:
- Remove any metal objects from the charge pad before charging a device.
- Do not open the charger case.
- Do not use the charger if it malfunctions. Contact a dealer.

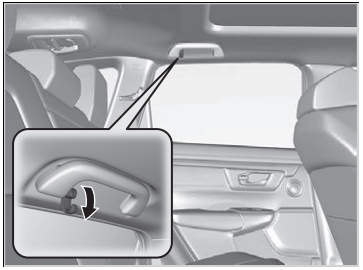
If the charger interferes with radio communications, attempt to correct the interference:
- Press and hold the switch on the charger for a few seconds to turn off the charger.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Coat Hook

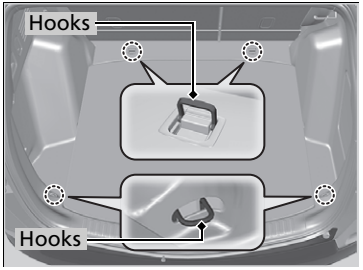


There is a coat hook on the rear left grab handle. Pull it down to use it.

### Coat Hook

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

## ■ Tie-down Anchors

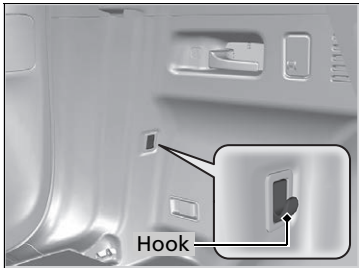



The tie-down anchors on the cargo area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

### Tie-down Anchors

Do not let anyone access items in the cargo area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

## Cargo Hooks




The cargo hooks on the driver's side of the cargo area can be used to hang a light items.

Cargo Hooks

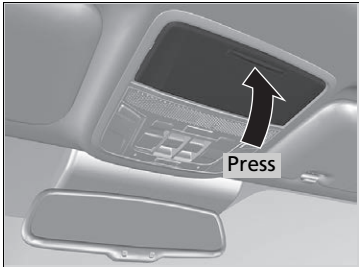
NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 6 lbs (3 kg) on the side cargo hooks. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hooks.



*Continued*

## ■ Sunglasses Holder




To open the sunglasses holder, press and release the indent. To close, press it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.

### ■ Conversation mirror

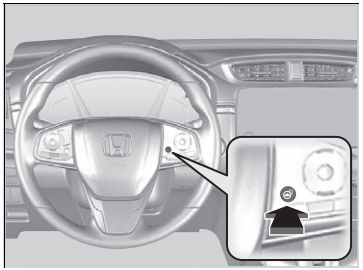
The sunglasses holder comes with a mirror. Open the sunglasses holder fully, then push it back to the first detent.

You can use the mirror to view the rear seats.

Sunglasses Holder

Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

## ■ Heated Steering Wheel*1



The power mode must be in ON to use the heated steering wheel.

Press the button on the right side of the steering wheel.

When a comfortable temperature is reached, press the button again to turn it off.

The heated steering wheel is turned off every time you start the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

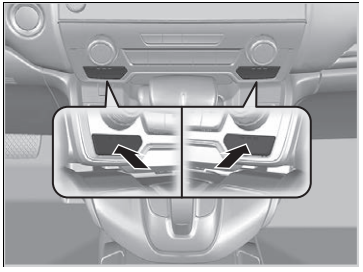
### Heated Steering Wheel*1

Do not use the heated steering wheel continuously when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

*Continued*

## ■ Front Seat Heaters*

The seat heaters can be used when the power mode is in ON.



Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting is maintained.

Front Seat Heaters*

**⚠WARNING**

**Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.**

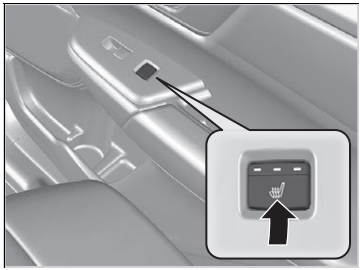
**Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.**

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the front seat heater will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the seat heater shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

 * Not available on all models

## Rear Seat Heaters*1



The seat heaters can be used when the power mode is in ON.

There is no heater in the rear center seating position.
Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

*1: Canadian models only, if equipped

Continued

Rear Seat Heaters*1

**⚠WARNING**

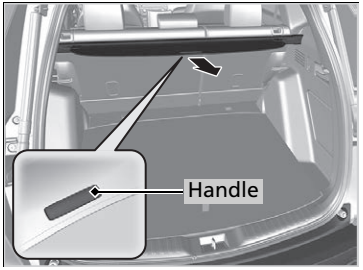
Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the rear seat heaters will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the rear seat heaters shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

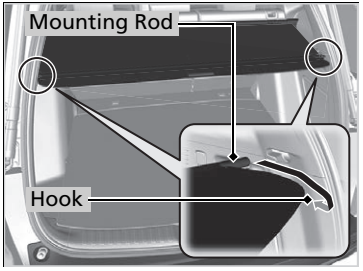
## ■ Rear Cargo Cover*




The rear cargo cover can be used to conceal items in the cargo area and protect them from direct sunlight.

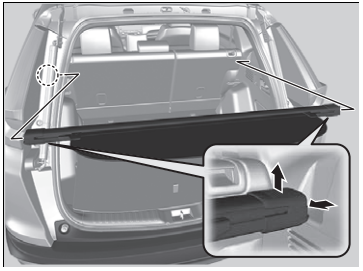
**■ To extend:**

Slightly lift up on the handle at the center edge of the cover to unhook each end, then pull the cover rearward and clip the mounting rods in the hooks at both sides of the tailgate opening.




**■ To retract:**

Slip the rods out of the hooks, then slowly roll it back until it is completely retracted.



**■ To remove:**

Push either end of the housing inward, then lift it out of its position.

### Rear Cargo Cover*

Do not let anyone access items in the cargo area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the cargo area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

To prevent rear cargo cover damage:
- Do not place items on the rear cargo cover.
- Do not put weight on the rear cargo cover.

Be sure that each mounting rod sets in its respective retention groove when you retract the rear cargo cover. If they are not set in the grooves, the rods may rattle as they contact the surrounding surfaces.



* Not available on all models

## Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

Models without SYNC button

Models with SYNC button

Use the system when the engine is running.

**1.** Press the **AUTO** button.

Models without SYNC button

**2.** Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.

Models with SYNC button

**2.** Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side control dial.

**3.** Press the ON/OFF (on/off) button to cancel.

*Continued*

Using Automatic Climate Control

Press the **CLIMATE** button to display **A/C**, **MODE**, fan control information on the audio/information screen to operate manually. Select icon to turn on or off **A/C**, change the vent mode, or change the fan speed.
If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

During idle-stops, air-conditioning is suspended, and only the blower remains active.
If you do not want air-conditioning suspended, press the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button to cancel idle-stop.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

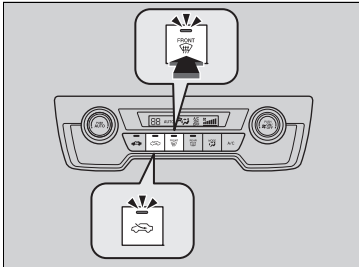
### ■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

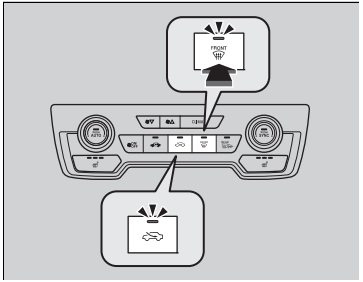
Press the (recirculation) or (fresh air) button to switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator on): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

## ■ Defrosting the Windshield and Windows





Pressing the FRONT (windshield defroster) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the FRONT button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

**Using Automatic Climate Control**

Pressing the ON/OFF button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

**Defrosting the Windshield and Windows**

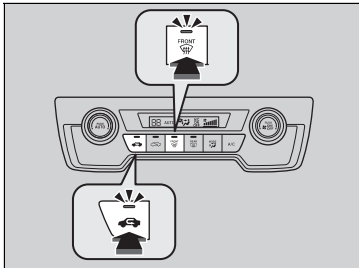
**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

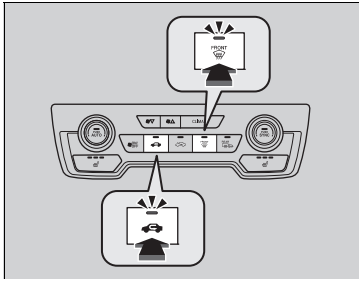
Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

If you press the FRONT button during Auto Idle Stop, the engine restarts automatically.

## ■ To rapidly defrost the windows



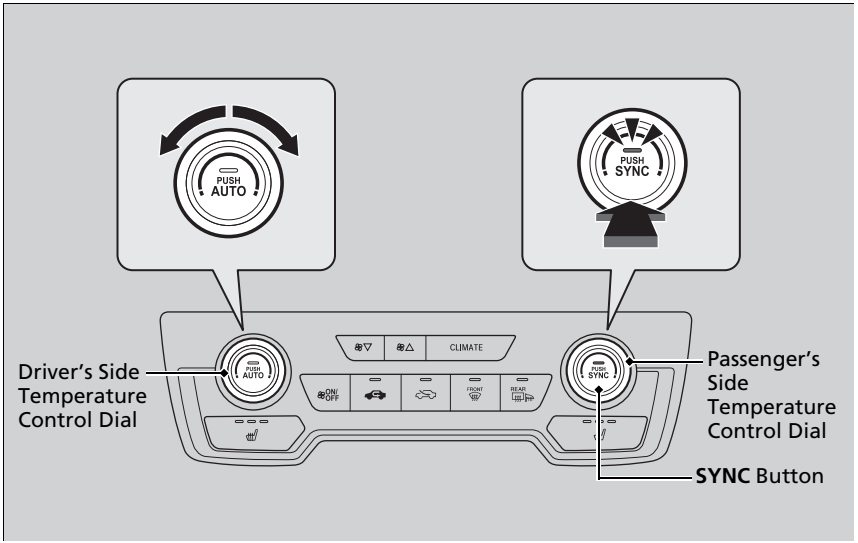


**1.** Press the FRONT button.
**2.** Press the button.

To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

# Synchronization Mode*




You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

**1.** Press the **SYNC** button.
▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.

**2.** Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.

Synchronization Mode*

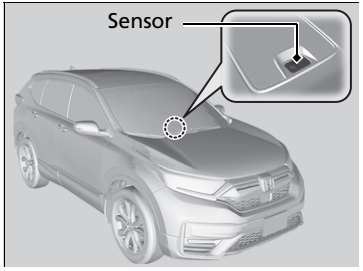
When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

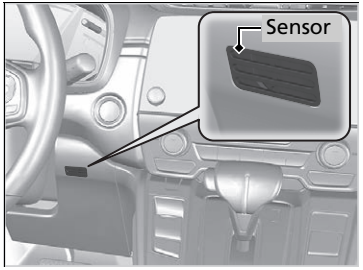




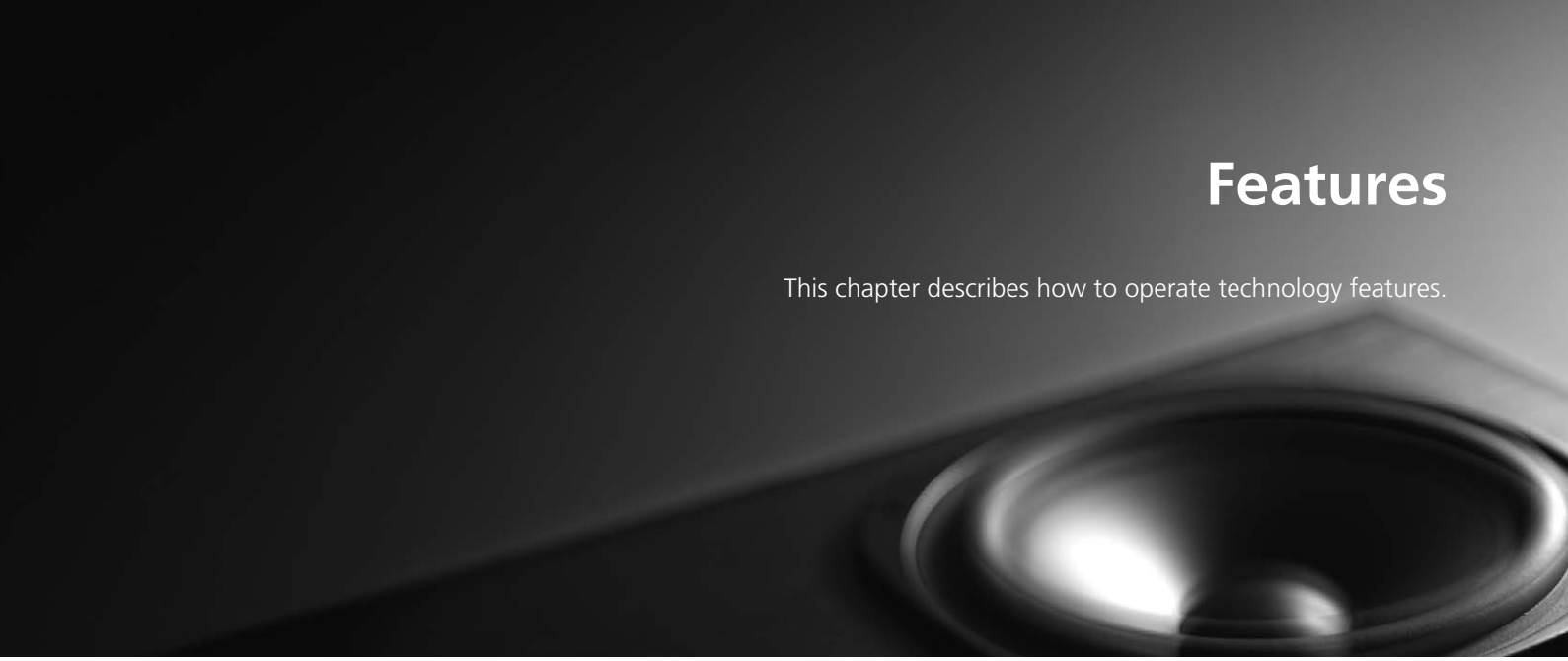
* Not available on all models

# Automatic Climate Control Sensors




The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



# Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.


**Audio System**
- About Your Audio System..... 240
- USB Port(s)..... 241
- Audio System Theft Protection..... 242
- Audio Remote Controls..... 243

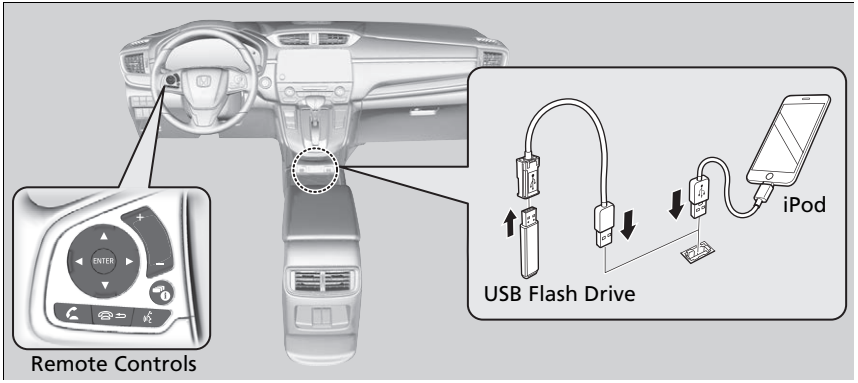
**Audio System Basic Operation** .... 246, 267
**Audio Error Messages** ..... 337
**General Information on the Audio System** ..... 342
**Customized Features**..... 359, 366
**HomeLink® Universal Transceiver***.. 393
***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** ..... 396, 420
**Compass*** ..... 454


* Not available on all models

## About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio and SiriusXM® Radio service*. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone and *Bluetooth*® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface*.




About Your Audio System

SiriusXM® Radio* is available on a subscription basis only. For more information on SiriusXM® Radio*, contact a dealer.

**General Information on the Audio System**
P. 342

SiriusXM® Radio* is available in the United States and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico.

SiriusXM®* is a registered trademark of SiriusXM Radio, Inc.

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

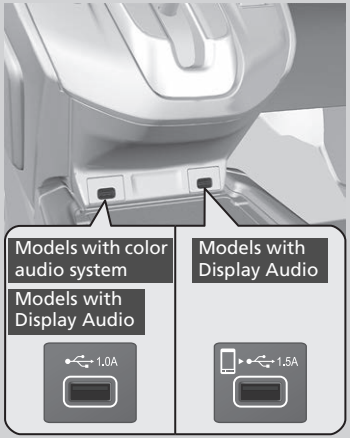




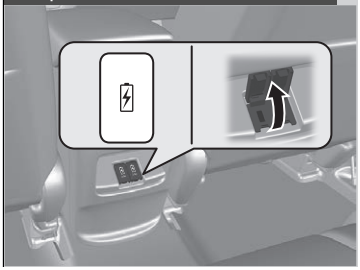
* Not available on all models

# USB Port(s)

In the console compartment




On the back of the center console compartment



The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on a USB flash drive, connecting a cellular phone, and charging devices.

Models with Display Audio

The USB port (1.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay™ or Android Auto™.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

## ■ On the back of the center console compartment*

The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

USB Port(s)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 1.5A/2.5A of power. It does not output 1.5A/2.5A unless requested by the device.
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

On the back of the center console compartment

These ports are for battery charge only. You cannot play music even if you have connected a music player to them.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.



* Not available on all models

# Audio System Theft Protection

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

### ■ Reactivating the audio system

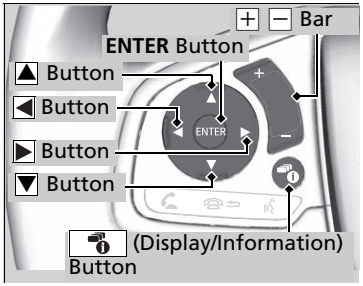
**1.** Turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1.
**2.** Turn on the audio system.
**3.** Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.



*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

# Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.




**▲ ▼ Buttons**

Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through the audio mode as follows:

Models with color audio system

FM1→FM2→AM→USB/iPod→Pandora®→ *Bluetooth*® Audio

Models with Display Audio

FM→AM→SiriusXM®*→USB→iPod→*Bluetooth*® Audio→Pandora®*→Apps*→Audio Apps*

Models with Display Audio

**ENTER Button**

- When listening to the radio and SiriusXM®*

1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a preset, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to a USB flash drive

1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a folder.
3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of tracks in that folder.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

## Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the (Hang-up/back) button to go back to the previous command or cancel a command.

Models with Display Audio

Press the (Display/information) button to switch display.

**Switching the Display** P. 268



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

- When listening to an iPod

**1.** From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
**2.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select a category.
**3.** Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.
**4.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.
▶ Press **ENTER** and press ▲ or ▼ repeatedly until the desired mode you want to listen to is displayed.

- When listening to Pandora®*

**1.** From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the station list.
**2.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select an item, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to *Bluetooth*® Audio

**1.** From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the track list.
**2.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

**+ − (Volume) Bar**
**Press +:** To increase the volume.
**Press −:** To decrease the volume.



 * Not available on all models

**◀ ▶ Buttons**

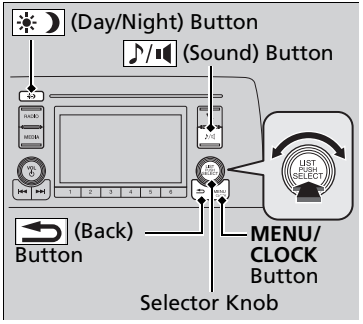
- When listening to the radio
  **Press ▶:** To select the next preset radio station.
  **Press ◀:** To select the previous preset radio station.
  **Press and hold ▶:** To select the next strong station.
  **Press and hold ◀:** To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  **Press ▶:** To skip to the next song.
  **Press ◀:** To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive or *Bluetooth*® Audio*
  **Press and hold ▶:** To skip to the next folder.
  **Press and hold ◀:** To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to Pandora®*
  **Press ▶:** To skip to the next track.
  **Press and hold ▶:** To select the next station.
  **Press and hold ◀:** To select the previous station.



* Not available on all models

Models with color audio system

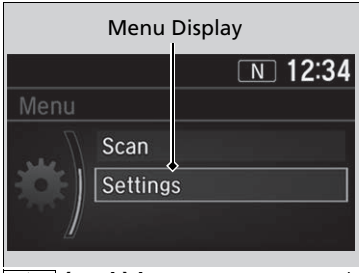
To use the audio system, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY I or ON II.




Use the selector knob or **MENU/CLOCK** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

**Selector knob:** Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.




**MENU/CLOCK button:** Press to select any mode.
The available modes include wallpaper, display, clock, language setup, and play modes. Play mode choices include scan, random, repeat, and so on.

**(Back) button:** Press to go back to the previous display.
**(Sound) button:** Press to select the sound setting mode.
**(Day/Night) button:** Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.
Press the button, then adjust the brightness using .

- Each time you press the button, the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.
Rotate to select.
Press to enter.

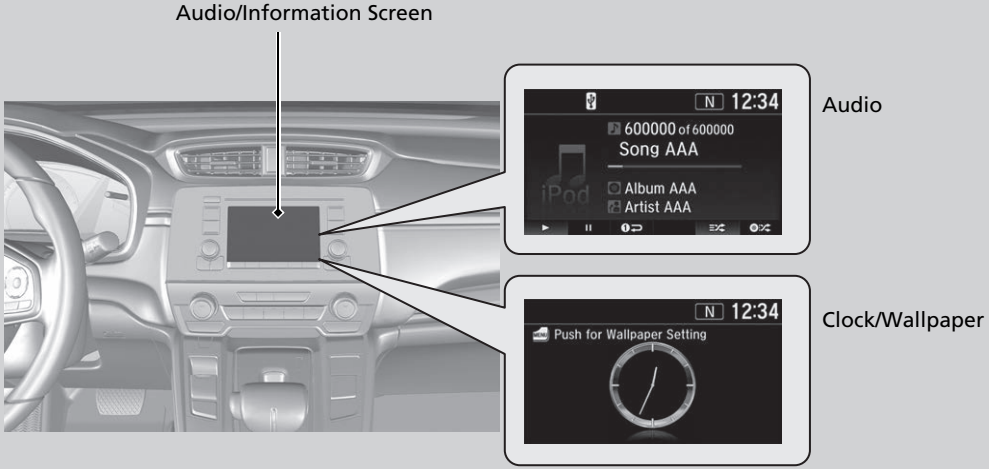
Menu Items
- **Adjust Clock** P. 138
- **Wallpaper Setup** P. 249
- **Adjusting the Sound** P. 251
- **Display Setup** P. 252
- **Customized Features** P. 359

Press the button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.
- **Audio Remote Controls** P. 243

# Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

## ■ Switching the Display






Continued

### ■ Audio
Shows the current audio information.

### ■ Clock/Wallpaper
Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

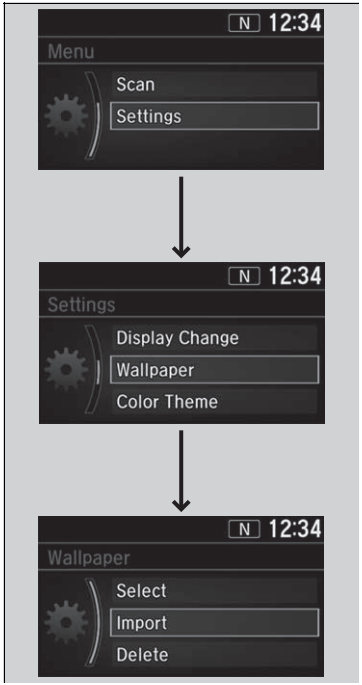
### ■ Change display
**1.** Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
**2.** Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
**3.** Rotate to select **Display Change**, then press .
**4.** Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
▶ If you want to return to the audio/information screen, select **Audio**.

## ■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### ■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.




1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
   ➡ **USB Port(s)** P. 241
2. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Settings**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Wallpaper**, then press ⊙.
5. Rotate ⟲ to select **Import**, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Rotate ⟲ to select a desired picture, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The selected picture is displayed.
7. Press ⊙ to save the picture.
8. Press ⊙ to select **OK**.
9. Rotate ⟲ to select a location to save the picture, then press ⊙.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

*Continued*

Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 480 × 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, a message appears.
- The wallpaper setup is limited while driving.

### ■ Select wallpaper

**1.** Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
**2.** Rotate to select **Settings**, then press.
**3.** Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press.
**4.** Rotate to select **Select**, then press.
▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
**5.** Rotate to select a desired wallpaper, then press.

### ■ To view wallpaper once it is set

**1.** Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
**2.** Rotate to select **Settings**, then press.
**3.** Rotate to select **Display Change**, then press.
**4.** Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press.
**5.** Press the (Back) button until the top screen is displayed.

### ■ Delete wallpaper

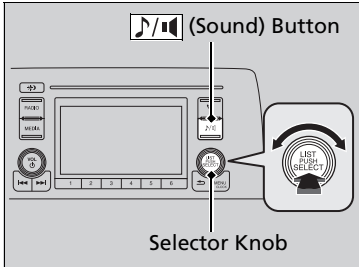
**1.** Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
**2.** Rotate to select **Settings**, then press.
**3.** Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press.
**4.** Rotate to select **Delete**, then press.
▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
**5.** Rotate to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press.
**6.** Rotate to select **Yes**, then press.
▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

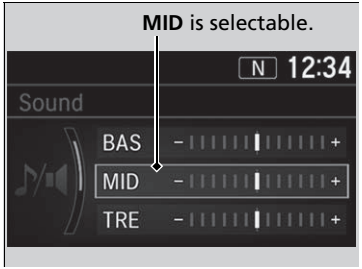
Wallpaper Setup

To go back to the previous screen, press the (Back) button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

# Adjusting the Sound




Press the (sound) button, and rotate to scroll through the following choices:

- **BAS** — Bass
- **MID** — Middle
- **TRE** — Treble
- **FAD** — Fader
- **BAL** — Balance
- **SVC** — Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation

Rotate to adjust the sound setting, then press .

## Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

# Display Setup

You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information screen.

## ■ Changing the Screen Brightness

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Display Adjustment**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Brightness**, then press .
5. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

## ■ Changing the Screen's Color Theme

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Color Theme**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .

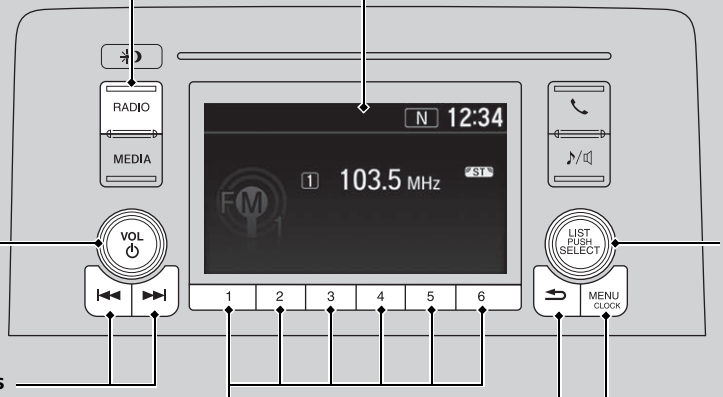
Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

# Playing AM/FM Radio

**RADIO Button**
Press to select a band.

**Audio/Information Screen**




**VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob**
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

**⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons**
Press ⏮ or ⏭ to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

**Preset Buttons (1-6)**
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.

To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.

**Selector Knob**
Turn to tune the radio frequency.
Press, and then turn to select an item. After that, press again to make your selection.

**MENU/CLOCK Button**
Press to display the menu items.

**⮌ (Back) Button**
Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.



*Continued*

## ■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

**1.** Press ⏻ while listening to an FM station.
**2.** Rotate ↶ to select the station, then press ⏻.

### ■ Update List

Updates your available station list at any time.
**1.** Press ⏻ while listening to an FM station.
**2.** Rotate ↶ to select **Update List**, then press ⏻.

### ■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.
**1.** Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
**2.** Rotate ↶ to select **Settings**, then press ⏻.
**3.** Rotate ↶ to select **RDS Settings**, then press ⏻.
**4.** Rotate ↶ to select **Radio Text**, then press ⏻.

### ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.
**1.** Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
**2.** Rotate ↶ to select **Scan**, then press ⏻.

To turn off scan, press ⏻.

Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory. FM1 and FM2 let you store 6 stations each.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the audio source selecting button on the steering wheel.
➔ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 243

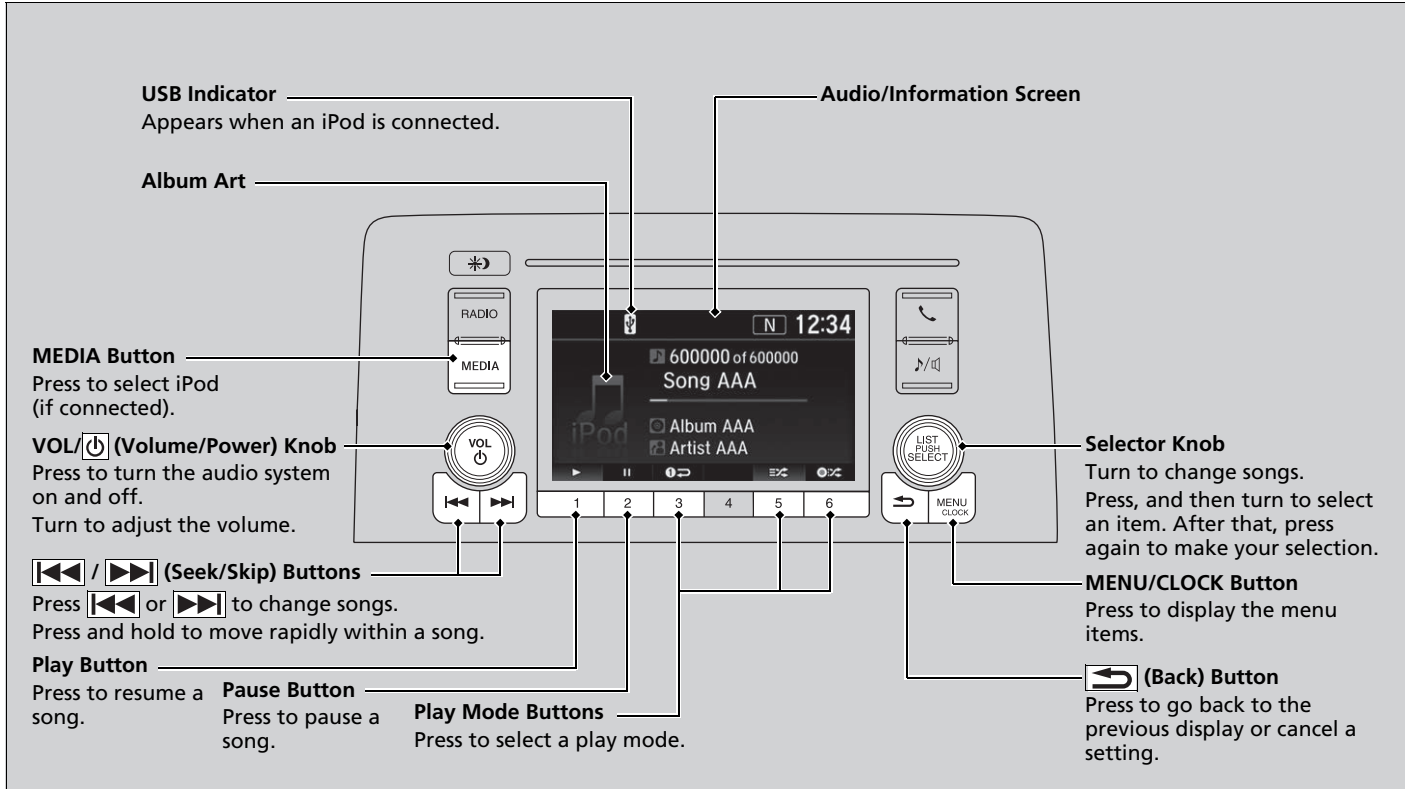
Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

# Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

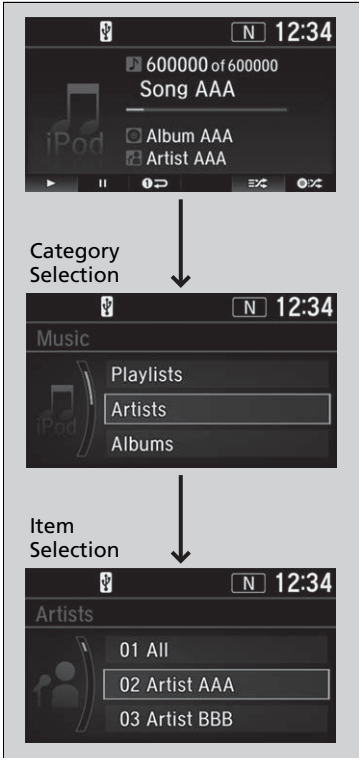
**USB Port(s)** P. 241






*Continued*

## How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob




**1.** Press to display the iPod music list.

**2.** Rotate to select a category.

**3.** Press to display a list of items in the category.

**4.** Rotate to select an item, then press .
▶ Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

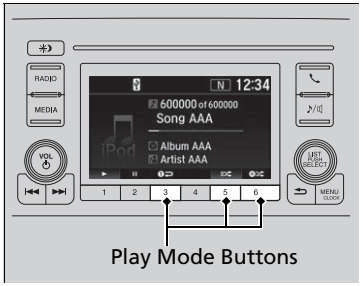
Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.
**iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 337

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.




Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.
Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

### To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Shuffle Albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or podcasts, audiobooks, and composers) in random order.

**Shuffle All:** Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, podcasts, audiobooks, and composers) in random order.

**Repeat One Track:** Repeats the current song.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .
Rotate to select a mode, then press .
To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

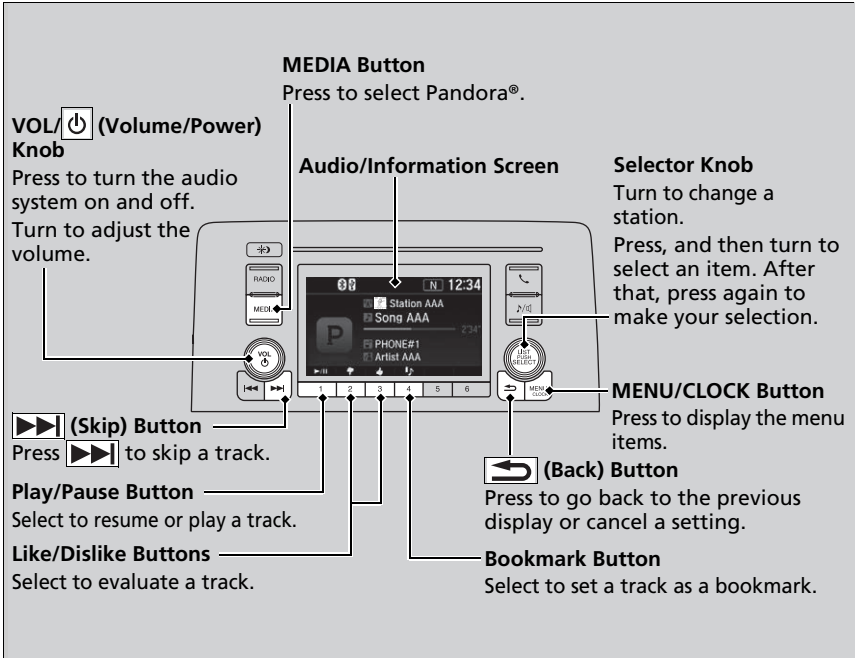
# Playing Pandora®

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from the Pandora® app on a compatible smartphone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system, or with an iPhone, you can connect using your USB cable to the USB port.

**Phone Setup** P. 402

**USB Port(s)** P. 241




Playing Pandora®

Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora is only available in certain countries. Visit the Pandora website for more information.

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528-7876.

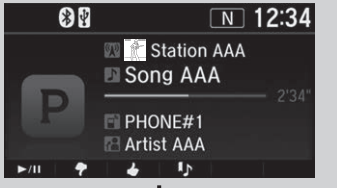
To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit *www.pandora.com*. for more information.

Pandora® is free, personalized radio that plays music and comedy you'll love. Just start with the name of one of your favorite artists, tracks, comedians or composers and Pandora® will create a custom station that plays similar tracks. Pandora® also features hundreds of genre stations ranging from Dubstep to Smooth Jazz to Power Workout.

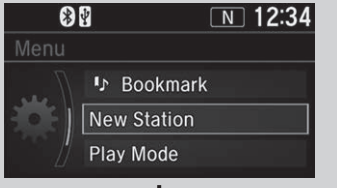
If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through *Bluetooth*® Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

## How to Create a Station

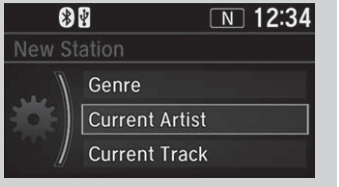
You can create a station when playing Pandora®.




**1.** Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.




**2.** Rotate to select **New Station**, then press .




**3.** Rotate to select an item, then press .
▶ You can select **Genre**, **Current Artist**, or **Current Track**.

### How to Create a Station

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.
**Pandora®*** P. 339

Pandora® may limit the total number of skips allowed on the service. If you dislike a track after the skip limit has been reached, your feedback will be saved but the current track will continue to play.

To change stations, press on the main Pandora® screen, and rotate to select **Station List**, and then select a new station.



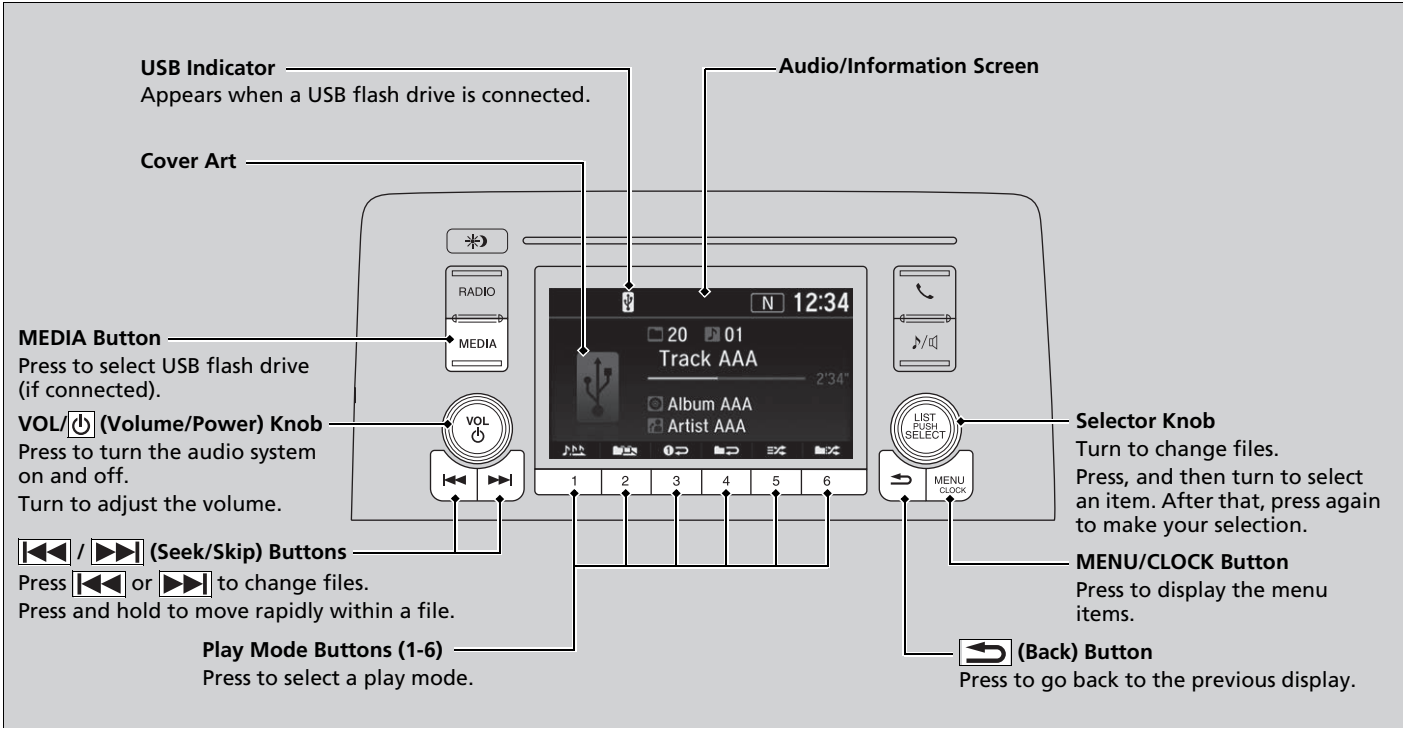
* Not available on all models

# Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC*1 or WAV format.

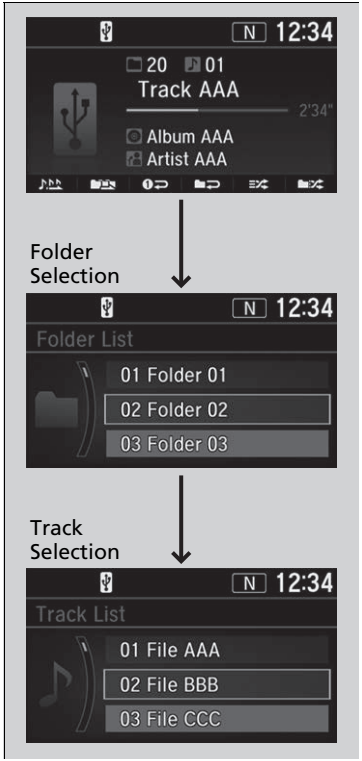
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

**USB Port(s)** P. 241




*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

## How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob




**1.** Press ⍾ to display a folder list.

**2.** Rotate ⍾ to select a folder.

**3.** Press ⍾ to display a list of files in that folder.

**4.** Rotate ⍾ to select a file, then press ⍾.

### Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➡ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 342

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

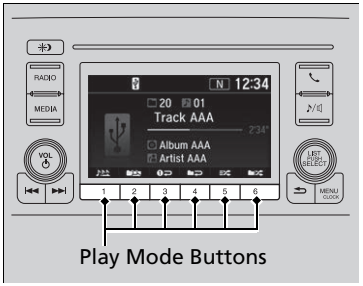
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➡ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 337

*Continued*

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a file.




Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.
Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Repeat**

**Repeat One Folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat One Track:** Repeats the current file.

**Random**

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All:** Plays all files in random order.

**Scan**

**Scan Folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

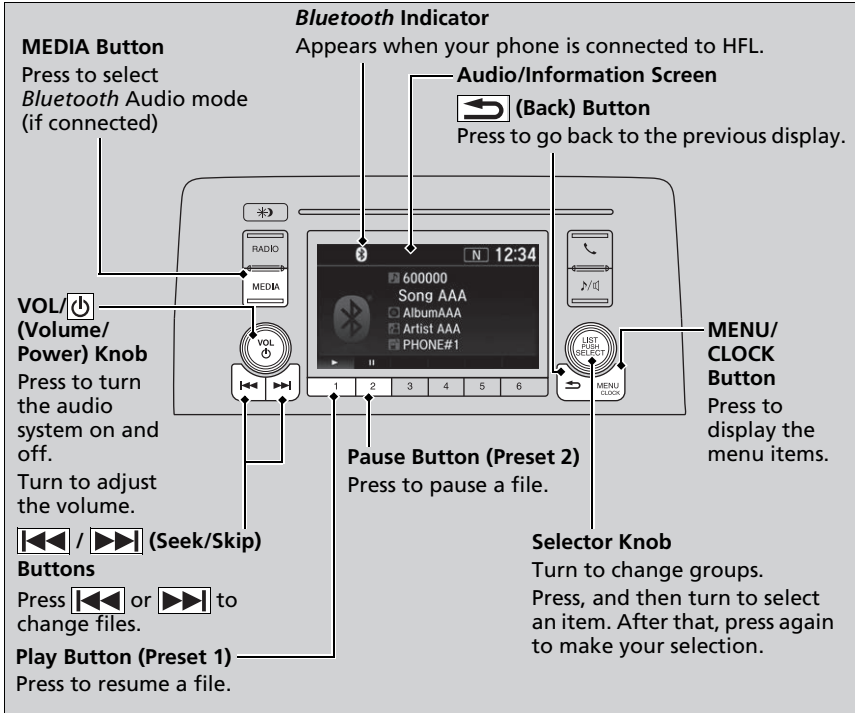
You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
Rotate to select **Play Mode**, then press .
Rotate to select a mode, then press .
To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal Play**, then press .

# Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 402




## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. For a list of compatible phones:

- U.S.: Visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528-7876.

In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFL at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in **Priority Device Setup**.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 359

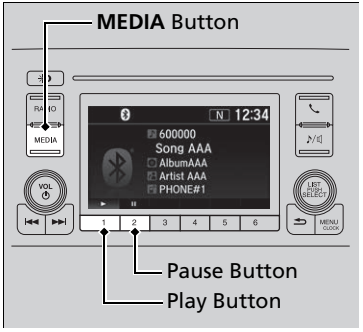
If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

*Continued*

## ■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files




**1.** Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFL.
**2.** Press the **MEDIA** button until the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode is selected.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

### ■ To pause or resume a file

Press the **Play** or **Pause** button to select a mode.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

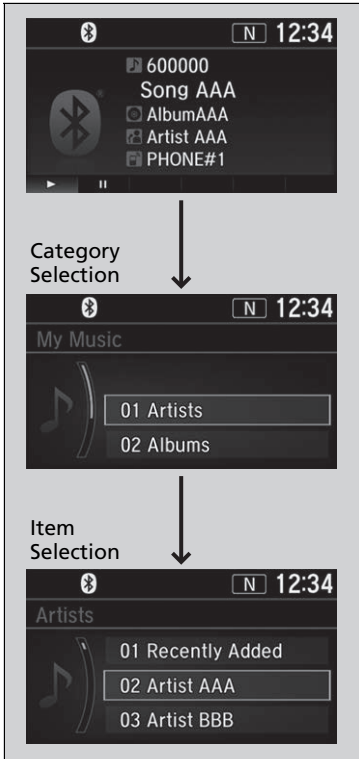
To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the USB port, you may need to press the **MEDIA** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

## How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob




**1.** Press ⏻ to display the music search list.

**2.** Rotate ↷ to select a category.

**3.** Press ⏻ to display a list of items in the category.

**4.** Rotate ↷ to select an item, then press ⏻.
▶ Press ⏻ and rotate ↷ repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

**How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob**

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.

# Siri® Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

**Phone Setup** P. 402

## ■ Using Siri® Eyes Free

**(Hang-up/back) Button**
Press to deactivate Siri® Eyes Free.

Appears when Siri is activated in Siri® Eyes Free

While in Siri® Eyes Free:
The display remains the same. No feedback or commands appear.

**(Talk) Button**
Press and hold until the display changes as shown.

### Siri® Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri® Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

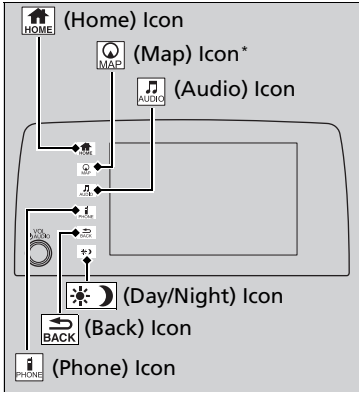
### Using Siri® Eyes Free

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

This audio system cannot operate the audio functions by using Siri® Eyes Free.

Models with Display Audio

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.




(Home): Select to go to the home screen.
➔ **Switching the Display** P. 268

(Map)*: Select to display the map screen.
➔ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

(Audio): Select to display the audio screen.

(Phone): Select to display the phone screen.

(Back): Select to go back to the previous screen when the icon is illuminated.

(Day/Night): Select to change the audio/information screen brightness.
Select (Day/Night) once and select − or + to make an adjustment.

▶ Each time you select (Day/Night), the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

Audio System Basic Operation

Audio Menu Items
- ➔ **Station List** P. 297, 299
- ➔ **Music Search List** P. 308, 317
- ➔ **Scan** P. 298, 306, 318
- ➔ **Play Mode** P. 309, 318



* Not available on all models

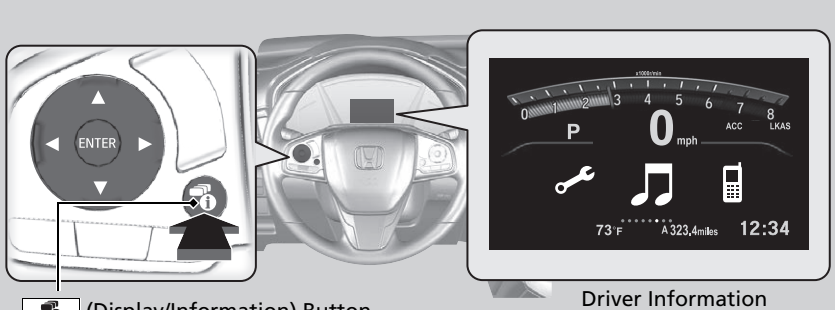
# Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

## ■ Switching the Display

### ■ Using the (display/information) button

Press the (display/information) button to change the display.




(Display/Information) Button

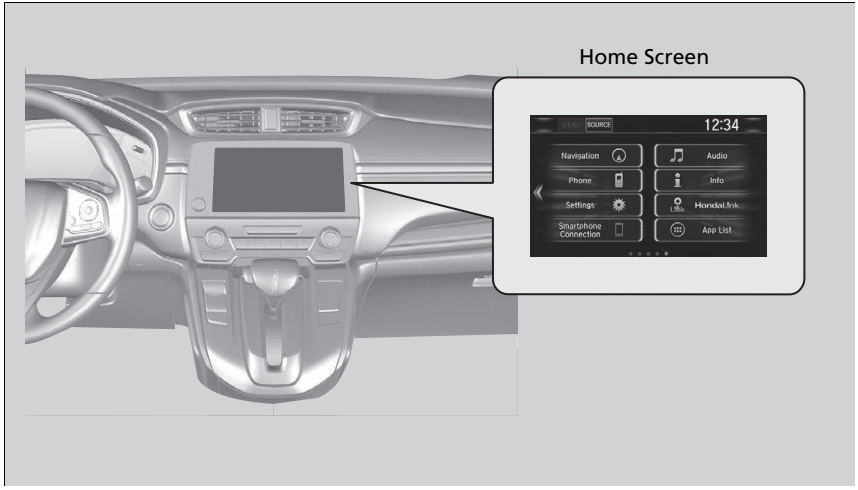
Driver Information Interface

Using the (display/information) button

You can edit, add, and delete the contents shown on the driver information interface.

➡ **Customizing the Meter** P. 273

## ■ Using the audio/information screen




Select HOME to go to the home screen.
Select the following icons on the home screen or after selecting **App List**.

### ■ Phone

Displays the HFL information.

➡ ***Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®** P. 420

Using the audio/information screen

**Touchscreen operation**

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 366

Continued

■ **Info**

Displays **Trip Computer**, **Voice Info**, **Clock/Wallpaper**, or **System/Device Information**. Select **MENU** on the **Info Menu** screen to see all available options: **Trip Computer**, **Voice Info**, **Clock/Wallpaper** and **System/Device Information**.

**Trip Computer**:

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **History of Trip A** tab: Displays information for the three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A.
  To delete the history manually, select **Delete history** on the **History of Trip A** tab. The confirmation message appears on the screen, then select **Yes**.

**Voice Info**: Displays the All Commands list.

**Clock/Wallpaper**: Displays the clock and wallpaper.

**System/Device Information**:

- **System Info**: Displays the software version of the audio system.
- **USB Info**: Displays the memory usage of the USB device.

■ **Audio**

Displays the current audio information.

■ **Settings**

Enters the customizing menu screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 366

■ **Navigation***

Displays the navigation screen.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**



 * Not available on all models

■ **HondaLink**

Displays the HondaLink® screen.

**HondaLink®** P. 322

■ **Apple CarPlay™/Android Auto™**

Displays the Apple CarPlay™ or Android Auto™.

**Apple CarPlay™** P. 330

**Android Auto™** P. 333

■ **App List ( )**

Displays the apps or widgets screen.

**Home Screen** P. 279

■ **Instrument Panel**

Selects from three customizable settings for the driver information interface.



*Continued*

## ■ Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout

1. Select HOME.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **OK**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

## ■ Customizing the Meter

You can edit, add, or delete the meter contents on the driver information interface.

1. HOME
2. **Settings**
3. **System**
4. **Configuration of Instrument Panel**

Customizing the Meter

You can store up to three customized configurations. To select or customize a configuration, select **Swap Config.**.

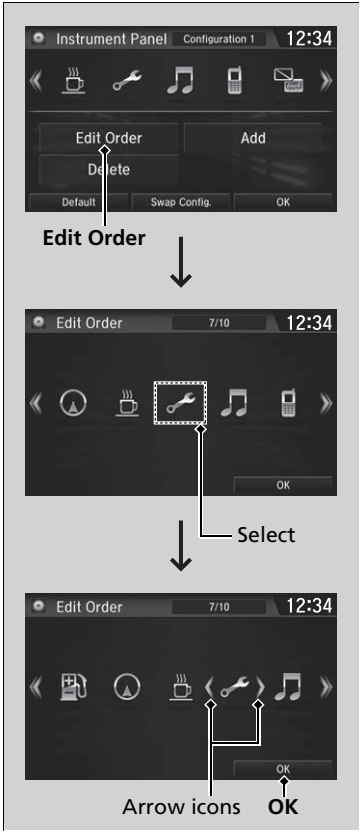
When you select **Swap Config.** during customization, the settings you changed will be saved.

When you select BACK during customization, the settings you changed will not be saved and you will be returned to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

*Continued*

## ■ Editing order

To change the order of the icons on the driver information interface, first select:




**1. Edit Order**

**2.** Select the icon you want to move.
▶ You will see arrows on both sides of the selected icon.

**3.** Select the left or right arrow repeatedly to move the icon to your desired position.

**4.** Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

### Editing order

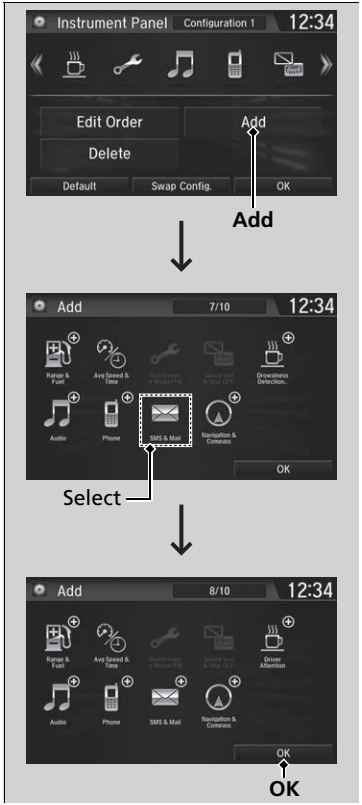
You can use an alternative method to change the order of the icons. First select:

1. **Edit Order**
2. Select and hold the icon you want to move.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **OK**.

▶The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

## ■ Adding contents

You can add icons to the driver information interface. To add icons, first select:




**1. Add**

**2.** Select an icon you want to add.
▶ You will see a plus mark on the upper right hand corner of the selected icon.

**3.** Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

Adding contents

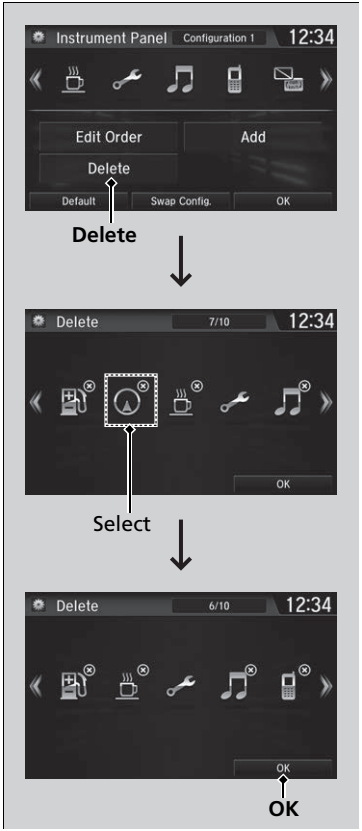
Icons that are grayed out cannot be selected.

If an icon has a plus mark in the upper-right corner, it means that the icon has already been added.

*Continued*

## ■ Deleting contents

To delete contents on the driver information interface, first select:




**1. Delete**

**2.** Select an icon you want to delete.
▶ The icon with an X on the upper right hand corner can be deleted.

**3.** Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

Deleting contents

You can also delete contents by selecting:
1. **Delete** or **Edit Order**
2. Select and hold an icon you want to delete.
3. Drag and drop the icon to the trash icon.
4. Select **OK**.

▶The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

## ■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### ■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
   **USB Port(s)** P. 241
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, select **Next**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
5. Select **Add New**.
   ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Select a desired picture.
   ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

Wallpaper Setup

The wallpaper you set up on **Clock/Wallpaper Type** cannot be displayed on the driver information interface.

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

1. Select HOME.
2. Select ⟪.
3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Change wallpaper**.
5. Select **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, or **Wallpapers**.

*Continued*

### ■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, select **Next**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
   ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
   ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

### ■ To view wallpaper once it is set

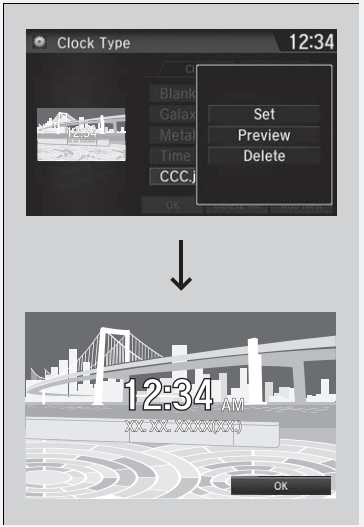
1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select **MENU**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper**.

### ■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, select **Next**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
   ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
   ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
   ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.



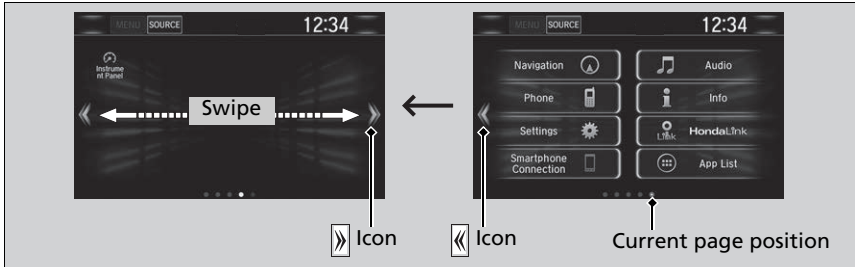

To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or select BACK.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.

## Home Screen

### To change to a next screen




Selecting 《 or 》, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

Home Screen

The home screen has 5 pages (fixed). You cannot add any more pages.

Select HOME to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

Continued

## ■ To use apps or widgets

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **App List** ( ).
   ▶ The apps screen appears.
3. Select the app or widget you want to use.

Preinstall app list:

- **Calculator**: Displays Calculator.
- **Downloads***1: Displays the data downloaded from the web browser and so on.
- **App Installer**: Check with a Honda dealer for apps that are available for installation.

*1: Downloads app cannot be used because there is no Browser function in this system.

### To use apps or widgets

Select and hold a selected app or widget to add that app's or widget's shortcut on the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.
➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 392

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.
➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 392

In case those apps still do not start up normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact an authorized Honda dealer.

Do not install apps other than those confirmed by a Honda dealer. Installation of unauthorized apps may introduce data corruption risks to your vehicle's information and your privacy.

You can delete user installed apps by the following procedure.

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detail Information**.
6. Select **Apps**.
7. Select an app that you want to delete.
8. Select **Delete**.

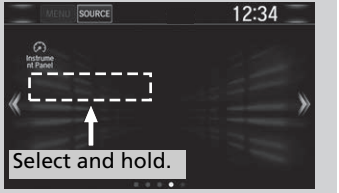
Pre-installed apps cannot be deleted.

## ■ To add app or widget icons on the home screen

App or widget icons can be added on the home screen.

**1.** Select HOME.

**2.** Select ⟪.



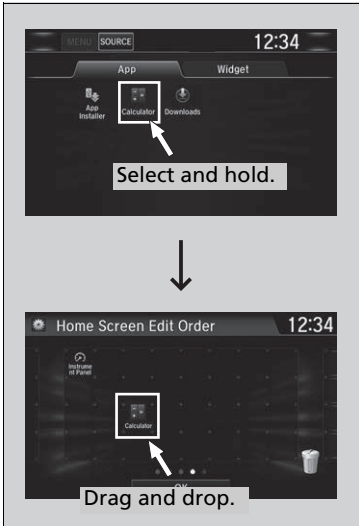

**3.** Select and hold empty space on the home screen.

▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

**4.** Select **Add App** or **Add Widget**.

▶ The apps/widget screen appears.

*Continued*

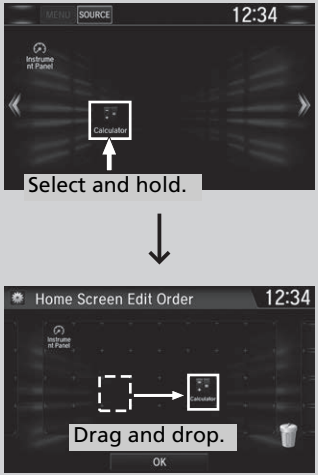



**5.** Select and hold an app or widget icon you want to add.
▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.

**6.** Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
**7.** Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

## ■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.




**1.** Select and hold an icon.
▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.

**2.** Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
**3.** Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To move icons on the home screen

You can also move the **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation***, **HondaLink**, **Smartphone Connection**, **App List** ( ), and **Instrument Panel** icons in the same manner.

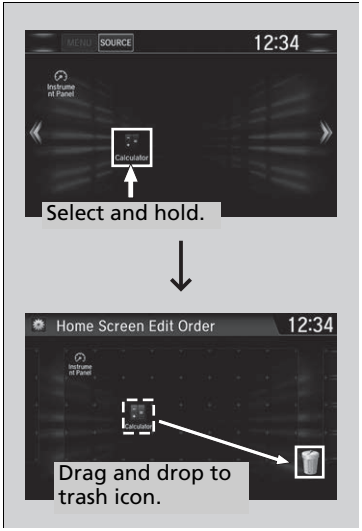


* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.




**1.** Select and hold an icon.
▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.

**2.** Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the trash icon.
▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.

**3.** Select **OK**.
▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To remove icons on the home screen

You cannot delete the **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation***, **HondaLink**, **Smartphone Connection**, **App List** ( ), and **Instrument Panel** icons.

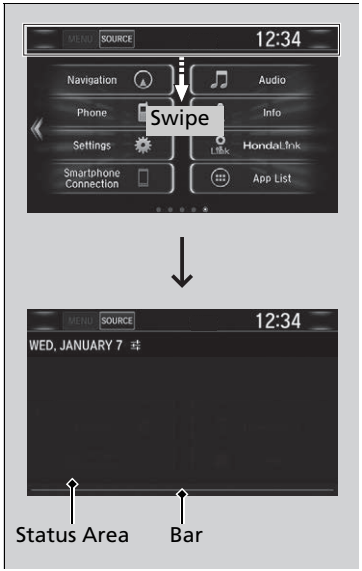
Apps or widgets will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.





* Not available on all models

## ■ Status Area




**1.** Swipe the upper area of the screen.
▶ The status area appears.

**2.** Select an item to see the details.
**3.** Select BACK or swipe up the bottom bar to close the area.



*Continued*

## ■ Changing the Screen Interface

You can change the screen interface design.

**1.** Select HOME.
**2.** Select **Settings**.
**3.** Select **System**.
**4.** Select the **Others** tab.
**5.** Select **Change Skin**.
**6.** Select **Next**, then a confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

### Changing the Screen Interface

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

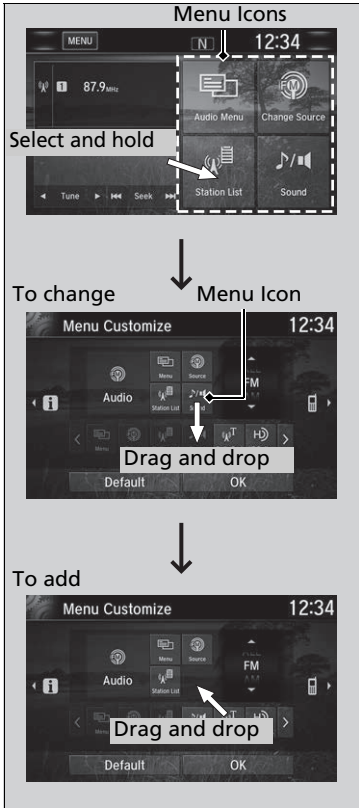
1. Select HOME.
2. Select ⟪.
3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Change wallpaper**.
5. Select **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, or **Wallpapers**.

If you change the screen interface, some of the setting items will change.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 366

## Menu Customize

You can change menu icons on the right side of **Audio**, **Phone**, and **Info** screen.




**1.** Select any of the three icons (**Audio/Phone/Info**) on the screen, then select and hold the menu icon.
▶ Selecting the ◀ or ▶ icon, you can change **Audio**, **Phone**, or **Info** on the **Menu Customize** screen.

**2.** Select and hold the menu icon you want to change, then drag and drop the icon to the bottom.

**3.** Select and hold the menu icon you want to add, then drag and drop the icon above.
**4.** Select **OK**.

### Menu Customize

You can also use the method below to change the menu icon:
Select **Settings→System→Home** tab→ **Menu Icon Position**

*Continued*

## ■ Closing Apps

You can close specific apps running in the background on the system.

1. Select and hold HOME.
2. Select the **Active** tab.
   ▶ If you select the **Active/History** tab, you can close the apps that are currently running and delete the app activity history simultaneously.
3. Select an app you want to close.
4. Select **Clear**.
   ▶ The display will return to the app list.

### Closing Apps

If you have a number of apps running in the background and something goes wrong with the audio system, some of those apps may not work properly. If this happens, close all the apps and re-launch the app/apps that you want to use.

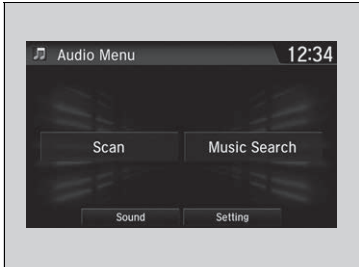
To close all apps on the system, select **Clear All**, then **Yes**.

You cannot close the HondaLink® and Garmin* apps.

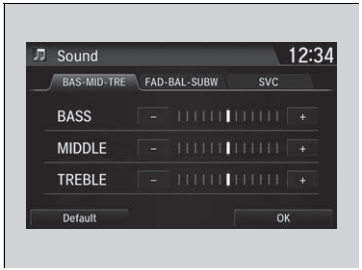


 * Not available on all models

# Adjusting the Sound




**1.** Select AUDIO.
**2.** Select **MENU**.
**3.** Select **Sound**.




Select a tab from the following choices:
- **BAS-MID-TRE:** Bass, Middle, Treble
- **FAD-BAL-SUBW*:** Fader, Balance, Subwoofer*
- **SVC:** Speed Volume Compensation

Adjusting the Sound

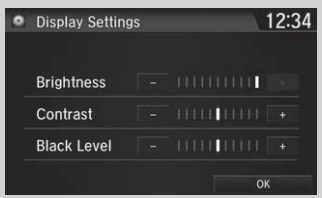
The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

* Not available on all models

# Display Setup

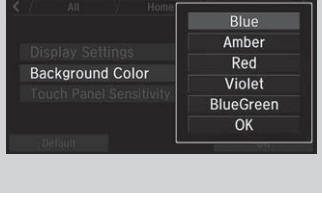
You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information screen.

## ■ Changing the Screen Brightness




1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Display Settings**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

## ■ Changing the Screen's Color Theme

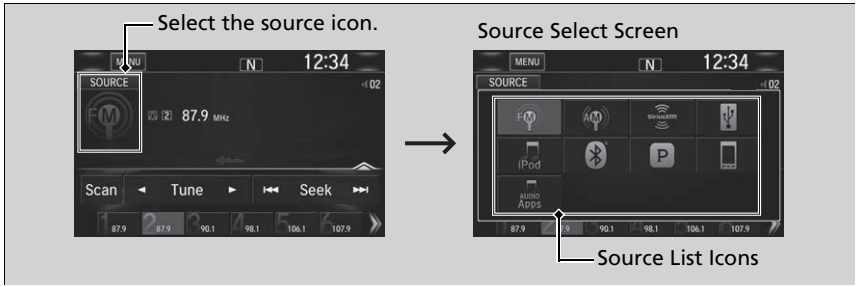



1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Background Color**.
6. Select **Next**, then select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

## ■ Selecting an Audio Source




Select the current source icon, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

### Selecting an Audio Source

If you start up preinstalled audio apps, AUDIO Apps is displayed on the screen.
These preinstalled apps cannot be displayed on the source select screen.
You can start up those audio apps from AUDIO Apps.

# Voice Control Operation

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation.
The voice control system uses the (Talk) and (hang-up/back) buttons on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights on the ceiling.

## ■ Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.
  The system recognizes only certain commands.
  Available voice commands.
  ➡ **Voice Portal Screen** P. 293
- Close the windows and moonroof*.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone on the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

### Voice Control Operation

When you press the button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

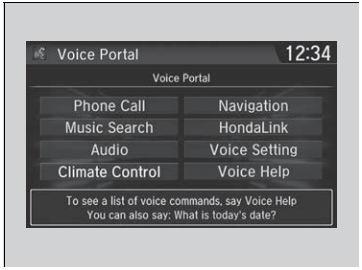
### Voice Recognition

The voice control system can only be used from the driver's seat because the microphone unit removes noises from the front passenger's side.



 * Not available on all models

## ■ Voice Portal Screen




When the (Talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.
For a complete list of commands, say "*Voice Help*" after the beep or select **Voice Help**.

You can see the list of commands in **Voice Info** on the **Info Menu** screen. Select **Info**, then select **MENU**.

The system only recognizes the commands on the following pages, at certain screens. Free form voice commands are not recognized.

### ■ Phone Call
This can be only used when the phone is connected. When the system recognizes the *Phone call* command, the screen will change to the voice recognition screen for phone commands.
- *Dial by number*
- *Call history*
- *Redial*
- *Call <Your Contact Name>*
- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call Police*
- *Call 911*

Phone Call commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay™.

### ■ Music Search
This can be only used when the iPod or USB device is connected.

### ■ Climate Control*1
When the system recognizes the *Climate Control* command, the screen will change the dedicated screen to the climate control voice recognition screen.

➲ **Climate Control Commands*1** P. 295

### ■ Audio*1
When the system recognizes the *Audio* command, the screen will change to the audio voice recognition screen.
- *Audio On/Off*
- *Radio FM/AM/SXM**
- *PANDORA**
- *iPod*
- *USB*
- *Other Sources*

Pandora®* cannot be used while Android Auto™ is active.

### ■ Navigation*1
The screen changes to the navigation screen.

➲ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

### ■ HondaLink
This can be only used when the phone is connected.

### ■ Voice Setting
The screen changes to the **Voice Recog.** tab on the **System Settings** screen.

*1: Models with navigation system

* Not available on all models



*Continued*

■ **Voice Help**
You can see a list of the available commands on the screen.
- *Useful Commands*
- *Phone Commands*
- *Audio Commands*
- *Climate Control Commands*
- *General Commands*
- *Music Search Commands*
- *On Screen Commands*

## ■ Useful Commands

The system accepts these commands on the voice portal top screen.
- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call <Your contact Name>*
- *What time is it?*
- *What is today's date?*

## ■ Phone Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.
- *Call by number*
- *Call by name*
- *Call <Phone Number>*
- *Call <Your contact Name>*

## ■ Audio Commands*1

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.

■ **Radio FM Commands**
- *Radio tune to <87.7-107.9> FM*
- *Radio tune to <87.7 -107.9> HD <1-8> FM*
- *Radio FM preset # (#:1-12)*

■ **Radio AM Commands**
- *Radio tune to <530-1710> AM*
- *Radio AM preset # (#:1-6)*

■ **Radio SXM Commands***
- *SXM channel <1-999>*
- *SXM channel <channel name, category name, traffic and weather city name, sports team name>*
- *Radio SXM preset <1-12>*

■ **Pandora® Commands***
- *PANDORA play*

■ **iPod Commands**
- *iPod play*
- *iPod play track # (#:1-30)*
- *Music Search*
- *What album is this?*
- *What am I listening to?*

■ **USB Commands**
- *USB play*
- *USB play track # (#:1-30)*
- *Music Search*
- *What album is this?*
- *What am I listening to?*

■ ***Bluetooth*® audio Commands**
- *Bluetooth audio play*

**NOTE:**
*Bluetooth*® Audio commands may not work on some phones or *Bluetooth*® Audio devices.

*1: Models with navigation system

* Not available on all models

## ■ On Screen Commands

When **On Screen Commands** is selected, the explanation screen is displayed.

## ■ Music Search Commands

The system accepts these commands on the **Music Search** screen.

### ■ Using Song By Voice

Song By Voice™ is a feature that allows you to select music from your iPod or USB device using Voice Commands. To activate this mode, you must press the (Talk) button and say: "*Music search*".

### ■ Song By Voice Commands

- *What am I listening to?*
- *Who am I listening to?*
- *Who is this?*
- *What's playing?*
- *Who's playing?*
- *What album is this?*

### ■ Play Commands

- *Play artist <Name>*
- *Play track/song <Name>*
- *Play album <Name>*
- *Play genre/category <Name>*
- *Play playlist <Name>*
- *Play composer <Name>*

### ■ List Commands

- *List artist <Name>*
- *List album <Name>*
- *List genre/category <Name>*
- *List playlist <Name>*
- *List composer <Name>*

## ■ General Commands

- *What time is it?*
- *What is today's date?*

## ■ Climate Control Commands*1

- *Climate Control On*
- *Climate Control Off*
- *Fan Speed <1-7>*
- *Temperature max heat*
- *Temperature max cool*
- *Temperature <57-87> degrees (U.S.)*
- *Temperature <18-32> degrees (Canada)*
- *Defrost On*
- *Defrost Off*
- *Air conditioner On*
- *Air conditioner Off*
- *More*
- *Vent*
- *Dash and floor*
- *Floor vents*
- *Floor and Defrost*
- *Climate Control Automatic*
- *Fan Speed up/down*
- *Temperature up*
- *Temperature down*

**NOTE:**

These commands toggle the function on and off, so the command may not match your intended action.

*1: Models with navigation system

# Playing AM/FM Radio

**Driver Information Interface**

**Scan Icon**
Select to scan each station with a strong signal.

**Audio/Information Screen**

**(Audio) Icon**
Select to display the audio screen.

**Open/Close Icon**[*1]
Displays/hides the detailed information.

**Seek Icons**
Select ▶▶| or |◀◀ to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

**VOL/⏻ AUDIO (Volume/Power Audio) Knob**
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

**BACK (Back) Icon**
Select to go back to the previous display.

**Tune Icons**
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

**Preset Icons**
Tune the preset radio frequency. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station. Select >> to display preset 7 onwards.

*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## ■ Preset Memory

To store a station:
**1.** Tune to the selected station.
**2.** Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

You can also store a preset station by the following procedure.
**1.** Tune to the selected station.
**2.** Select the open/close icon to display a list.
**3.** Select the **Preset** tab.
**4.** Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

## ■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.
**1.** Select the open/close icon to display a list.
**2.** Select the **Station List** tab.
**3.** Select the station.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
**1.** Select the open/close icon to display a list.
**2.** Select the **Station List** tab.
**3.** Select **Refresh**.

Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the ▲ or ▼ button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 243

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into preset memory.

Models with HD Radio™

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD, HD Radio, and "Arc" logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

*Continued*

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or BACK.

Models with HD Radio™

## ■ HD Subchannel

Displays the subchannel list when an HD Radio™ station is selected while listening to an FM station.

**1.** Select **MENU**.
**2.** Select **HD Radio Subchannel**.
**3.** Select the channel number.

## ■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

**1.** Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
**2.** Select the **Station List** tab.
**3.** Select the station.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
**1.** Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
**2.** Select the **Station List** tab.
**3.** Select **Refresh**.

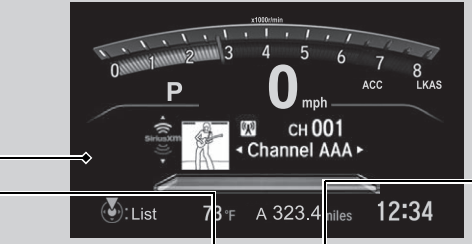
### ■ Radio text

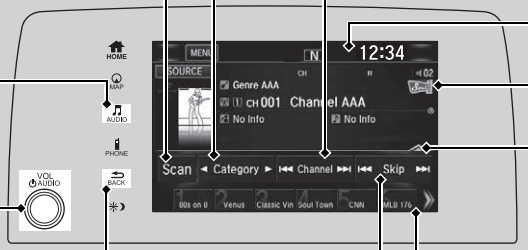
Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.
**1.** Select **MENU**.
**2.** Select **View Radio Text**.

Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

# Playing SiriusXM® Radio*




**Driver Information Interface**

**Category Icons**
Select ◀ or ▶ to display and select a SiriusXM® Radio category.

**Scan Icon**
Select to scan each channel.

**(Audio) Icon**
Select to display the audio screen.

**VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power Audio) Knob**
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

**(Back) Icon**
Select to go back to the previous display.

**Channel Icons**
Select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to the previous or next channel.
Select and hold to rapidly skip 10 channels at a time.

**Audio/Information Screen**

**Station Art**

**Open/Close Icon*1**
Displays/hides the detailed information.

**Preset Icons**
Tune the preset radio station. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station. Select >> to display preset 7 onwards.

**Skip Icons**
Select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change section in the channel. Select and hold to move rapidly within the section.

*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

* Not available on all models

## To Change the Tune Mode

**1.** Select **MENU**.
**2.** Select **Tune Mode**.
**3.** Select **Channel Mode** or **Category Mode**.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio*

In the channel mode, all available channels are selectable. In the category mode, you can select a channel within a category (Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc.).

There may be instances when SiriusXM® Radio does not broadcast all the data fields (artist name, title). This does not indicate a problem with your audio system.

SiriusXM® Radio stations load in ascending order, which can take about a minute. Once they have loaded you will be able to scroll up or down to make your selections.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the ▲ or ▼ button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 243

**Tune Start:**
When you change to a preset channel, a song being played on that channel restarts from the beginning with this function. This can be turned on or off from the **Audio Settings** screen.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 366



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Preset Memory

To store a channel:
**1.** Tune to the selected channel.
**2.** Press and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.
**3.** Select **OK**.

You can also store a channel by the following procedure.
**1.** Tune to the selected channel.
**2.** Select the open/close icon to display a list.
**3.** Select the **Preset** tab.
**4.** Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

### ■ Multi-channel preset (for music channels only)

You can store up to five of your preferred music channels in total.

**1.** Tune a station.
**2.** Select the open/close icon to display a list.
**3.** Select the **Preset** tab.
**4.** Select and hold the preset number you want to add a music channel.
▶ A message appears if there are no available presets.
**5.** Select **Combine**.

Playing SiriusXM® Radio*

You can store 12 SiriusXM® channels into the preset memory.

Multi-channel preset (for music channels only)

To store a multi-channel preset, you need to setup the **Multiple Channel Mix Preset** setting to **On**.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 366



 * Not available on all models

## ■ Listening to Featured Channels

Suggested channel listing received from SiriusXM® can be displayed and selected.

**1.** Select the open/close icon to display a channel list.
**2.** Select the **Channel** tab.
**3.** Select the featured channel list title you want to listen to.
▶ The selected channel list of the title is displayed.
**4.** Select the channel.

Listening to Featured Channels

Up to three featured channels by SiriusXM® can be displayed.

Featured channel lists are at the top of the channel list.

*Continued*

## ■ Replay Function

The system can record up to the last 60 minutes of your currently tuned channel's broadcast, as well as the last 30 minutes of your preset channel's broadcast, starting from the moment you turn the vehicle on. If you tuned to a preset channel, the system records up to 60 minutes of a broadcast instead of up to 30 minutes. You can rewind and replay the last 30 or 60 minutes of a broadcast.

**1.** Select **MENU**.
**2.** Select **Playback**.
**3.** Move the time marker to the position you want to replay.

The following items are available on the pop-up screen:
⏮ (Skip Down): Skips to the previously stored channel. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current selection.
⏭ (Skip Up): Skips to the next channel. Select and hold to fast-forward the current selection.
15 (15sec Back): Select to skip back 15 seconds in the current selection. Select and hold to fast-rewind the current selection.
15 (15sec Skip): Select to skip forward 15 seconds in the current selection. Select and hold to fast-forward the current selection.

▶ Select **OK** to close the pop-up menu. Replay in playback mode continues.

To play or pause on playback mode:
**1.** Select **MENU**.
**2.** Select **Play/Pause**.

### ■ Returning to real-time broadcast

**1.** Select **MENU**.
**2.** Select **Go to Live**.

Replay Function

The system starts storing broadcast in memory when the power mode is turned ON. You can go back to the program from that point.

You can no longer replay any program once the power mode is turned off as it erases memory. You can check how long the program has been stored in memory from the audio/information screen.

After 30 or 60 minutes of recording the system will automatically start deleting the oldest data.

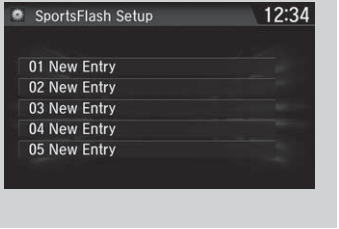
Audio/Information Screen

(A): Shows how much time the replayed segment is behind the real-time broadcast
(B): Replayed segment
(C): Length stored in memory

## ■ Live Sports Alert

While listening to other channels, you can receive sports alerts such as scores from the games of your favorite teams.

### ■ To set up a favorite team




1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **SportsFlash Setup**.
5. Select **Favorite Team**.
6. Select a team.

### ■ To set up an alert message

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select **SportsFlash Setup**.
5. Select **Interrupt**.
6. Select **On(One Time)** or **On(Continue)**.

**Live Sports Alert**

The sports alert function is available in SiriusXM® mode only.

**To set up a favorite team**

Sports alerts cut in only when SiriusXM® mode is on. Selecting **On(One Time)** from the customize settings disables the alert feature next time you turn the power mode to ON.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 366

You can also set up a favorite team by the following procedure.

1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select **SportsFlash Setup**.



*Continued*

### ■ To set up an alert beep

**1.** Select HOME.
**2.** Select **Settings**.
**3.** Select **Audio**.
**4.** Select **SportsFlash Setup**.
**5.** Select **Interrupt Beep**.
**6.** Select **On**.

### ■ Traffic and Weather Information

You can receive traffic and weather information.
**1.** Select HOME.
**2.** Select **Settings**.
**3.** Select **Audio**.
**4.** Select **Traffic & Weather Setup**.
**5.** Select the region.
▶ When you do not want to receive the information, select **Unregistered**.

## ■ Scan

Sample each channel on the selected mode for 10 seconds.
**1.** Select **Scan**.
**2.** Select **Scan Channels**.
▶ You can select the desired channel by songs using **Scan Song in Preset**.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel**.

**To set up an alert beep**

You can also set up an alert beep by the following procedure.
1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select **SportsFlash Setup**.

**Traffic and Weather Information**

The traffic and weather information function at SiriusXM® mode only.

You can also set up the traffic and weather information by the following procedure.
1. Select **Audio**.
2. Select **MENU**.
3. Select **Setting**.
4. Select **Traffic & Weather Setup**.

**Scan**

The "Scan Songs in Preset" function is based on TuneScan™ technology of SiriusXM®.

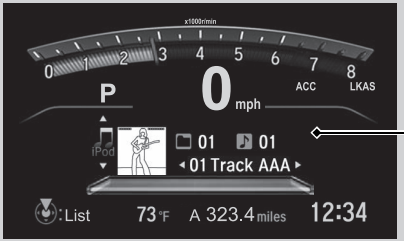
The "Featured Channels" function is based on Featured Favorites™ technology of SiriusXM®.

TuneScan™ and Featured Favorites™ are registered trademarks of SiriusXM® Radio, Inc.

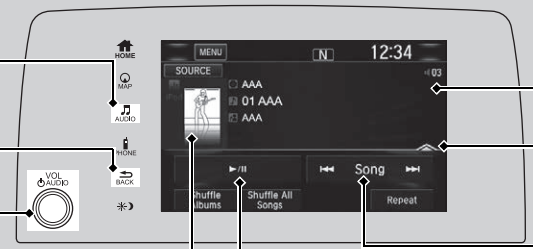
# Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

**USB Port(s)** P. 241




**Driver Information Interface**




**(Audio) Icon**
Select to display the audio screen.

**(Back) Icon**
Select to go back to the previous display.

**VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power Audio) Knob**
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

**Cover Art**

**Play/Pause Icon**

**Audio/Information Screen**

**Open/Close Icon*1**
Displays/hides the detailed information.

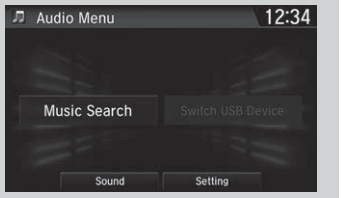
**Song Icons**
Select ⏮ or ⏭ to change songs.
Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.



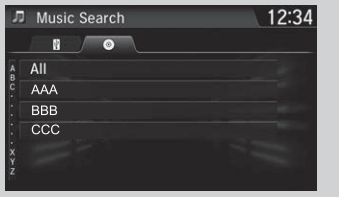
*Continued*

## How to Select a Song from the Music Search List




Category Selection

Item Selection




**1.** Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

**2.** Select the items on that menu.

### Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

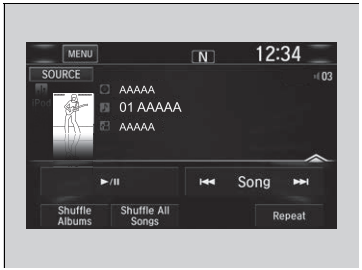
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.
**iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 337

If you operate any music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen.
Reconnect the device if necessary.

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay™, the iPod/USB source is unavailable and audio files on the phone can only be played within Apple CarPlay™.

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.




Select a play mode.

### To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Shuffle Albums**: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

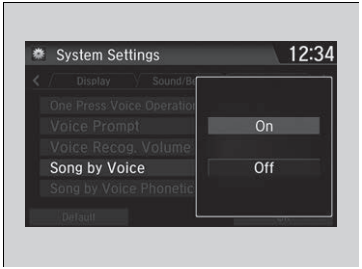
**Shuffle All Songs**: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

**Repeat**: Repeats the current track.

# Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Use SBV to search for and play music from your USB flash drive or iPod using voice commands.

## ■ To enable SBV



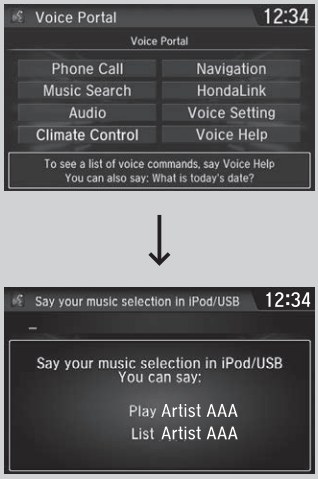

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Song by Voice**.
6. Select **Next**, then select **On** or **Off**.

### Song By Voice™ (SBV)

Setting options:

- **On** (factory default): Song By Voice™ commands are available.
- **Off**: Disable the feature.

## ■ Searching for music using SBV




**1.** Set the **Song by Voice** setting to **On**.
**2.** Press the (Talk) button and say "*Music Search*" to activate the SBV feature for the USB flash drive and iPod.
**3.** Then, say a next command.
▶ Example 1: Say "*(List)'Artist A'*" to view a list of songs by that artist. Select the desired song to start playing.
▶ Example 2: Say "*Play 'Artist A'*" to start playing songs by that artist.
**4.** To cancel SBV, press the (hang-up/back) button on the steering wheel. The selected song continues playing.

Once you have canceled this mode, you need to press the button and say "*Music Search*" again to re-activate this mode.

Searching for music using SBV

Song By Voice™ Commands List
➡ **Song By Voice Commands** P. 295

NOTE:
Song By Voice™ commands are available for tracks stored on the USB flash drive or iPod.

You can add phonetic modifications of difficult words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands.
➡ **Phonetic Modification** P. 312

SBV is not available when using Apple CarPlay™. Use Siri® Eyes Free instead.

*Continued*

## ■ Phonetic Modification

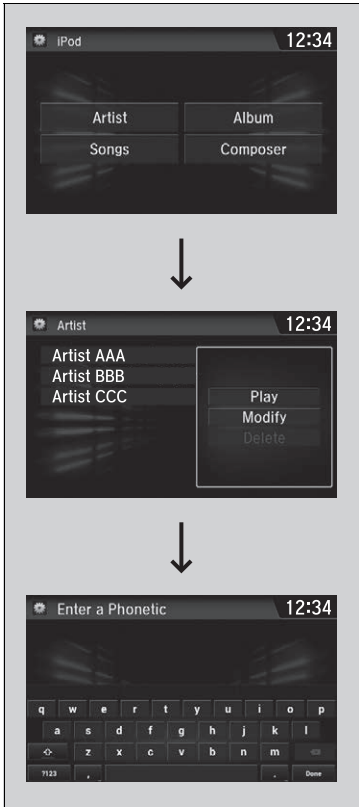
Add phonetic modifications of difficult or foreign words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands when searching for music on the USB flash drive or iPod.

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Song by Voice Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select **New Modification**.
7. Select **USB** or **iPod**.

Phonetic Modification

**Song by Voice Phonetic Modification** is grayed out when **Song By Voice** is set to **Off**.

You can store up to 2,000 phonetic modification items.




**8.** Select the item to modify (e.g., **Artist**).
▶ The list of the selected item appears on the screen.

**9.** Select an entry to modify.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
▶ To listen to the current phonetic modification, select **Play**.
▶ To delete the current phonetic modification, select **Delete**.

**10.** Select **Modify**.

**11.** Select the phonetic spelling you want to use (e.g., "*Artist A*") when prompted.

**12.** Select **Done**.
▶ The artist "*No Name*" is phonetically modified to "*Artist A.*" When in the SBV mode, you can press the (Talk) button and use the voice command "*Play 'Artist A'*" to play songs by the artist "*No Name.*"

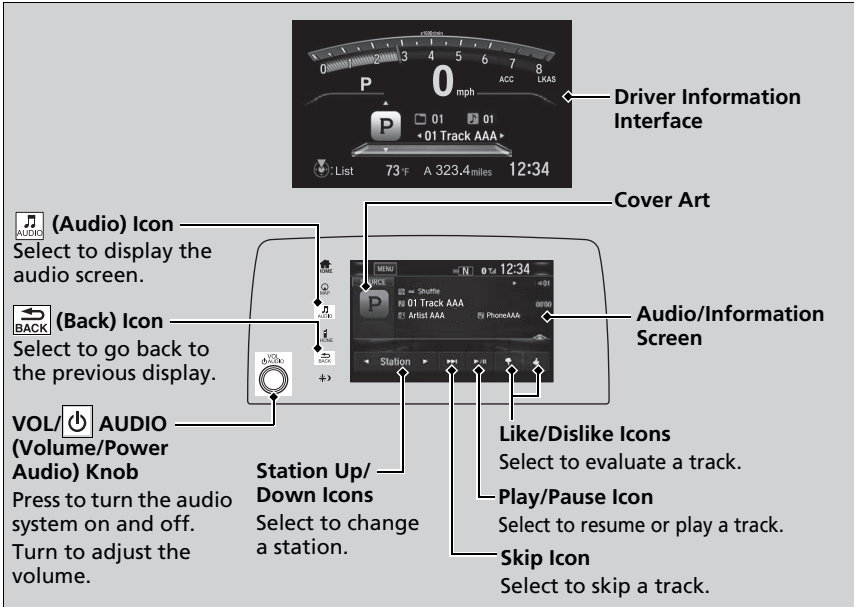
# Playing Pandora®*

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from the Pandora® app on a compatible smartphone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system, or with an iPhone, you can connect using your USB cable to the USB port.

**Phone Setup** P. 428

**USB Port(s)** P. 241




*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## Playing Pandora®*

Pandora®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora is only available in certain countries. Visit the Pandora website for more information.

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528-7876.

To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit *www.pandora.com*. for more information.

Pandora® is free, personalized radio that plays music and comedy you'll love. Just start with the name of one of your favorite artists, tracks, comedians or composers and Pandora® will create a custom station that plays similar tracks. Pandora® also features hundreds of genre stations ranging from Dubstep to Smooth Jazz to Power Workout.

If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through *Bluetooth*® Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

If your phone is connected to Android Auto™, Pandora® is only available through the Android Auto™ interface. Visit the Android Auto™ website to check compatibility.





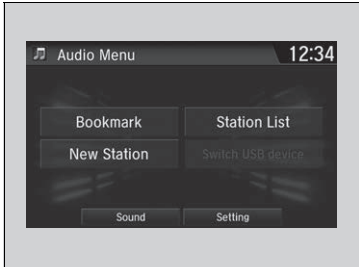
* Not available on all models

## ■ Pandora® Menu

You can operate some of the Pandora® menu items from your vehicle's audio system. The available items are:

- **Bookmark**
- **Station List**
- **New Station**
- **Switch USB device**
- **Sound**
- **Setting**

### ■ Operating a menu item




**1.** Select **MENU**.
**2.** Select an item.

Pandora® Menu

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.
➡ **Pandora®*** P. 339

Pandora® may limit the total number of skips allowed on the service. If you dislike a track after the skip limit has been reached, your feedback will be saved but the current track will continue to play.

To change stations, activate the Pandora® menu, select **Station List**, and then select a new station. It also changes stations on the main Pandora® screen.



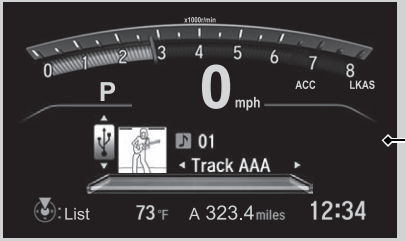
* Not available on all models

# Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, or AAC*1 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

**USB Port(s)** P. 241

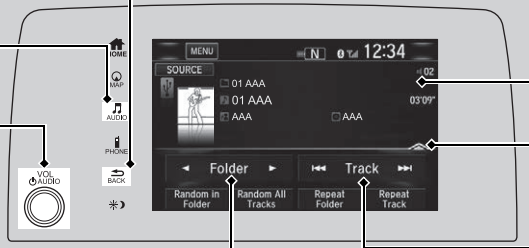



**Driver Information Interface**

**(Back) Icon**
Select to go back to the previous display.

**(Audio) Icon**
Select to display the audio screen.

**VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power Audio) Knob**
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.




**Audio/Information Screen**

**Open/Close Icon*2**
Displays/hides the detailed information.

**Track Icons**
Select ⏮ or ⏭ to change files.
Select and hold to move rapidly within a track.

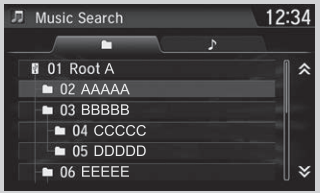
**Folder Icons**
Select ▶ to skip to the next folder, and ◀ to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.

*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.
*2:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## How to Select a File from the Music Search List

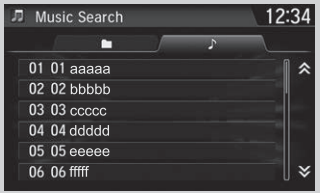
**1.** Select **MENU** and select **Music Search**.

Folder Selection




**2.** Select a folder.

Track Selection




**3.** Select a track.

### Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➡ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 342

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➡ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 337



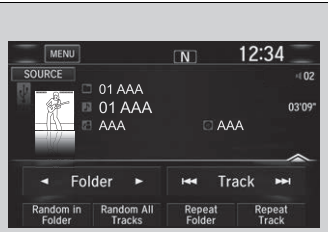
*Continued*

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.

### ■ Scan

**1.** Select **MENU**.
**2.** Select **Scan**.
**3.** Select a play mode.




### ■ Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

To turn off Scan, select BACK or **Cancel**.
To turn off Random or Repeat, select the mode you want to turn off.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items
**Scan**
**Scan Folders**: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.
**Scan Tracks**: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

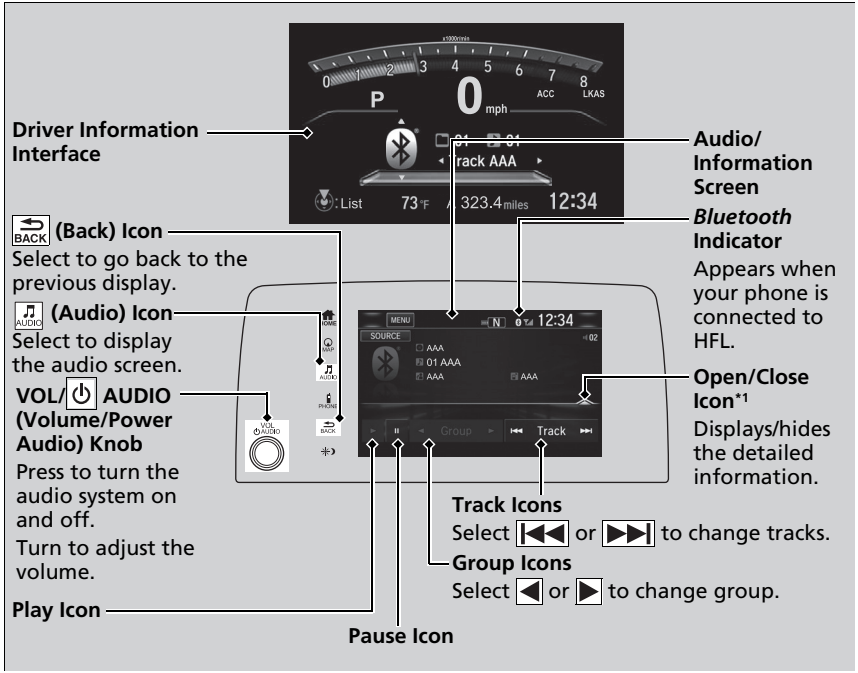
**Random/Repeat**
**Random in Folder**: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.
**Random All Tracks**: Plays all files in random order.
**Repeat Folder**: Repeats all files in the current folder.
**Repeat Track**: Repeats the current file.

# Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

**Phone Setup** P. 428




*1:Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

*Continued*

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. For a list of compatible phones:

- U.S.: Visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFL at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in **Priority Device Settings**.

**Customized Features** P. 366

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay™ or Android Auto™, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting **Connect** ♫ from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

**Phone Setup** P. 428

## To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

**1.** Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 428

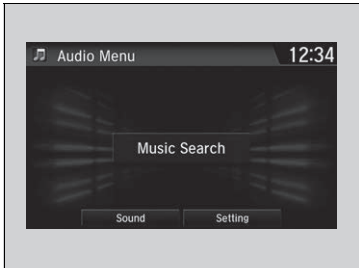
**2.** Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

### To pause or resume a file

Select the play icon or pause icon.

## Searching for Music




**1.** Select **MENU**.
**2.** Select **Music Search**.
**3.** Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
**4.** Select an item.
▶ The selection begins playing.

### To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone in the *Bluetooth*® settings on the **Audio Menu** screen by the following procedure.
1. Select **MENU**.
2. Select **Setting**.

### Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

# HondaLink®

HondaLink® connects you to the latest information from Honda. You can connect your phone wirelessly through Wi-Fi or *Bluetooth*®.

**Wi-Fi Connection** P. 327
**Phone Setup** P. 428

## ■ HondaLink® Menu

### ■ Places*

Displays restaurants, gas stations, Honda dealers, etc. and provides navigation instructions to those locations via the navigation system.

### ■ Vehicle

Displays instruction messages when the vehicle needs service.

### ■ Help & Support

Displays tips on vehicle usage and provides information on roadside assistance and the customer service center.

**HondaLink®**

The HondaLink® connect app is compatible with most iPhone and Android phones.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay™ or Android Auto™, HondaLink® can only be connected through Wi-Fi.





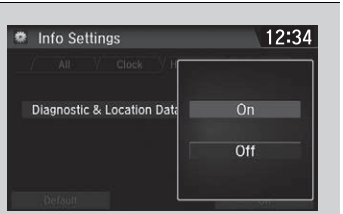
* Not available on all models

### ■ Messages from Honda
Displays helpful and important information from Honda.

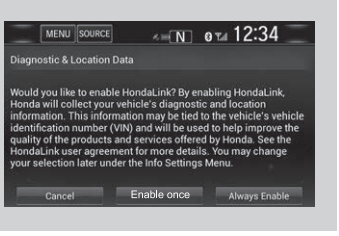
### ■ Weather*
Displays a weekly five-day weather forecast for any location you want. You can change the ZIP Code at any time.

## ■ To Set Up to Connect HondaLink® Service
Use the following procedure to connect to the HondaLink® service.

### ■ To enable the HondaLink® service




**1.** Select HOME.
**2.** Select **Settings**.
**3.** Select **Info**.
**4.** Select the **HondaLink** tab.
**5.** Select **Diagnostics & Location Data**.
**6.** Select **On**.



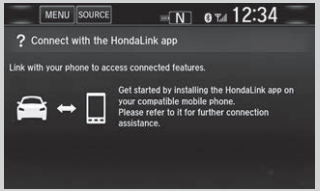

To complete the procedure, you must consent to the collection and transmission of data pertaining to your vehicle.

**Enable once**: Allows only one time. (Prompt shows again next time.)
**Always Enable**: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
**Cancel**: Does not allow this consent.

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

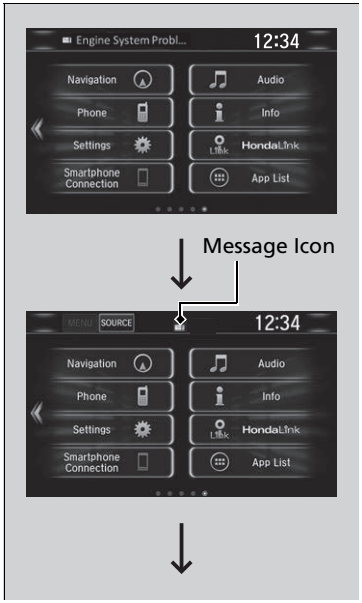
## ■ To link with HondaLink®




You can see this screen after launching HondaLink®.

## ■ Vehicle Information and Message from Honda Tips

Using the shortcut operation, you can quickly gain access to new messages.




**1.** In the header area, a message appears to notify you of a new message.
▶ When the message is received, a notification ring can be heard.

**2.** The notification message is replaced by an icon which remains displayed until the new message is read.



*Continued*

**3.** From the top of the screen, swipe down to see the messages.

**4.** Select a new message to open.
▶ If you have selected the update option for HondaLink®, follow the directions on the screen to complete the process.

Vehicle Information and Message from Honda Tips

When you update HondaLink®, you must keep the engine running and maintain a constant connection with HondaLink®.
If the update is interrupted, the system will automatically resume the process. If, however, a week has elapsed since the process was first interrupted, you must repeat the process from the beginning.

You can update HondaLink® by selecting **Message from Honda** on the HondaLink® menu.

# Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the Display Audio to the Internet using Wi-Fi and browse websites or use online services on the audio/information screen. If your phone has wireless hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

## ■ Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

**1.** Select HOME.
**2.** Select **Settings**.
**3.** Select **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi**.
**4.** Select the **Wi-Fi** tab.
**5.** Select **Wi-Fi On/Off Status**, select **Next**, then **On**.
**6.** Select **Yes**.
**7.** Select **Wi-Fi Device List**.
- ▶ Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
- ▶ Select the phone you want to connect to the system.
- ▶ If you do not find the phone you want to connect in the list, select **Scan**.

**8.** Select **Add**.
- ▶ If needed, enter a password for your phone and select **Done**.
- ▶ When the connection is successful, the icon is displayed on the top of the screen.

**9.** Select HOME to go back to the home screen.

*Continued*

Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on the **Wi-Fi Device List** screen. Network speed will not be displayed on this screen.

## ■ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

iPhone users

You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.

# Siri® Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

**Phone Setup** P. 428

## ■ Using Siri® Eyes Free

### Siri® Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri® Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

### Using Siri® Eyes Free

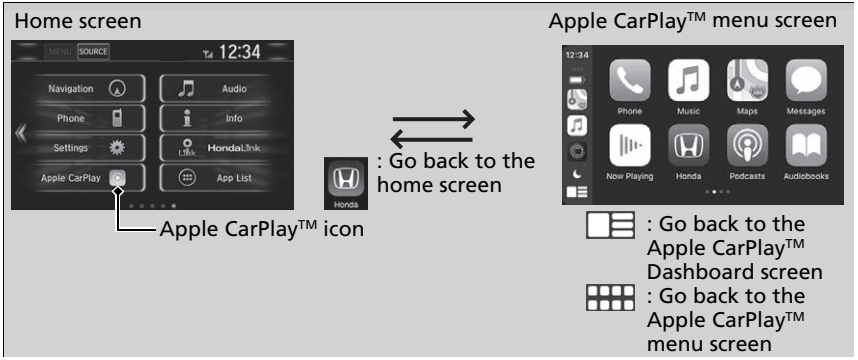
Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

# Apple CarPlay™

If you connect an Apple CarPlay™-compatible iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

**USB Port(s)** P. 241

## ■ Apple CarPlay™ Menu




### ■ Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

### ■ Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

### ■ Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

**Apple CarPlay™**

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay™.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay™ and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Apple CarPlay™, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. The USB port located on the back of the center console compartment will not enable Apple CarPlay™ operation.

**USB Port(s)** P. 241

To directly access the Apple CarPlay™ phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Apple CarPlay™, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay™. If you want to make a call with *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®, turn Apple CarPlay™ OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

**Setting Up Apple CarPlay™** P. 331

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay™, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay™ is connected.

**Phone Setup** P. 428

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay™ is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

### ■ Maps

Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

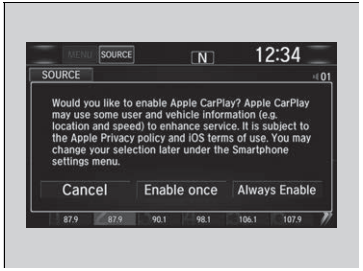
Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay™) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

## ■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay™

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay™. Use of Apple CarPlay™ will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay™ experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the Display Audio Screen.

### ■ Enabling Apple CarPlay™




**Enable once**: Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
**Always Enable**: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
**Cancel**: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

*Continued*

Apple CarPlay™

**Apple CarPlay™ Operating Requirements & Limitations**

Apple CarPlay™ requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay™ functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay™ functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay™ performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay™. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay™

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay™:
Select HOME→Settings→Smartphone→Apple CarPlay

**Use of user and vehicle information**

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay™ is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

## ■ Operating Apple CarPlay™ with Siri®

Press and hold the (Talk) button to activate Siri®.

**(Talk) Button:**
Press and hold to activate Siri®.
Press again to deactivate Siri®.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

### Operating Apple CarPlay™ with Siri®

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri®.

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.
- Find a table for four tonight in Chicago.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

# Android Auto™

When you connect an Android phone to the Display Audio system via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto™ is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto™, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto™, a tutorial will appear on the screen.
We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto™.

➡ **USB Port(s)** P. 241
➡ **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 335

## Android Auto™

To use Android Auto™, you need to download the Android Auto™ app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto™.
Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto™ and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto™, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. The USB port on the back of the center console compartment will not enable Android Auto™ operation.

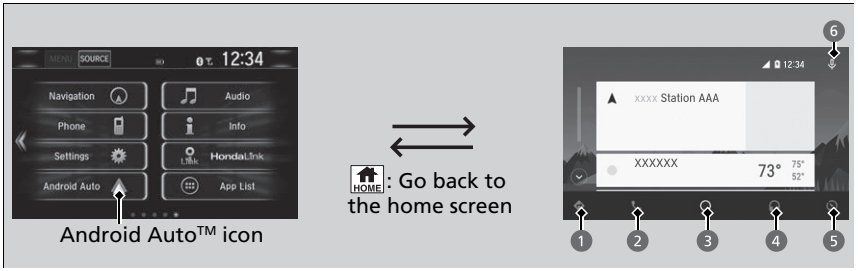
➡ **USB Port(s)** P. 241

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto™, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto™ is connected.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 428

*Continued*

## ■ Android Auto™ Menu




### ❶ Maps (Navigation)

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto™) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

The audio/Information screen shows you turn-by turn driving directions to your destination.

### ❷ Phone (Communication)

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

### ❸ Google Now (Home screen)

Display useful information organized by Android Auto™ into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

Android Auto™

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto™ is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto™ homepage. Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

**Android Auto™ Operating Requirements & Limitations**

Android Auto™ requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto™ functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto™ functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto™ performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto™. Refer to the Android Auto™ homepage for information on compatible apps.

**❹ Music and audio**
Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto™. To switch between music apps, press this icon.
**❺ Go back to the Home Screen.**
**❻ Voice**
Operate Android Auto™ with your voice.

## ■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto™ is automatically initiated.

### ■ Enabling Android Auto™

**Enable once**: Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
**Always Enable**: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
**Cancel**: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

Enabling Android Auto™

Only initialize Android Auto™ when you are safely parked. When Android Auto™ first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the method below to change Android Auto™ settings after you have completed the initial setup:
Select HOME→Settings→Smartphone→Android Auto

**Use of user and vehicle information**
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto™ is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

*Continued*

## ■ Operating Android Auto™ with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the (Talk) button to operate Android Auto™ with your voice.

**(Talk) Button:**
Press and hold to operate Android Auto™ with your voice.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

**(Hang-up/back) Button:**
Press to deactivate voice recognition.

### Operating Android Auto™ with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto™ homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the icon in the upper-right corner of the screen.

## iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

| Error Message | Solution |
|---|---|
| **USB Error**[*1, *2] | Appears when there is a problem with the audio system. Check if the device is compatible with the audio system. |
| **The connected USB device has a problem. See Owner's Manual**[*2] | Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error. |
| **Unsupported Ver**[*1]<br>**Unsupported Version**[*2] | Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version. |
| **Connect Retry**[*1, *2] | Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod. |
| **Unplayable File**[*1, *2] | Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song. |
| **No Song**[*1]<br>**No Data**[*2] | iPod<br>Appears when the iPod is empty.<br>USB flash drive<br>Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, or WAV[*1] files in the USB flash drive.<br>iPod and USB flash drive<br>Check that compatible files are stored on the device. |
| **Unsupported**[*1, *2] | Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device. |

*1:Models with color audio system
*2:Models with Display Audio

| Error Message | Solution |
|---|---|
| **Device No Response**[*1] | Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase. |
| **HUB Unsupported**[*1] | Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB. |

*1:Models with color audio system

## Pandora®*

If an error occurs while playing Pandora®, you may see the following error messages.
If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Models with color audio system

| Error Message | Solution |
|---|---|
| **No Device Connected** | Appears when no device is connected.<br>Check the *Bluetooth*® and USB connection. |
| **No Data** | Appears when no data is available with Pandora® activated. Reboot the app and reconnect the device. |
| **To begin listening, select a station from the stations list.** | Appears when any station is not selected. Select a station from the station list on the device. |
| **PANDORA ver unsupport.** | Appears when Pandora® version is not supported. Update Pandora® to the latest version. |
| **No station list on device.<br>Use device to create station.** | Appears when there is no station list on the device. Use the device to create a station. |
| **PANDORA system maintenance.** | Appears when the Pandora® server is in maintenance. Try again later. |
| **Unable to play PANDORA. When stopped, log-in to PANDORA.** | Appears you do not log in to Pandora®. Log in to Pandora®. |
| **No network connectivity.** | Appears when the network is deteriorated. Move the vehicle and check the reception of the signal. |
| **Unable to play PANDORA. Please try again later.** | Appears when the sending the data is failed for ten times and the device may have a malfunction. Try again later. Move the vehicle and check the reception of the signal. |



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

| Error Message | Solution |
|---|---|
| **Unable to play PANDORA. Music licensing restricts play in this area.** | Appears when the vehicle is in the restricted area to listen the music. Move the vehicle and check the reception of the signal. |
| **Please check owners manual** | Appears when an incompatible device is connected. In order to have any problems on a connected device, there is a possibility that the audio system cannot be recognized the device. Contact a dealer. |

Models with Display Audio

| Error Message | Solution |
|---|---|
| **To begin listening, select a station from the Stations list.** | Appears when there is no station list on the device. Use the device to create a station. |
| **Unable to rate track. Please try again.** | Appears when you try to skip a song or select **Like/Dislike** over the predetermined number of times in an hour. |
| **Unable to play PANDORA. Please try again later.** | Appears when the commanded operation fails. Try again later. |
| **No Data** | Appears when no data is available with Pandora® activated. Reboot the app and reconnect the device. |
| **PANDORA App version is not supported.** | Appears when Pandora® version is not supported. Update Pandora® to the latest version. |
| **PANDORA system maintenance.** | Appears when the Pandora® server is in maintenance. Try again later. |

| Error Message | Solution |
|---|---|
| **Unable to connect to PANDORA. When stopped, check your mobile phone** | Appears when Pandora® is unable to play music. Check your device. |
| | Appears when Pandora® app is not installed on your device. Install Pandora® app to your device. |

Models with Display Audio

## Android/Apps

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

| Error Message*1 | Solution |
|---|---|
| **Unfortunately, **** has stopped.** | Error has occurred within app, select **OK** on the screen to close the app. |
| **** is not responding. Would you like to close it?** | App is not responding.<br>Select **Wait** if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select **OK** to close the app and start it up. If the error message continues, perform **Factory Data Reset**.<br>➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 392 |

*1:****part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

# SiriusXM® Radio Service*

## ■ Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

**1.** You need your radio ID ready before registering for subscription. To see the ID on the screen, select **Channel** to 0.
**2.** Have your radio ID ready, and either call or visit the SiriusXM® website to subscribe.

## ■ Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

Switch to the SiriusXM® mode by using the **ENTER** button on the steering wheel, or through the audio/information screen, and stay in this mode for about 30 minutes until the service is activated. Make sure your vehicle is in an open area with good reception.

## ■ SiriusXM® Radio Display Messages

**Requested Channel Not Subscribed:**
You are not subscribed to the channel selected.
**Subscription Updated:**
SiriusXM® radio is receiving information update from the network.
**Channel Not Available:**
No such channel exists, or the artist or title information is unavailable.
**No Signal:**
The signal is too weak in the current location.
**Check Tuner:**
There is a problem with the SiriusXM® tuner. Contact a dealer.
**Check Antenna:**
The SiriusXM® antenna is disconnected. Contact a dealer.

### Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

Contact Information for SiriusXM® Radio:
- U.S.: SiriusXM® Radio at *www.siriusxm.com/subscribenow*, or 1-866-635-2349
- Canada: SiriusXM® Canada at *www.siriusxm.ca/subscribe-now*, or 1-877-209-0079

### Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

The SiriusXM® satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

You may experience reception problems under the following circumstances:
- In a location with an obstruction to the south of your vehicle.
- In tunnels
- On the lower level of a multi-tiered road
- Large items carried on the roof rack



 * Not available on all models

# Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

## ■ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Models with color audio system

| Model |
|---|
| iPod (5th generation) |
| iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007) |
| iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008) |
| iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009) |
| iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) released between 2005 and 2012 |
| iPod touch (1st to 5th generation) released between 2007 and 2012 |
| iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus |

Models with Display Audio

| Model |
|---|
| iPod touch (6th generation) released 2015 |
| iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR |

## ■ USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, or WAV* formats may be unsupported.

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

* Not available on all models

# Honda App License Agreement

## ■ END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE CAREFULLY READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (THIS "AGREEMENT") WHICH GOVERNS YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE INSTALLED ON YOUR HONDA OR ACURA VEHICLE (YOUR "VEHICLE") AS WELL AS THE APPLICATIONS, SERVICES, FUNCTIONS, AND CONTENT PROVIDED THROUGH THE SOFTWARE (COLLECTIVELY, THE "SERVICES"). YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES WILL SERVE AS YOUR CONSENT TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. THE SOFTWARE IS OWNED (OR LICENSED), PROVIDED, AND/OR OPERATED BY AMERICAN HONDA MOTOR CO. INC., ("HONDA," "US," "WE," OR "OUR"), WITH ITS BUSINESS ADDRESS AT 1919 TORRANCE BLVD., TORRANCE, CA 90501. REFERENCE TO "HONDA" IN THIS AGREEMENT INCLUDES HONDA'S PARENT COMPANY AND ITS AFFILIATES AND DESIGNATED AGENTS. THE SERVICES ARE OWNED (OR LICENSED), PROVIDED, AND/OR OPERATED BY HONDA OR A THIRD-PARTY SERVICE PROVIDER (A "PROVIDER"). REFERENCE TO A "PROVIDER" IN THIS AGREEMENT INCLUDES SUCH PROVIDER'S PARENT COMPANY, AFFILIATES, AND DESIGNATED AGENTS.

**A. Description of the Software.** The SOFTWARE includes the software, firmware and the like, installed and executing on your VEHICLE during manufacture, and thereafter updated from time to time by HONDA, you or an authorized HONDA dealer (a "DEALER"). The SOFTWARE allows you to access and use a variety of SERVICES, including but not limited to: (a) HONDA applications, services, and content provided through the SOFTWARE (together, "HONDA SERVICES"); and (b) PROVIDER applications, services, and content provided through the SOFTWARE (together, "PROVIDER SERVICES"), each of which may provide access to various information, media, content, and services.

**B. SOFTWARE Licensing and Intellectual Property.**

**1. SOFTWARE.** This AGREEMENT grants you a non-exclusive, limited, and revocable license to use the SOFTWARE and SERVICES solely (a) as installed on your VEHICLE by HONDA, (b) as updated on your Vehicle by HONDA, you (but only as and when directed by HONDA), or a DEALER and (c) as permitted under the terms of this AGREEMENT.

**2. HONDA Services.** The SOFTWARE may provide you with access to various HONDA SERVICES. Installation, activation, or use of HONDA SERVICES may require your consent to additional terms, conditions, and privacy policies applicable to those HONDA SERVICES (the "HONDA TERMS"). You acknowledge and agree that any collection, use, sharing of data generated by your VEHICLE or your use of your VEHICLE, and your use of the HONDA SERVICES shall be subject to this AGREEMENT and any additional HONDA TERMS that may be specifically applicable to such HONDA SERVICES or data generation. The HONDA SERVICES may collect, use, and share such data while you are using the SOFTWARE.

**3. Open-Source Software.** The SOFTWARE and SERVICES may incorporate software licensed to HONDA under free or open-source licenses which govern HONDA's distribution and your use of such software. HONDA and the third-party authors, licensors, and distributors of such software disclaim all warranties and all liability arising from any and all use or distribution of the software. To the extent such software is provided under terms that differ from the applicable free or open-source licenses, those terms are offered by HONDA alone. Additional information regarding free and open-source software incorporated in the SOFTWARE and SERVICES is available in this manual or within the SOFTWARE.

**4. Provider Services.** The SOFTWARE may provide you with access to various PROVIDER SERVICES. Installation or use of such PROVIDER SERVICES may require your consent to additional terms, conditions, and privacy policies of the applicable PROVIDER (the "PROVIDER TERMS"). This AGREEMENT restricts the manner in which you can install and use PROVIDER SERVICES but does not grant you a license or permission to use such PROVIDER SERVICES. Your permission to use PROVIDER SERVICES is limited and subject to any license grants, conditions, and limitations included in the PROVIDER TERMS. You acknowledge that any collection, use, sharing of your information, targeted advertising practices by PROVIDERS, and your use of the PROVIDER SERVICES shall be subject to both this AGREEMENT and any applicable PROVIDER TERMS. The PROVIDER SERVICES may collect, use, and share such information while you are using the SOFTWARE.

**5. License Limitations and Restrictions on Use.**
(a) Limited License. You understand and agree that the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are licensed, not sold, to you solely for use in accordance with this AGREEMENT and any applicable PROVIDER TERMS, and any documentation for the VEHICLE made available to you by HONDA (any "DOCUMENTATION"). HONDA and its licensors reserve all rights in the SOFTWARE and HONDA SERVICES not expressly granted to you under this AGREEMENT. PROVIDERS and their licensors reserve all rights in the PROVIDER SERVICES not expressly granted to you under the applicable PROVIDER TERMS.

(b) Restrictions on Use. The licenses granted under this AGREEMENT do not permit you to use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES on a device other than your VEHICLE. As a condition of using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, you agree that you may not and will not:

(1) copy, download, distribute, modify, publish, sell, rent, lease, lend, license, sublicense, reuse, or create derivative works of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES or any of the content or other material within the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, including without limitation, HONDA or PROVIDER names, logos, or any other trademarks of HONDA or PROVIDERS or used in association with the SOFTWARE or any SERVICES, except as required to use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in accordance with this AGREEMENT, any applicable PROVIDER TERMS, and the DOCUMENTATION;

(2) access or use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in any manner intended to damage or impair the operation of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES or interfere with anyone else's use and enjoyment of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES;

(3) access or attempt to access any system or server on which the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is hosted or modify or alter the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in any way;

(4) use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES for any unlawful purpose, or in violation of any third party rights;

(5) use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in violation of any applicable traffic regulations, rules or laws, including but not limited to any driver distraction laws, rules or regulations;

(6) violate the terms of this AGREEMENT, any HONDA TERMS, any PROVIDER TERMS or other applicable third-party terms, conditions, and privacy policies; or

(7) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, attempt to derive the source code of, nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble, or attempt to derive the source code of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted (a) by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or (b) the terms of applicable free or opensource software licenses.

**6. Intellectual Property Rights.** All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, the accompanying DOCUMENTATION, and all copies of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are owned by HONDA, PROVIDERS, or their suppliers or licensors. This AGREEMENT does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of HONDA, PROVIDERS, or their licensors, affiliates, or suppliers.

**7. Export Restrictions:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are subject to U.S., European Union, and other export jurisdictions. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use, and destination restrictions issued by the U.S. and other governments.

**C. SOFTWARE Operation**

**1.** HONDA reserves the right to suspend or terminate your access to and use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES if you are found to be in violation of this AGREEMENT or as reasonably deemed necessary by HONDA.

**2.** Eligibility/Registration/Activation. The SOFTWARE is intended for and available to individuals who (a) are of legal age of majority in their jurisdiction of residence (and at least 18 years of age), or are younger than 18 years of age and possess a valid driver's license issued by their jurisdiction of residence, and (b) own or have permissive access to a compatible VEHICLE. We do not knowingly collect any information, including personal information, from children under 13. If we learn or are notified that we have collected personal information of a child under 13, we will immediately take steps to delete such information.

**3.** Use of PROVIDER SERVICES through the SOFTWARE. Certain PROVIDER SERVICES made available through the SOFTWARE may require that you register or otherwise have an account with the PROVIDER and agree to PROVIDER TERMS. Any use of any of such PROVIDER SERVICES within the SOFTWARE is subject to this AGREEMENT and the applicable PROVIDER TERMS. HONDA does not exercise control over such PROVIDER SERVICES and is not responsible or liable for the availability, security, or content of such PROVIDER SERVICES, and the inclusion of any PROVIDER SERVICES does not imply a referral from, the approval of, or the endorsement by HONDA of such PROVIDER SERVICES. HONDA is not responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for any damage relating to or resulting from your use of the PROVIDER SERVICES.

**4.** Links to Third Party Sites: The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to access third-party sites and content through the use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. The third-party sites and content are not under the control of HONDA. HONDA is not responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for such third-party websites and their content or for any damage relating to or resulting from your access or use of such websites and content.

**5.** Unauthorized Use and Abuse. You are responsible for ensuring your (and any authorized third parties') use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES remains in compliance with this AGREEMENT and all other applicable HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS. You acknowledge and agree that any use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES occurring through your VEHICLE will be deemed your actions and that HONDA and PROVIDERS may rely upon such actions. You agree to immediately notify us if you suspect fraudulent or abusive activity involving the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. If you so notify us or if we otherwise suspect fraudulent or abusive activity, you agree to cooperate with us in any fraud investigation and to use any fraud prevention measures we prescribe. Your failure to immediately notify us or cooperate to use such measures will result in your liability for all fraudulent usage or abusive activity associated with your VEHICLE.

**6.** SOFTWARE Updates. The SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be updated when your VEHICLE is serviced by a DEALER or remotely, over-the-air, by HONDA from time to time; such updates may occur with or without further notice or your future consent. The SOFTWARE may be updated at HONDA's discretion and for any purpose including, without limitation, to patch or otherwise improve the SOFTWARE or SERVICES functionality, security, or stability. All updates to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are subject to this AGREEMENT and any other applicable HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS.

**7.** Uninstalling, Removing, and Replacing the SOFTWARE. Replacing SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES with software or firmware not provided and installed by HONDA or a DEALER will render all representations and warranties for the SOFTWARE, HONDA SERVICES, and VEHICLE functionality reliant upon the SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES null and void.

**D. SOFTWARE Operational Notices and Warnings**

**1.** Vehicle Geolocation Information. You acknowledge that your VEHICLE may be equipped with certain traffic and map features. The traffic feature will automatically collect and transmit, through GPS technology, your Vehicle's current location (longitude and latitude), travel direction and speed ("VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION") to HONDA and PROVIDERS. The VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION is used by HONDA and PROVIDERS to provide traffic and navigation-related information to you, but may also be used to provide other SERVICES or offers to you. HONDA will not use such VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION for its own marketing efforts, or provide such information to unaffiliated third parties for their own purposes, without your express consent.

**2.** Potential Map Inaccuracy and Route Safety. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls, routing, or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following suggested routes. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal driving maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals, or clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for such locations and routes. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Navigation features are not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by the SOFTWARE or SERVICES should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

**3.** Speech Recognition: You acknowledge and understand that HONDA and PROVIDERS may record, retain, and use voices commands when you use the speech recognition components of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. You and all VEHICLE operators and passengers (a) consent to the recording and retention of voice commands in support of providing speech recognition components and (b) release HONDA and PROVIDERS from all claims, liabilities, and losses that may result from any use of such recorded voice commands. Recognition errors are inherent in speech recognition. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors. Neither HONDA nor PROVIDERS will be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.

**4.** Distraction Hazards. Navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) input or setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause a crash or other serious consequences; the ability to undertake such interactions may also be limited by state or local law, which laws you are responsible to know and follow. Even occasional short scans of the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving at a critical time. Pull over and stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could result in a crash.

**E. Information Collection and Storage**

**1.** Information Collection, Use, Transmission and Storage of Data. Consent to Use of Data: You agree that HONDA and PROVIDERS may collect and use your information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. HONDA may share such information with third parties, including, without limitation, PROVIDERS, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agents, solely to improve their products or to provide services or technologies to you. HONDA, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

**2.** Information Storage. Depending on the type of multimedia system you have in your VEHICLE, certain information may be stored for ease of use of the SOFTWARE including, without limitation, search history, location history in certain applications, previous and saved destinations, map locations within certain applications, and device numbers and contact information.

(a) Vehicle Health Information. Your VEHICLE may remotely transmit information regarding the status and health of your VEHICLE ("VEHICLE INFORMATION") to HONDA without notification to you. VEHICLE INFORMATION may contain VEHICLE maintenance and malfunction status that is derived from VEHICLE diagnostic data and includes, but is not limited to, status of powered doors and windows, battery life data, battery charging data, VEHICLE speed, coolant temperature, air compressor revolution, output power, warning codes, diagnostic trouble codes, fuel injection volume, and engine rotations per minute. VEHICLE HEALTH INFORMATION may be used by HONDA for research and development, to deliver HONDA SERVICES and information to you, and to contact you, and is retained only for a period of time necessary to fulfill these goals.

(b) VEHICLE Geolocation Data (non-navigation/map based). If you opt-in to geolocation-based SERVICES, your vehicle's geolocation data (latitude and longitude) will be automatically sent from your VEHICLE to HONDA and PROVIDERS.

(c) You understand that the inputting or uploading of information to your VEHICLE's multimedia system or the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is at your own risk and that HONDA is not responsible for unauthorized access to or use of any personal or other information. All information uploaded to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be stored on your VEHICLES's multimedia system and you understand that the security and safety of your VEHICLE's multimedia system is your sole responsibility.

**F. NO WARRANTY.** You understand and agree that your use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are solely at your own risk and that you will be solely responsible for any damage to your VEHICLE's multimedia system or any other equipment or any loss of data that may result from your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. THE SOFTWARE AND SERVICES ARE PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESSED, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY. WE SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. HONDA makes no warranties that the SOFTWARE or SERVICES will meet your requirements, or that the SOFTWARE or SERVICES will be uninterrupted, timely, secure, non-infringing or error free. You understand and agree that you are responsible for any and all charges, costs or expenses associated with your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. Advice or information, whether oral or written, obtained by you from us or through the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are provided for informational purposes only and will not create any warranty not expressly made herein. You should not rely on any such information or advice. We assume no liability or responsibility for any errors or omissions in the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. We do not make any warranty or representation that your use of the material displayed on, or obtained through, the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is non-infringing of any rights of any third party. Any decision or action taken by you on the basis of information or content provided via the application is at your sole discretion and risk. HONDA and PROVIDERS are not responsible or liable for any such decision, or for the accuracy, completeness, usefulness, or availability of any content or information displayed, transmitted, or otherwise made available via the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. To the extent jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion of certain warranties, some of the above exclusions may not apply to you.

**G. LIMITATIONS ON LIABILITY.** You and HONDA are each waiving important rights.
**1.** Limitations on YOUR liability. HONDA cannot recover from you any consequential, indirect, incidental, or special damages, or attorney's fees in connection with your use of the SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES. HONDA WAIVES TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW ANY CLAIM FOR DAMAGES OTHER THAN DIRECT, COMPENSATORY DAMAGES AS LIMITED IN THIS AGREEMENT.

**2.** Limitation on HONDA and PROVIDER liability. Neither HONDA nor PROVIDERS will be liable to you or any other party for consequential, indirect, incidental, special, or punitive damages (including without limitation lost profits) in connection with your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, even if HONDA or PROVIDERS are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). To the extent that a jurisdiction does not permit the exclusion or limitation of liability as set forth herein our liability is limited to the maximum extent permitted by law in such states. If HONDA or PROVIDERS are found liable to you for any reason, you agree that the aggregate liability of all these parties to you for any claim is limited to ten U.S. dollars (US $10.00). Neither HONDA nor any PROVIDER would have agreed to provide the SOFTWARE or SERVICES to you if you did not agree to this limitation. This amount is the sole and exclusive liability of HONDA and PROVIDERS to you, and is payable as liquidated damages and not as a penalty. Except where prohibited by law, you may not bring any claim against HONDA or any third-party beneficiary more than two (2) years after the claim arises. We do not have any liability for SOFTWARE or SERVICES interruptions of any length.

(a) Release of HONDA and PROVIDERS For yourself and anyone else claiming under you, you agree to release and discharge HONDA, PROVIDERS, their respective officers, directors, and employees, and each third-party beneficiary from all claims, liabilities and losses in connection with the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, including, but not limited to claims for personal injury or property damage arising from the total or partial failure of performance of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, even if caused by or based upon the negligence, gross negligence, strict products liability, Deceptive Trade Practices Act violations, bad faith, or breach of warranty of us or the malfunction of the SOFTWARE or SOFTWARE SERVICES. YOU AGREE TO WAIVE TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, ANY CLAIM FOR DAMAGES OTHER THAN DIRECT, COMPENSATORY DAMAGES AS LIMITED IN THIS AGREEMENT. YOU HEREBY RELEASE AND DISCHARGE HONDA AND ITS LICENSORS AND CONTRACTORS (INCLUDING ANY THIRD PARTIES PROVIDING ALL OR PART OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES) FROM AND AGAINST ANY CLAIMS, DAMAGES, EXPENSES AND LIABILITY ARISING FROM OR RELATED TO ANY INJURIES, DAMAGES, OR LOSSES TO ANY PERSON (INCLUDING DEATH) OR PROPERTY OF ANY KIND RESULTING IN WHOLE OR PART, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, FROM YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES.

**H. Survival.** You agree that the limitations of liability and indemnities in this AGREEMENT will survive even after the AGREEMENT has ended. These limitations of liability apply not only to you, but to anyone using the SOFTWARE or SERVICES via your VEHICLE, to anyone making a claim on your behalf, and to any claims made by your family, employees, customers, or others arising out of or relating to your VEHICLE, the SOFTWARE, or SERVICES.

**I. Availability/Interruption.** The SOFTWARE and certain SERVICES are made available through your VEHICLE's compatible multimedia system when the VEHICLE is turned on. Certain SERVICES may be available only through your compatible mobile device when it is within the operating range of the VEHICLE and a wireless carrier. The availability of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be subject to transmission limitation or interruption, including but not limited to technical obsolesce or sunsetting of the hardware, software or firmware, inside of or external to the Vehicle, required for data transmission or receipt. HONDA does not guarantee that the SOFTWARE, SERVICES, or any portion thereof will be available at all times or in all areas. You acknowledge and agree that HONDA is not responsible for performance degradation, interruption or delays. You acknowledge that HONDA shall not be liable to you if the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in a given location are not available. If the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are not available within your intended location, you agree that your sole remedy shall be to cease using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES.

**J. PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Product support for the SOFTWARE is provided by HONDA. For product support, please refer to HONDA instructions provided in the DOCUMENTATION. Should you have any questions concerning this AGREEMENT, or if you desire to contact HONDA for any other reason, please refer to the HONDA contact information provided in the DOCUMENTATION.

**K. Termination and Transfer.**

**1. Termination.** This AGREEMENT is effective until terminated by you or US. WE may terminate this AGREEMENT for any or no reason, and with or without notice to you. Your rights under this AGREEMENT will terminate automatically without notice from US if you fail to comply with any term of this AGREEMENT. Upon termination of this AGREEMENT, you shall cease all use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES.

**2. Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this AGREEMENT only as part of a sale or transfer of the VEHICLE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE and HONDA SERVICES (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, and any upgrades), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this AGREEMENT. You agree to notify HONDA upon the sale or transfer of the VEHICLE. To contact HONDA, please refer to the HONDA contact information provided in the DOCUMENTATION.

**L. Changes to the SOFTWARE or SERVICES.** WE may change, modify, or update the SOFTWARE or SERVICES from time to time. Unless explicitly stated otherwise, any new features or services that augment or enhance the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in the future shall respectively be considered part of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES and subject to this AGREEMENT. WE reserve the right at any time and from time to time to interrupt, restrict, modify, suspend, discontinue, temporarily or permanently, the SOFTWARE or SERVICES (or any portion thereof), with or without notice to you, and you agree that HONDA shall not be liable to you or to any third party for any modification, suspension or discontinuance of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES.

**M.** ARBITRATION:

PLEASE READ THIS ARBITRATION PROVISION CAREFULLY TO UNDERSTAND YOUR RIGHTS. YOU AGREE THAT ANY CLAIM THAT YOU MAY HAVE IN THE FUTURE MUST BE RESOLVED THROUGH BINDING ARBITRATION. YOU WAIVE THE RIGHT TO HAVE YOUR DISPUTE HEARD IN COURT AND WAIVE THE RIGHT TO BRING CLASS CLAIMS. YOU UNDERSTAND THAT DISCOVERY AND APPEAL RIGHTS ARE MORE LIMITED IN ARBITRATION.

Arbitration is a method of resolving a claim, dispute or controversy without filing a lawsuit. By agreeing to arbitrate, the right to go to court is waived and instead claims, disputes or controversies are submitted to binding arbitration. This provision sets forth the terms and conditions of our agreement. YOU and HONDA agree and acknowledge that this Agreement affects interstate commerce and the Federal Arbitration Act ("FAA") applies. By using the Software, Vehicle, or Services, YOU elect to have disputes resolved by arbitration. YOU, HONDA or any involved third party may pursue a Claim. "Claim" means any dispute between YOU, HONDA, or any involved third party relating to your use of the Software, the Vehicle, or the Services, this Agreement, or our relationship, including any representations, omissions or warranties. "Claim" does not include personal injury or wrongful death claims. YOU or HONDA may seek remedies in small claims court or provisional judicial remedies without arbitrating. In addition, notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, YOU or HONDA may seek equitable relief in a court of competent jurisdiction.

YOU or HONDA may select arbitration with American Arbitration Association, JAMS or National Arbitration and Mediation. Contact these sponsors for their rules. The hearing will be in the federal district where YOU reside. If agreed, it may be by telephone or written submissions. Filing and arbitrator fees to be paid per the sponsor rules. You may contact the sponsor for a fee waiver. If no fee waivers, HONDA will pay filing and arbitrator fees up to $5,000, unless law requires more. Each party is responsible for other fees. Arbitrator may award costs or fees to prevailing party, if permitted by law. HONDA will not seek fees, unless the claims are frivolous.

Arbitrator shall be an attorney or current or retired judge familiar with automotive or consumer software. The arbitrator shall follow substantive law, statute of limitations and decide all issues relating to the interpretation, construction, enforceability and applicability of this provision. The arbitrator may order relief permitted by law. This provision is governed and enforceable by the FAA. An award shall include a written opinion and be final, subject to appeal by the FAA.
This provision survives termination of this Agreement or relationship, bankruptcy, assignment or transfer. If part of this provision is unenforceable, the remainder remains in effect. If unenforceability allows arbitration as a class action, then this provision is entirely unenforceable. YOU may opt out within 30 days of your initial use of the Software by sending a signed, written notice to HONDA at Honda Financial Services, P.O. Box 165007, Irving, TX 75016. HONDA reserves the right to make changes to this provision after providing written notice and an opportunity to opt out.

**N. Miscellaneous:** You may not assign this AGREEMENT without HONDA's prior written consent. This AGREEMENT and any additional HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS represents the entire agreement between you and US. HONDA may amend the terms of this AGREEMENT by providing you with notices of such updated terms. If you do not consent to be bound by the updated terms, your sole remedy will be to cease using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES. If any part of this AGREEMENT is found invalid, void, or unenforceable, the balance of the AGREEMENT will remain valid and enforceable according to its terms. To the fullest extent permitted by law, and except as explicitly provided otherwise, this AGREEMENT and any disputes arising out of or relating to it will be governed by the laws of the State of California, except that California laws concerning choice of law or conflicts shall not apply if they would cause the substantive law of another jurisdiction to apply. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Section M shall be governed by the Federal Arbitration Act and the laws of the State of California, as applicable, as set forth therein. The failure to enforce any term of this AGREEMENT on one occasion shall not prevent enforcement on any other occasion or the enforcement of any other term. Headings and captions shall not be considered included for purposes of interpretation or application hereof, but are for convenience only.

Models with Display Audio

# Legal Information on Apple CarPlay™/Android Auto™

## ■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

## ■ DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA'S TOTAL LIABILITY TO YOU FOR ALL DAMAGES (OTHER THAN AS MAY BE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW IN CASES INVOLVING PERSONAL INJURY) EXCEED THE AMOUNT OF FIVE DOLLARS ($5.00). THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

# About Open Source Licenses

To see the open source license information, follow these steps.

Models with color audio system

**1.** Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
**2.** Rotate ⟲ to select **Settings**, then press ⟲.
**3.** Rotate ⟲ to select **License**, then press ⟲.

Models with Display Audio

**1.** Select HOME.
**2.** Select **Settings**.
**3.** Select **System**.
**4.** Select the **Others** tab.
**5.** Select **Detail Information**.
**6.** Select **About device**.
**7.** Select **Legal information**.
**8.** Select **Open source licenses**.

About Open Source Licenses

Models with color audio system

LICENSE: Copyright © 2001 Bob Trower, Trantor Standard Systems Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

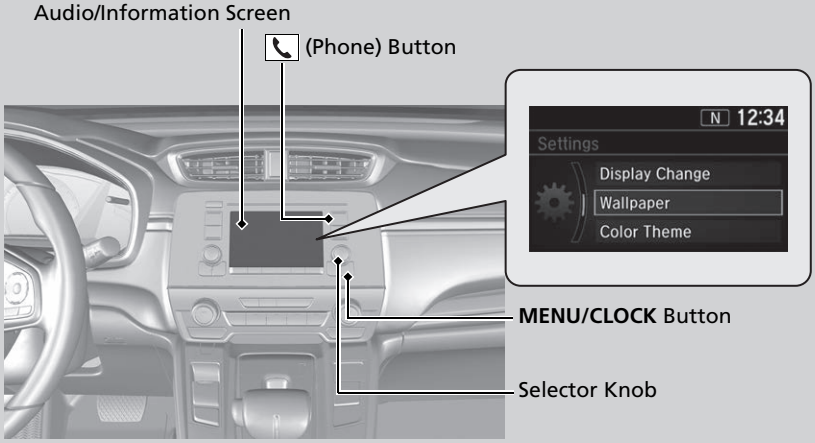
THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Models with color audio system

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

## ■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON (II), press the **MENU/CLOCK** button, then select **Settings**. To customize the phone settings, press the (Phone) button, then select **Phone Setup**.




### Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

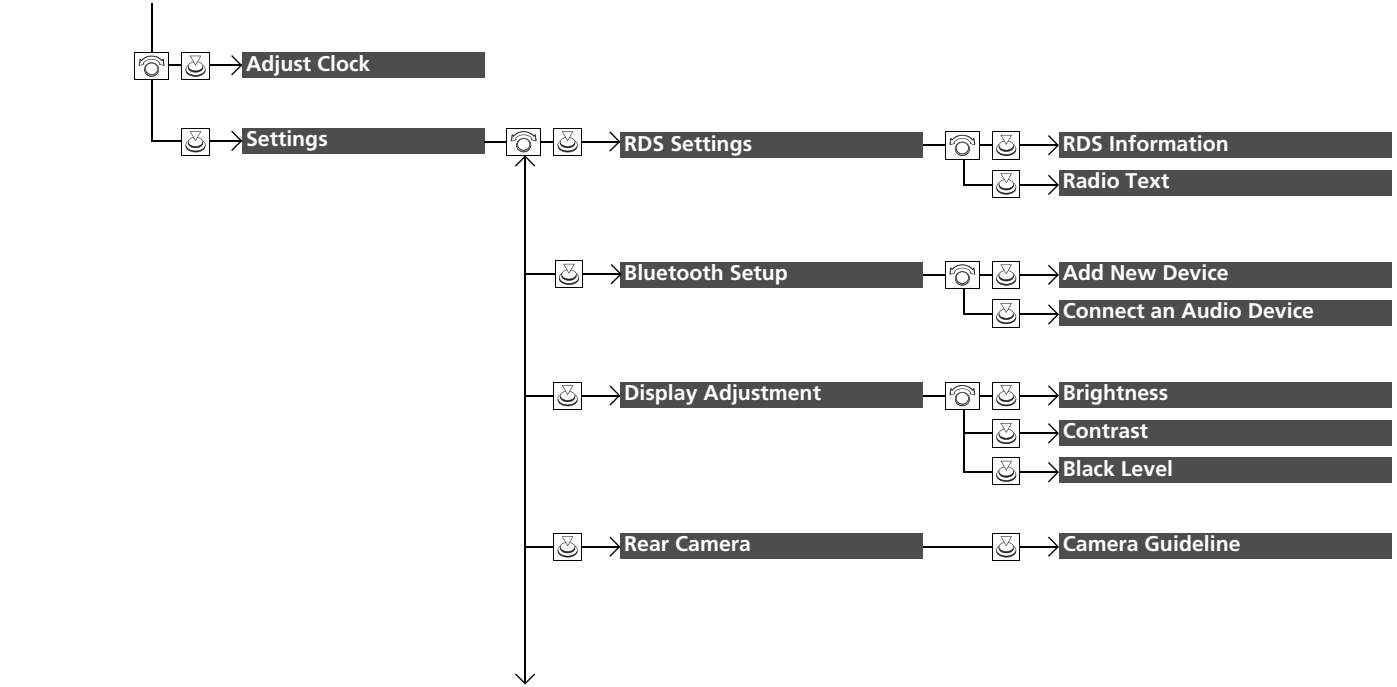
### How to customize

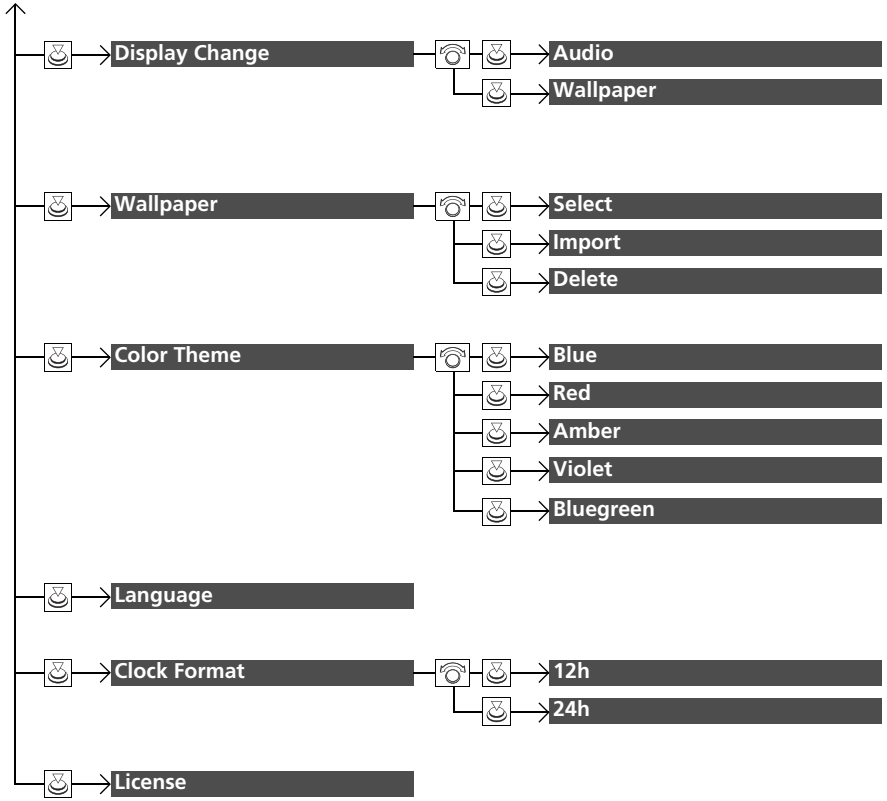
These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.
Rotate to select.
Press to enter.

Continued

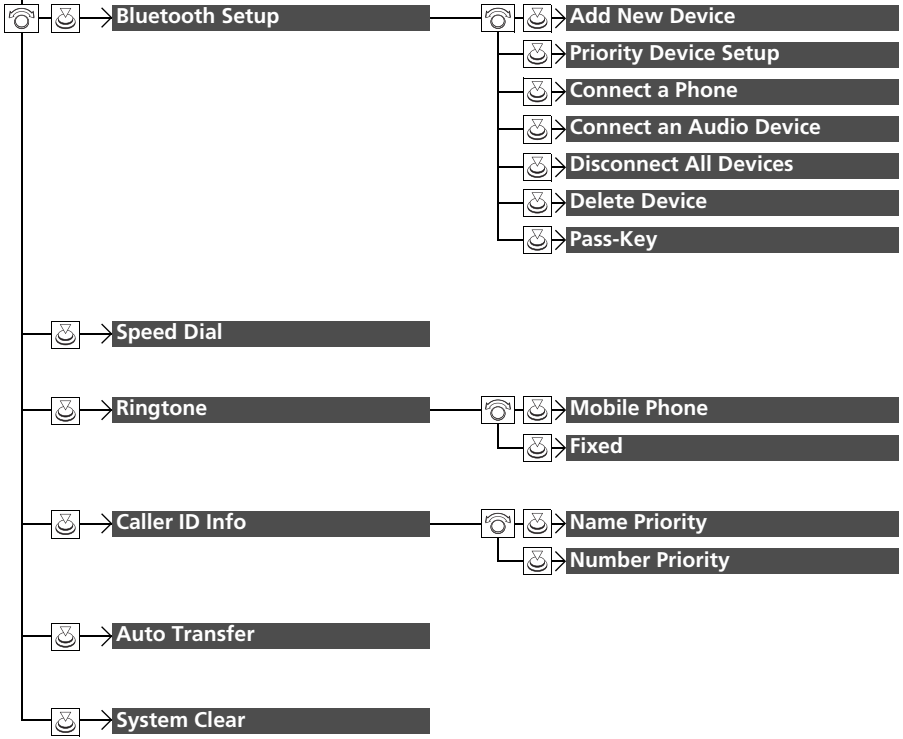
## ■ Customization Flow

Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.




Display Change
Audio
Wallpaper
Wallpaper
Select
Import
Delete
Color Theme
Blue
Red
Amber
Violet
Bluegreen
Language
Clock Format
12h
24h
License

Press the button and rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .



■ **List of customizable options**

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Adjust Clock** | | | Adjust Clock.<br>➡ **Clock** P. 138 | — |
| **Settings** | **RDS Settings** | **RDS Information** | Selects whether the RDS information comes on. | **On***1**/Off** |
| | | **Radio Text** | Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station. | — |
| | **Bluetooth Setup** | **Add New Device** | Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a code for a paired phone.<br>➡ **Phone Setup** P. 402 | — |
| | | **Connect an Audio Device** | Connects, disconnects or pairs a *Bluetooth*® Audio device to HFL. | — |
| | **Display Adjustment** | **Brightness** | Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. | — |
| | | **Contrast** | Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen. | — |
| | | **Black Level** | Changes the black level of the audio/information screen. | — |
| | **Rear Camera** | **Camera Guideline** | Selects whether the guidelines come on the audio/information screen. | **On***1**/Off** |

*1:Default Setting



*Continued*

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Settings** | **Display Change** | | Changes the display type. | **Audio**[*1]**/Wallpaper** |
| | **Wallpaper** | **Select** | Changes the wallpaper type. | **Clock**[*1]**/Image 1/Image 2/ Image 3** |
| | | **Import** | Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. ➡ **Wallpaper Setup** P. 249 | — |
| | | **Delete** | Deletes an image file for a wallpaper. | **Image 1/Image 2/Image 3** |
| | **Color Theme** | | Changes the background color of the audio/ information screen. | **Blue**[*1]**/Red/Amber/Violet/ Bluegreen** |
| | **Language** | | Changes the display language. | **English**[*1]**/French/Spanish** |
| | **Clock Format** | | Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H. | **12h**[*1]**/24h** |
| | **License** | | Shows the legal information. | — |

*1:Default Setting

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Phone Setup** | **Bluetooth Setup** | **Add New Device** | | Pairs a new phone to HFL. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 402 | — |
| | | **Priority Device Setup** | **Priority** | Enables the system to or disables it from automatically establishing a connection with a *Bluetooth*® device which has been assigned priority. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | | **Phone Priority** | Selects the priority device over another pairedphone(s). | — |
| | | | **Audio Priority** | Selects the priority device over another paired audio device(s). | — |
| | | **Connect a Phone** | | Pairs a new phone or connects a paired phone to HFL. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 402 | — |
| | | **Connect an Audio Device** | | Connects a *Bluetooth*® Audio device to HFL. | — |
| | | **Disconnect All Devices** | | Disconnects a paired phone from HFL. | — |
| | | **Delete Device** | | Deletes a paired phone. | — |
| | | **Pass-Key** | | Inputs and changes a code for a paired phone. | — |
| | **Speed Dial** | | | Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ➡ **Speed Dial** P. 411 | — |
| | **Ringtone** | | | Selects the ring tone. | **Mobile Phone**[*1]**/Fixed** |
| | **Caller ID Info** | | | Prioritizes the caller's name or phone number as the caller ID. | **Name Priority**[*1]**/ Number Priority** |
| | **Auto Transfer** | | | Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | **System Clear** | | | Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Phone Setup** group as default. | — |

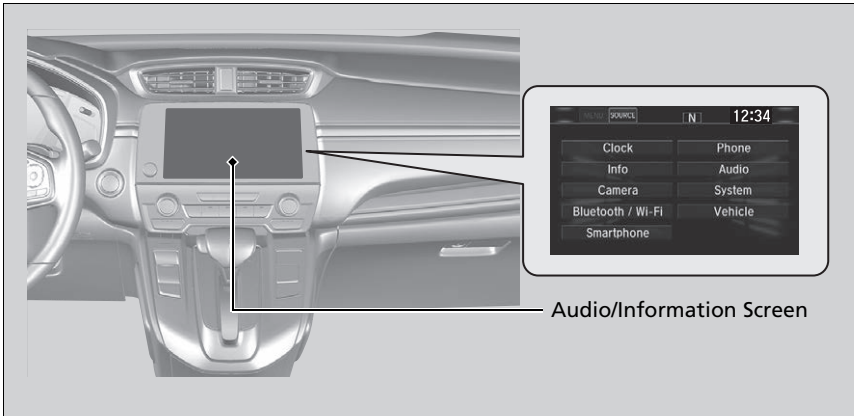
*1:Default Setting

Models with Display Audio

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

## ■ How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, select HOME, and **Settings**, then select a setting item.




### Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to P.

## ■ Customization flow

Select **Settings**.

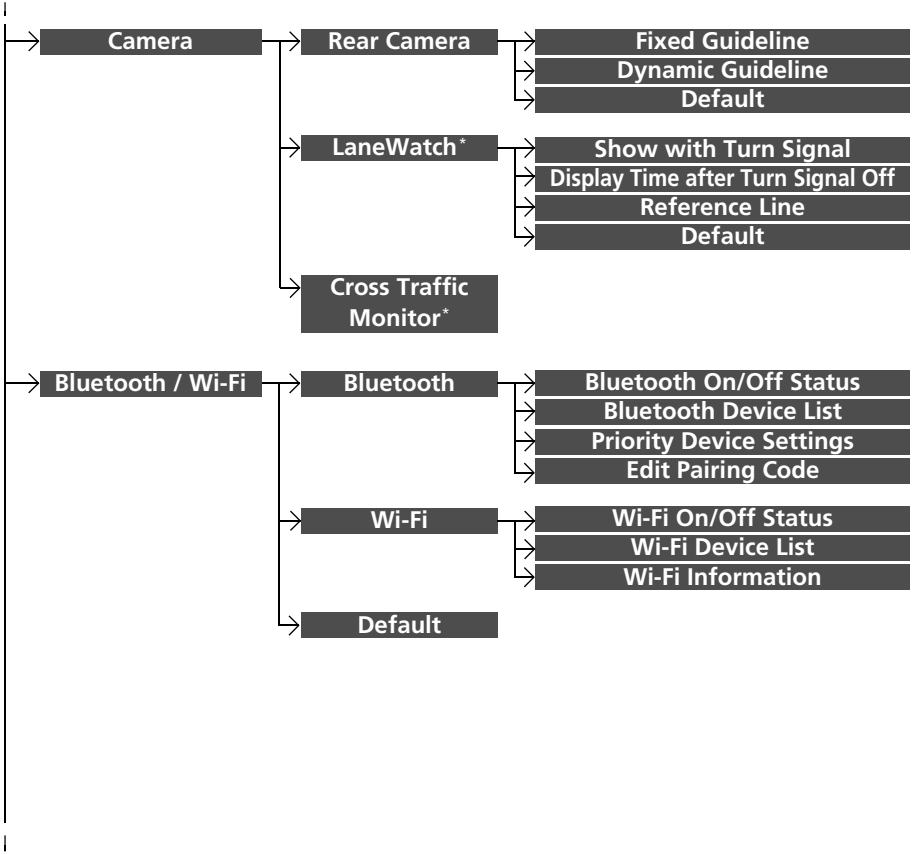
- Clock
  - Clock
    - Clock/Wallpaper Type*1/Clock Type*2
      - Clock
      - Wallpaper
    - Clock Adjustment
    - Auto Time Zone*
    - Manual Time Zone*
    - Auto Daylight Saving Time
    - Clock Format
    - Clock Display
    - Overlay Clock Location
    - Clock Reset
  - HondaLink
    - Diagnostic & Location Data
  - Others
    - Info Screen Preference
  - Default
- Info
  - Clock
    - Clock/Wallpaper Type*1/Clock Type*2
      - Clock
      - Wallpaper
    - Clock Adjustment
    - Auto Time Zone*
    - Manual Time Zone*
    - Auto Daylight Saving Time
    - Clock Format
    - Clock Display
    - Overlay Clock Location
    - Clock Reset
  - HondaLink
    - Diagnostic & Location Data
  - Others
    - Info Screen Preference
  - Default

*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models



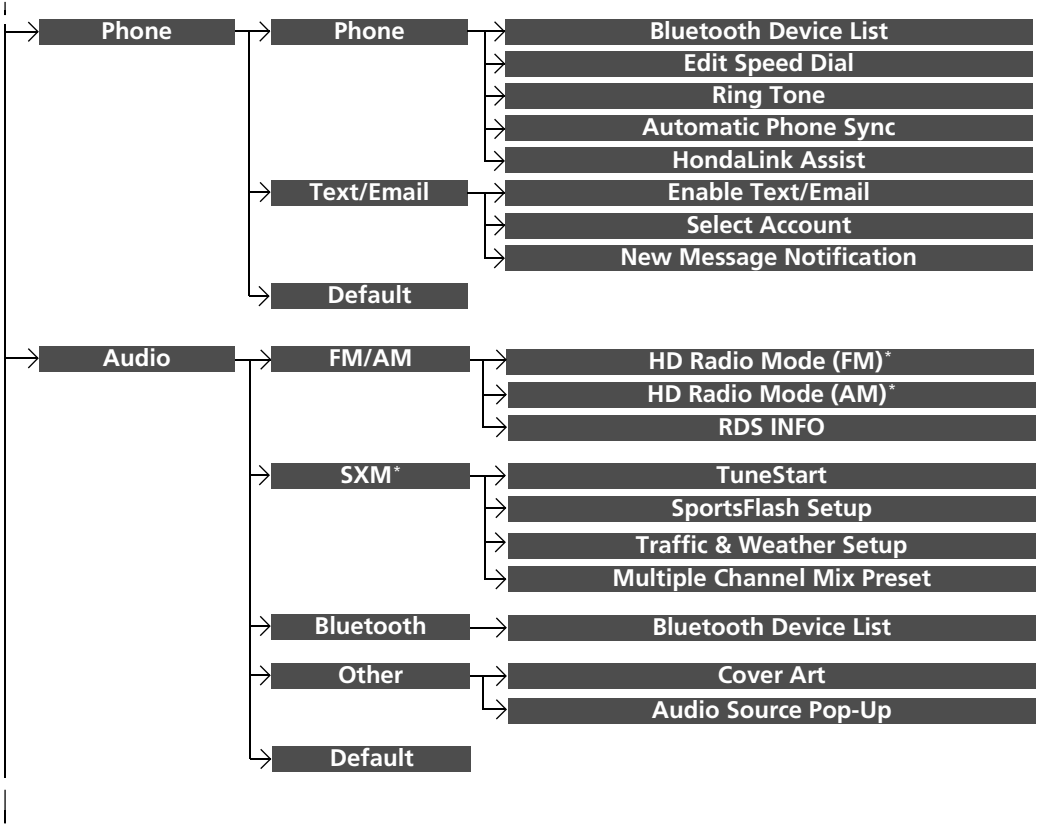
*Continued*







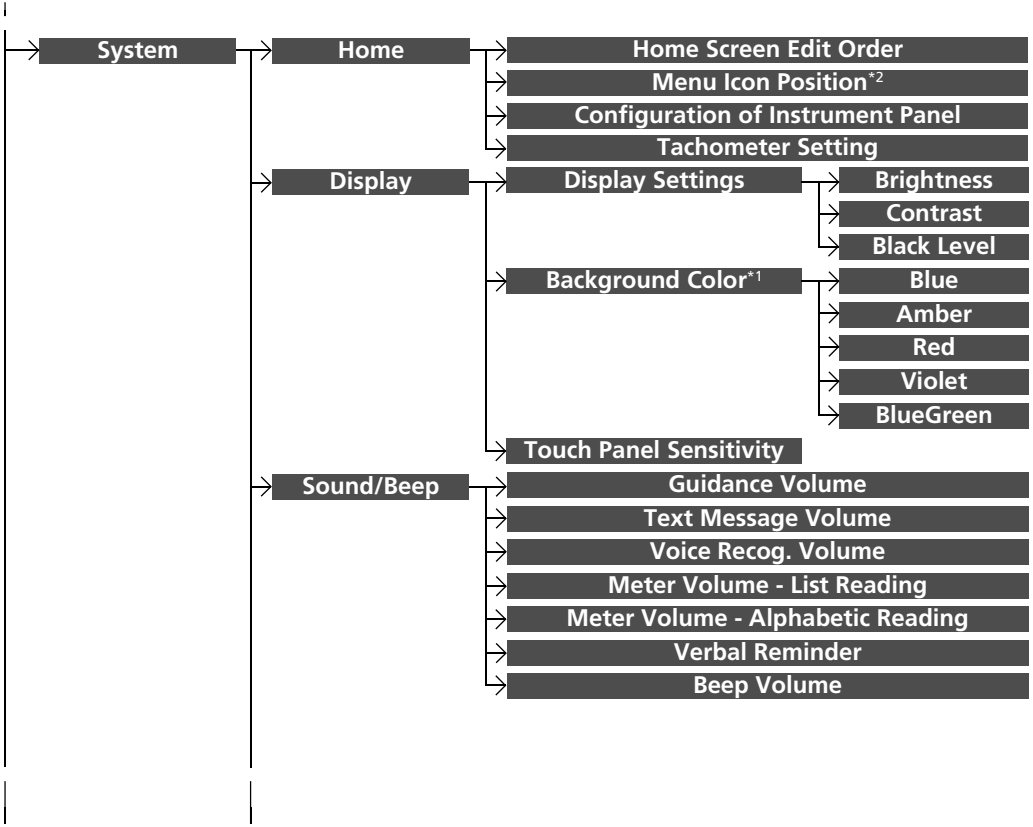

* Not available on all models



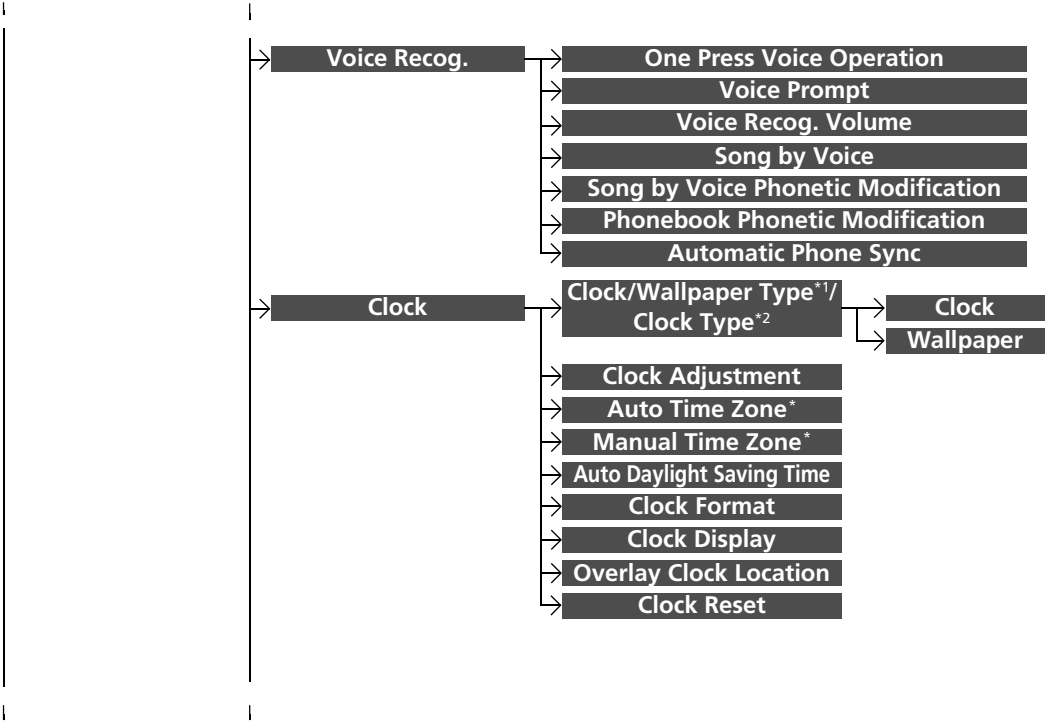



* Not available on all models

*Continued*




*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

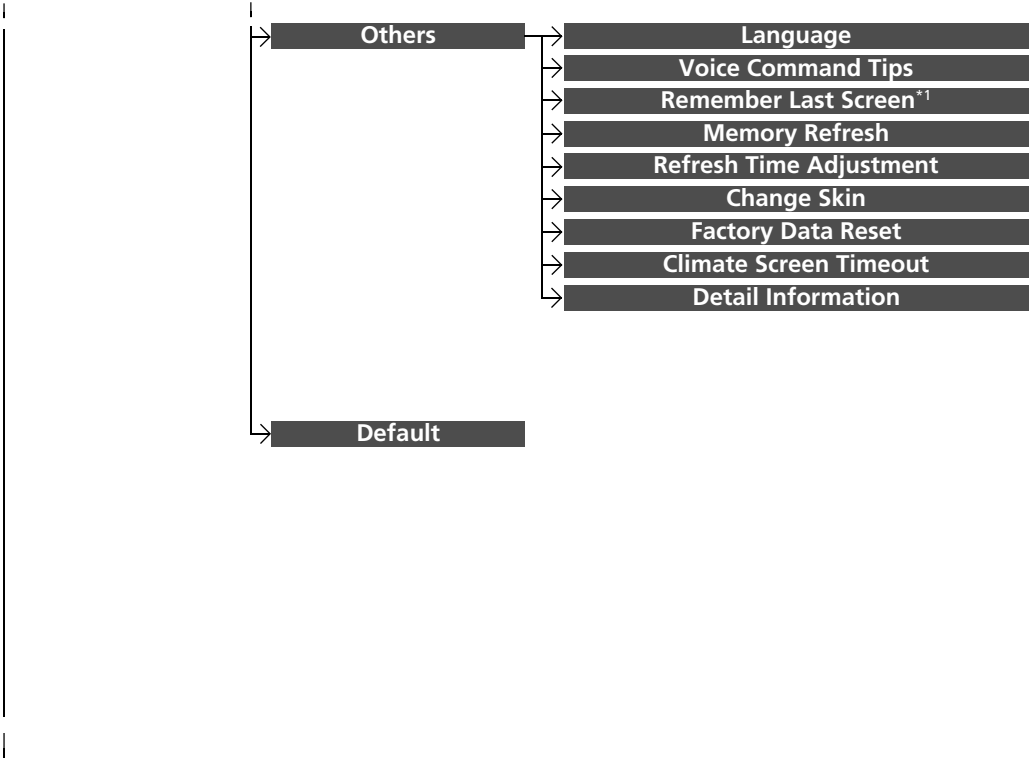



*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

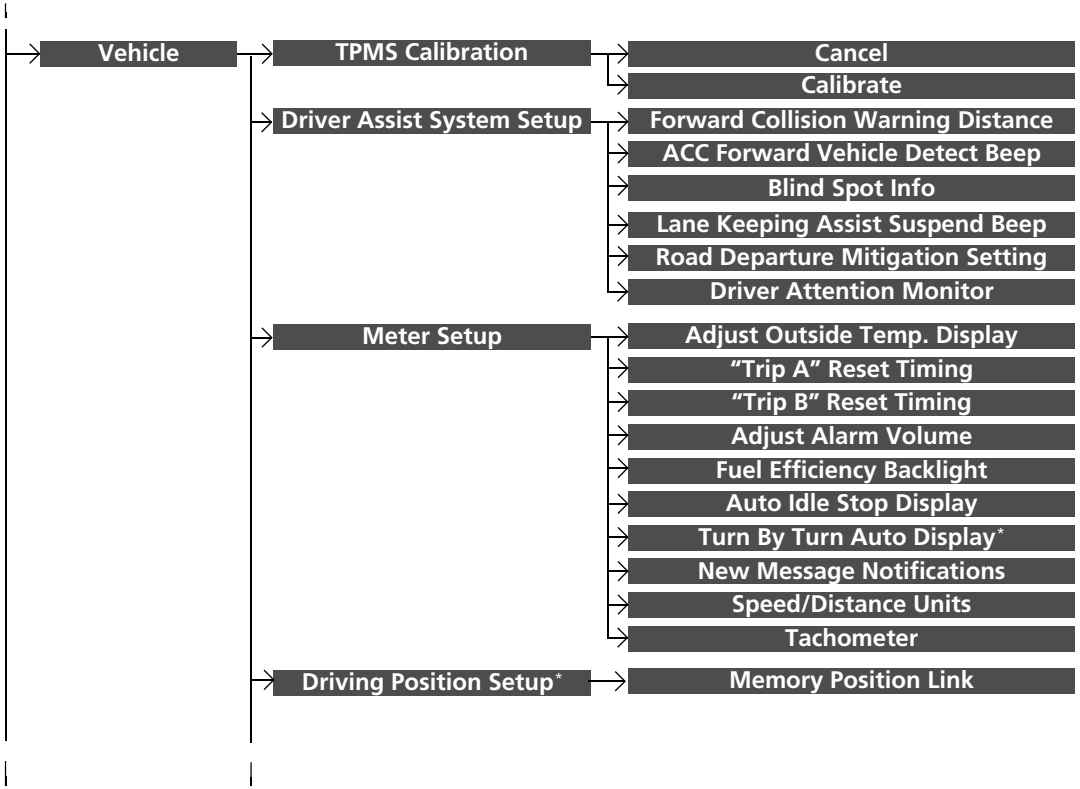
* Not available on all models



*Continued*



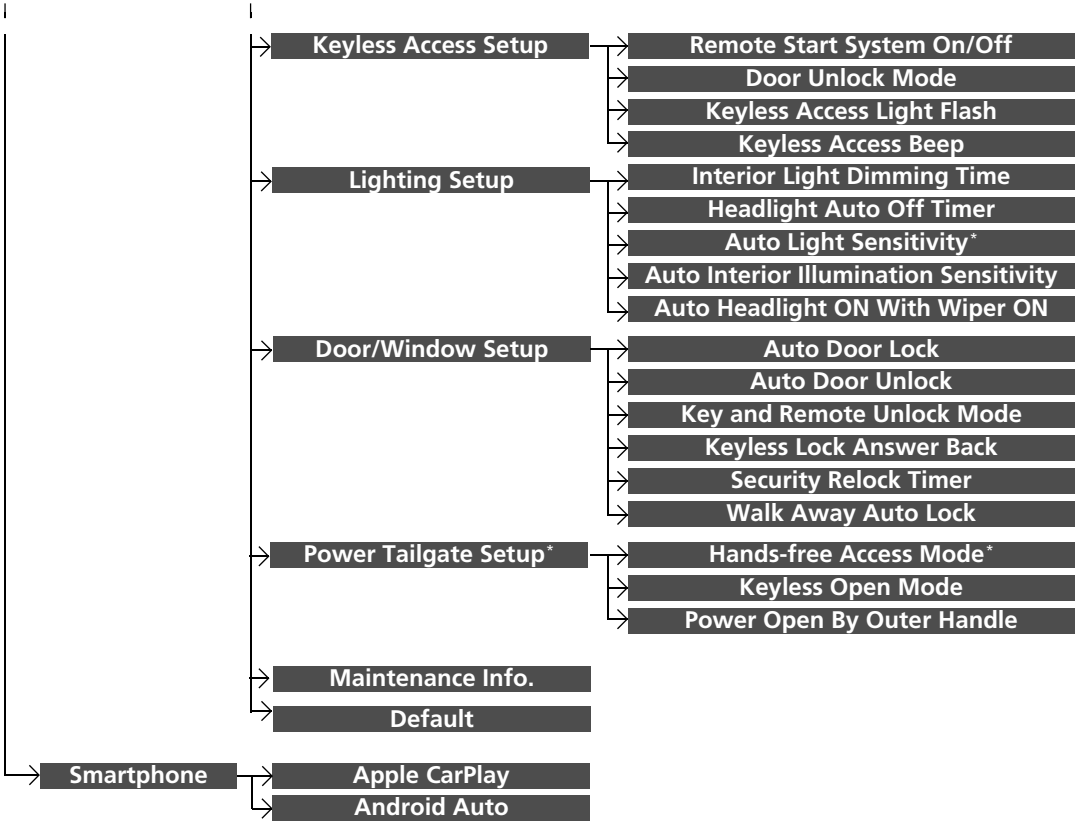

*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.






* Not available on all models

*Continued*








* Not available on all models

■ **List of customizable options**

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Clock** | **Clock** | **Clock/ Wallpaper Type*1/Clock Type*2** | **Clock** | See **Info** on P. 376 | |
| | | | **Wallpaper** | | |
| | | **Clock Adjustment** | | | |
| | | **Auto Time Zone*** | | | |
| | | **Manual Time Zone*** | | | |
| | | **Auto Daylight Saving Time** | | | |
| | | **Clock Format** | | | |
| | | **Clock Display** | | | |
| | | **Overlay Clock Location** | | | |
| | | **Clock Reset** | | | |
| | **HondaLink** | **Diagnostic & Location Data** | | | |
| | **Others** | **Info Screen Preference** | | | |
| | **Default** | | | Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Clock** settings group as default. | **Yes/No** |

*1:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*2:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Info** | **Clock** | **Clock/ Wallpaper Type**[*2]/ **Clock Type**[*3] **Clock** | Changes the clock display type. | **Analog/Digital**[*1]/ **Small Digital/Off** |
| | | **Clock/ Wallpaper Type**[*2]/ **Clock Type**[*3] **Wallpaper** | • Changes the wallpaper type.<br>• Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.<br>• Deletes an image file for a wallpaper. | **Blank/Galaxy**[*1]/ **Metallic/Time Zone** |
| | | **Clock Adjustment** | Adjusts Clock. | — |
| | | **Auto Time Zone*** | Automatically adjusts the clock when driving through different time zones. | **On**[*1]/**Off** |
| | | **Manual Time Zone*** | Changes the time zone manually. | — |
| | | **Auto Daylight Saving Time** | Select **On** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock to daylight savings time. Select **Off** to cancel this function. | **On**[*1]/**Off** |
| | | **Clock Format** | Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H. | **12H**[*1]/**24H** |
| | | **Clock Display** | Selects whether the clock display comes on. | **On**[*1]/**Off** |
| | | **Overlay Clock Location** | Changes the clock display layout. | **Upper Right**[*1]/**Upper Left/Lower Right/ Lower Left/Off** |
| | | **Clock Reset** | Resets the clock settings to the factory default. | **Yes/No** |

*1:Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Info | **HondaLink** | **Diagnostic & Location Data** | Turns HondaLink® on and off. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | **Others** | **Info Screen Preference** | Selects the top menu when the [i] (display/information) button is pressed.<br>• **Info Top**- A brief menu pops up.<br>• **Info Menu**- A full menu pops up.<br>• **Off**- A menu does not pop up. | **Info Top/Info Menu**[*1]**/Off** |
| | **Default** | | Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Info** settings group as default. | **Yes/No** |
| Camera | **Rear Camera** | **Fixed Guideline** | Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.<br>➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 558 | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Dynamic Guideline** | Selects whether the guidelines adjust to the movement of the steering wheel.<br>➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 558 | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Default** | Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Rear Camera** setting group as default. | **Yes/No** |
| | **LaneWatch*** | **Show with Turn Signal** | Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a right turn. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Display Time after Turn Signal Off** | Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the center. | **0 second**[*1]**/2 seconds** |

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Camera** | **LaneWatch*** | **Reference Line** | | Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor. | **On*1/Off** |
| | | **Default** | | Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **LaneWatch** group as default. | **Yes/No** |
| | **Cross Traffic Monitor*** | | | Turns on and off the cross traffic monitor. | **On*1/Off** |
| **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi** | **Bluetooth** | **Bluetooth On/Off Status** | | Changes the *Bluetooth*® status. | **On*1/Off** |
| | | **Bluetooth Device List** | | Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 428 | — |
| | | **Priority Device Settings** | **Priority On/Off Status** | Enables the system to or disables it from automatically establishing a connection with a *Bluetooth*® device which has been assigned priority. | **On*1/Off** |
| | | | **Audio** | Selects the priority device over another paired audio device(s). | — |
| | | | **Phone** | Selects the priority device over another pairedphone(s). | — |
| | | **Edit Pairing Code** | | Edits a pairing code. ➡ **To change the pairing code setting** P. 429 | **Random/Fixed*1** |

*1:Default Setting



 * Not available on all models

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi** | **Wi-Fi** | **Wi-Fi On/Off Status** | Changes the Wi-Fi mode. | **On/Off**[*1] |
| | | **Wi-Fi Device List** | Connects, disconnects, or deletes the Wi-Fi device. | — |
| | | **Wi-Fi Information** | Shows the Wi-Fi information of the head unit. | — |
| | **Default** | | Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi** group as default. | **Yes/No** |
| **Phone** | **Phone** | **Bluetooth Device List** | Pairs a new phone to HFL, connects or disconnects a paired phone. **Phone Setup** P. 428 | — |
| | | **Edit Speed Dial** | Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. **Speed Dial** P. 434 | — |
| | | **Ring Tone** | Selects the ring tone. | **Fixed/Mobile Phone**[*1] |
| | | **Automatic Phone Sync** | Sets a phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **HondaLink Assist** | Turns HondaLink Assist on and off. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |

*1:Default Setting



*Continued*

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Phone** | **Text/Email** | **Enable Text/Email** | Turns the text/e-mail message function on and off. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Select Account** | Selects a text or e-mail message account. | — |
| | | **New Message Notification** | Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message. | **On/Off**[*1] |
| | **Default** | | Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Phone** settings group as default. | **Yes/No** |
| **Audio** | FM/AM mode **FM/AM** | **HD Radio Mode (FM)**[*] **HD Radio Mode (AM)**[*] | Selects whether the audio system automatically switches to the digital radio waves or receives the analog waves only. | **Auto**[*1]**/Analog only** |
| | | **RDS INFO** | Turns on and off the RDS information. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |

*1:Default Setting



 * Not available on all models

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Audio** | SiriusXM® mode **SXM*** | **TuneStart** | | Turns on and off, starts the song from the beginning as you change preset stations. | **On*1/Off** |
| | | **SportsFlash Setup** | **Interrupt** | Turns on and off the sports alert function. | **Off*1/On(One Time)/ On(Continue)** |
| | | | **Favorite Team** | Selects your favorite sports teams. ➡ **Live Sports Alert** P. 305 | — |
| | | | **Interrupt Beep** | Causes the system to beep when the sports alert is notified. | **On*1/Off** |
| | | **Traffic & Weather Setup** | | Selects the region you want to receive the information. | — |
| | | **Multiple Channel Mix Preset** | | Turns multiple channel mix preset on and off. | **On*1/Off** |

*1:Default Setting



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Audio | *Bluetooth*® mode **Bluetooth** | **Bluetooth Device List** | Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 428 | — |
| | **Other** | iPod or USB mode [Your selected media] **Cover Art** | Turns the cover art display on and off. | **On***1/**Off** |
| | | **Audio Source Pop-Up** | Selects whether the list of selectable audio source comes on when **Audio** is selected on the home screen. | **On/Off***1 |
| | **Default** | | Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Audio** settings group as default. | **Yes/No** |
| System | **Home** | **Home Screen Edit Order** | Changes the home screen icon layout. | — |
| | | **Menu Icon Position***2 | Changes the position of the menu icons on the **Audio**, **Phone**, and **Info** screen. | — |
| | | **Configuration of Instrument Panel** | Changes the **Instrument Panel** screen icon layout. | — |
| | | **Tachometer Setting** | Turns on and off the tachometer display. | **On***1/**Off** |

*1:Default Setting
*2:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **System** | **Display** | **Display Settings** | **Brightness** | Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. | — |
| | | | **Contrast** | Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen. | — |
| | | | **Black Level** | Changes the black level of the audio/information screen. | — |
| | | **Background Color**[*2] | | Changes the background color of the audio/information screen. | **Blue/Amber/Red/Violet/BlueGreen**[*1] |
| | | **Touch Panel Sensitivity** | | Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen. | **High/Low**[*1] |
| | **Sound/Beep** | **Guidance Volume** | | Changes the sound volume.<br>Adjusts the guidance volume of the navigation system. | **1~6**[*1]**~11** |
| | | **Text Message Volume** | | Changes the text/e-mail message reading volume. | **1~6**[*1]**~11** |

*1:Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| System | Sound/ Beep | **Voice Recog. Volume** | Changes the volume of the voice prompt. | **1~6**[*1]**~11** |
| | | **Meter Volume - List Reading** | Changes the list reading volume. | **1~6**[*1]**~11** |
| | | **Meter Volume - Alphabetic Reading** | Changes the alphabetic reading volume. | **1~6**[*1]**~11** |
| | | **Verbal Reminder** | Turns the verbal reminders on and off. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Beep Volume** | Changes the beep volume. | **Off/1/2**[*1]**/3** |
| | Voice Recog. | **One Press Voice Operation** | Changes the setting of the (Talk) button operation when using the voice operation. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Voice Prompt** | Turns the voice prompt on and off. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Voice Recog. Volume** | Changes the volume of the voice prompt. | **1~6**[*1]**~11** |
| | | **Song by Voice** | Turns the Song By Voice™ on and off. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Song by Voice Phonetic Modification** | Modifies a voice command for music stored in the system or an iPod/iPhone. ➡ **Phonetic Modification** P. 312 | — |
| | | **Phonebook Phonetic Modification** | Modifies a voice command for the phonebook. ➡ **Phonetic Modification** P. 312 | — |
| | | **Automatic Phone Sync** | Sets phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL. | **On/Off** |

*1:Default Setting

| Setup Group | | Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **System** | **Clock** | **Clock/Wallpaper Type**[*2]**/Clock Type**[*3] | **Clock** | See **Info** on P. 376 | |
| | | | **Wallpaper** | | |
| | | **Clock Adjustment** | | | |
| | | **Auto Time Zone**[*] | | | |
| | | **Manual Time Zone**[*] | | | |
| | | **Auto Daylight Saving Time** | | | |
| | | **Clock Format** | | | |
| | | **Clock Display** | | | |
| | | **Overlay Clock Location** | | | |
| | | **Clock Reset** | | | |
| | **Others** | **Language** | | Change the display language. | **English (United States)**[*1]**/Français/ Español** |
| | | **Voice Command Tips** | | Alerts you when manual control of the system is disabled to prevent distraction while driving. Only voice commands are available. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |

*1:Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.
*3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **System** | **Others** | **Remember Last Screen**[*2] | Selects whether the device remembers the last screen. | **On/Off**[*1] |
| | | **Memory Refresh** | Turns on the audio system automatically and restores the fragmentation of a memory when the power mode is VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Refresh Time Adjustment** | Sets the time for **Memory Refresh**. | — |
| | | **Change Skin** | Changes the screen interface design. | **Yes/No** |
| | | **Factory Data Reset** | Resets all the settings to their factory default. **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 392 | **Yes/No** |
| | | **Climate Screen Timeout** | Changes the length of time the climate control display stays on when you press the **CLIMATE** button. | **Never/5 Seconds/10 Seconds**[*1]**/20 Seconds** |
| | | **Detail Information** | Displays the details of the head unit and operating system information. | — |
| | **Default** | | Cancels /Resets all customized items in the **System** group as default. | **Yes/No** |

*1:Default Setting
*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Vehicle | **TPMS Calibration** | | Cancels/Calibrates the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS). | **Cancel**[*1]**/Calibrate** |
| | **Driver Assist System Setup** | **Forward Collision Warning Distance** | Changes CMBS™ alert distance. | **Long/Normal**[*1]**/Short** |
| | | **ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep** | Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. | **On/Off**[*1] |
| | | **Blind Spot Info** | Changes the setting for the blind spot information. | **Audible and Visual Alert**[*1]**/Visual Alert/Off** |
| | | **Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep** | Causes the system to beep when LKAS is suspended. | **On/Off**[*1] |
| | | **Road Departure Mitigation Setting** | Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system. | **Narrow/Normal**[*1]**/Wide/ Warning Only** |
| | | **Driver Attention Monitor** | Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor. | **Tactile And Audible Alert**[*1]**/Tactile Alert/OFF** |

*1:Default Setting



*Continued*

| Setup Group | | Customizable Features | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Vehicle** | **Meter Setup** | **Adjust Outside Temp. Display** | Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees. | **-5°F** ~ **±0°F**[*1] ~ **+5°F** (U.S.)<br>**-3°C** ~ **±0°C**[*1] ~ **+3°C** (Canada) |
| | | **"Trip A" Reset Timing** | Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A. | **When Refueled/IGN Off/ Manually Reset**[*1] |
| | | **"Trip B" Reset Timing** | Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B. | **When Refueled/IGN Off/ Manually Reset**[*1] |
| | | **Adjust Alarm Volume** | Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on. | **High/Mid**[*1]**/Low** |
| | | **Fuel Efficiency Backlight** | Turns the ambient meter feature on and off. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Auto Idle Stop Display** | Selects whether the Auto Idle Stop display comes on. | **On/Off**[*1] |
| | | **Turn By Turn Auto Display**[*] | Selects whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **New Message Notifications** | Used to select whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Speed/Distance Units** | Selects the trip computer units. | **mph · miles**[*1]**/km/h · km** (U.S.)<br>**km/h · km**[*1]**/mph · miles** (Canada) |

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Vehicle | **Meter Setup** | **Tachometer** | Selects whether the tachometer come on the driver information interface. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | **Driving Position Setup**[*] | **Memory Position Link** | Turns the driving position memory system on and off. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | **Keyless Access Setup** | **Remote Start System On/Off** | Turns the remote engine start feature on and off. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Door Unlock Mode** | Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle. | **Driver Door Only**[*1]**/All Doors** |
| | | **Keyless Access Light Flash** | Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Keyless Access Beep** | Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | **Lighting Setup** | **Interior Light Dimming Time** | Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors. | **60seconds/30seconds**[*1]**/15seconds** |
| | | **Headlight Auto Off Timer** | Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. | **60seconds/30seconds/15seconds**[*1]**/0seconds** |
| | | **Auto Light Sensitivity**[*] | Changes the timing for the headlights to come on. | **Max/High/Mid**[*1]**/Low/Min** |

*1:Default Setting



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Vehicle | Lighting Setup | **Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity** | Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position. | **Min/Low/Mid**[*1]**/High/Max** |
| | | **Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON** | Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | Door/ Window Setup | **Auto Door Lock** | Used to change the setting for when the doors automatically lock. | **With Vehicle Speed**[*1]**/Shift from P/Off** |
| | | **Auto Door Unlock** | Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically. | **All Doors When Driver's Door Opens**[*1]**/All Doors When Shifted to Park/All Doors When Ignition Switched Off/Off** |
| | | **Key and Remote Unlock Mode** | Sets up the driver's door or all the doors to unlock on the first push of the remote. | **Driver Door**[*1]**/All Doors** |
| | | **Keyless Lock Answer Back** | LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash.<br>LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Security Relock Timer** | Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door. | **90seconds/60seconds/ 30seconds**[*1] |

*1:Default Setting

| Setup Group | Customizable Features | | Description | Selectable Settings |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Vehicle | **Door/ Window Setup** | **Walk Away Auto Lock** | Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle. | **On/Off**[*1] |
| | **Power Tailgate Setup**[*] | **Hands-free Access Mode**[*] | Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper. | **On**[*1]**/Off** |
| | | **Keyless Open Mode** | Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens. | **Anytime**[*1]**/When Unlocked** |
| | | **Power Open By Outer Handle** | Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle. | **Off (Manual only)/ On (Power/ Manual)**[*1] |
| | **Maintenance Info.** | | Used to reset the engine oil life display when the maintenance service has been performed. | — |
| | **Default** | | Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Vehicle settings group as default. | **Yes/No** |
| Smartphone | **Apple CarPlay** | | Sets up the Apple CarPlay™ connection. | — |
| | **Android Auto** | | Sets up the Android Auto™ connection. | — |

*1:Default Setting

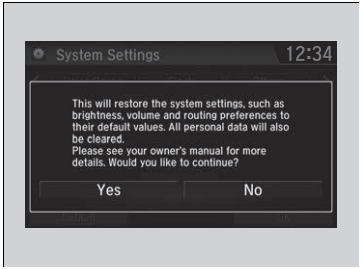


* Not available on all models

Models with Display Audio

# Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.




1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Next**, then select **Yes** to reset the settings.
7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **OK**.
   ▶ After selecting **OK**, the system will reboot.

## Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, you cannot use the HondaLink® because it becomes off line.

**HondaLink®** P. 322

The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver can be programmed to operate up to three remote controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

## Important Safety Precautions

Refer to the safety information that came with your garage door opener to test that the safety features are functioning properly. If you do not have the safety information, contact the manufacturer.

Before programming HomeLink, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the garage or gate to prevent potential injury or damage.

When programming a garage door opener, park just outside the garage door's path.

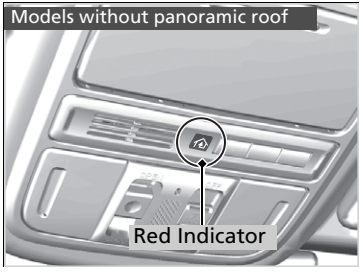
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver*

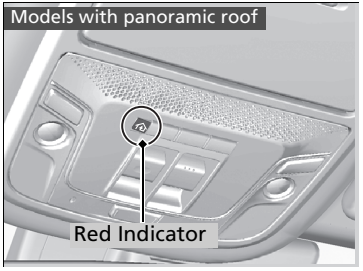
Before programming HomeLink to operate a garage door opener, confirm that the opener has an external entrapment protection system, such as an "electronic eye," or other safety and reverse stop features. If it does not, HomeLink may not be able to operate it.



* Not available on all models

# Training HomeLink



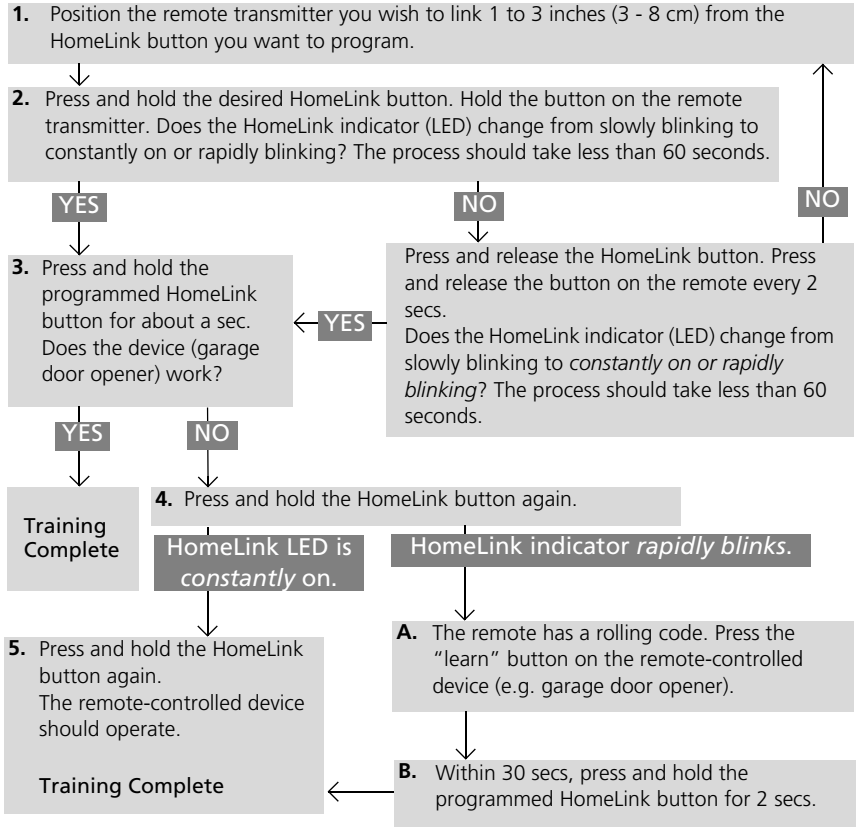




If it is necessary to erase a previously entered learned code:

- Press and hold the two outside buttons for about 20 seconds, until the red indicator blinks. Release the buttons, and proceed to step 1.
- If you are training the second or third button, go directly to step 1.

The instructions on the next page should work for most gate or garage openers, but may not work for all. For detailed instructions about your specific remote opener, visit *http://www.homelink.com* or call (800)355-3515.

## Training a Button




### Training HomeLink

Retraining a Button

If you want to retrain a programmed button for a new device, you do not have to erase all button memory. You can replace the existing memory code using this procedure:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink. Indicator remains on for about 25 secs.
2. Quickly release the HomeLink button and follow steps 1 - 3 under "Training a Button." You do not need to press and release the HomeLink button again in step 2.

Erasing Codes

To erase all the codes, press and hold the two outside buttons until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink (about 10 to 20 secs). You should erase all codes before selling the vehicle.

If you have any problems, see the device's instructions, visit *www.homelink.com*, or call HomeLink at (800) 355-3515.

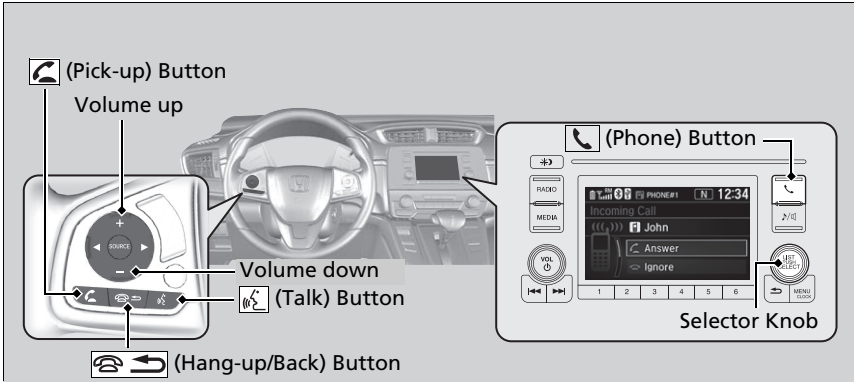
HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Models with color audio system

*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

## Using HFL

### HFL Buttons




**(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the phone screen or to answer an incoming call.

**(Hang-up/back) button:** Press to end a call or to cancel a command.

**(Talk) button:** Press to call a number with a stored voice tag.

**(Phone) button:** Press to go directly to the phone screen.

**Selector knob:** Rotate to select an item on the screen, then press .

*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:
- U.S.: Visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528 -7876.

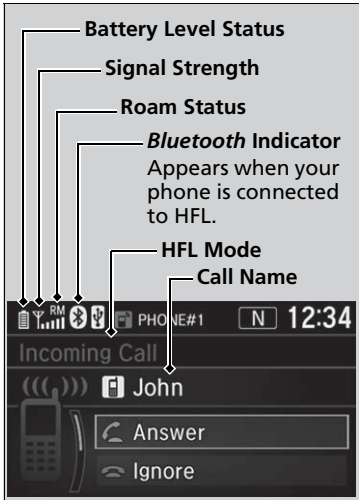
Voice control tips
- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press and release the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

Up to 20 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.
**Speed Dial** P. 411

Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

## HFL Status Display




The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

## Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

**Speed Dial** P. 411

*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®

*Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFL Limitations

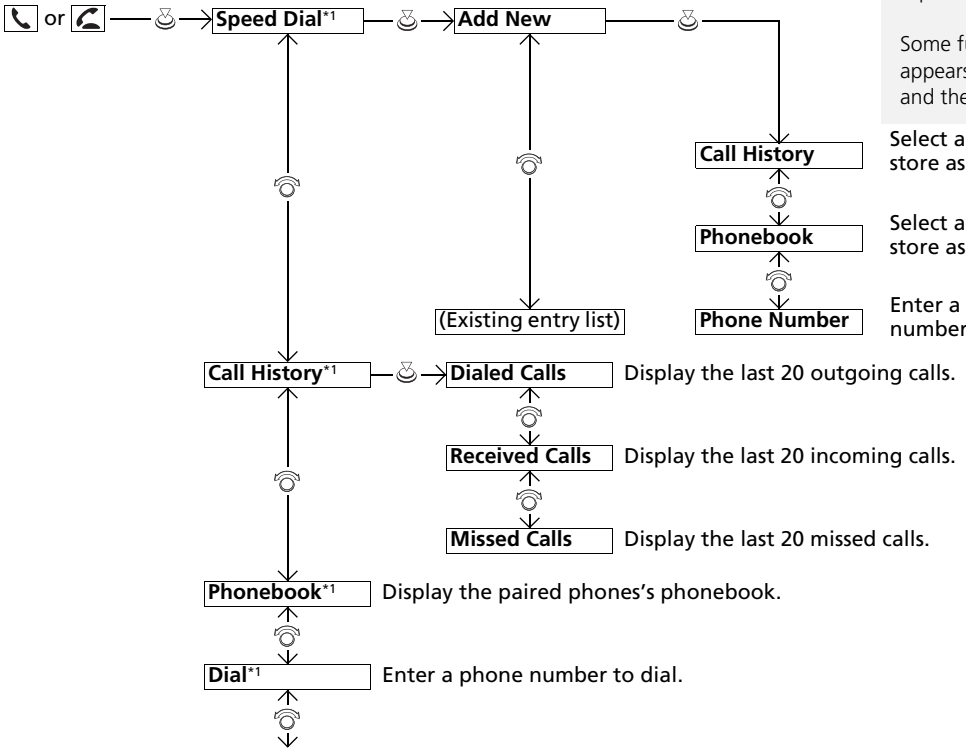
An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

# HFL Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY I or ON II to use HFL.




Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.

Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.

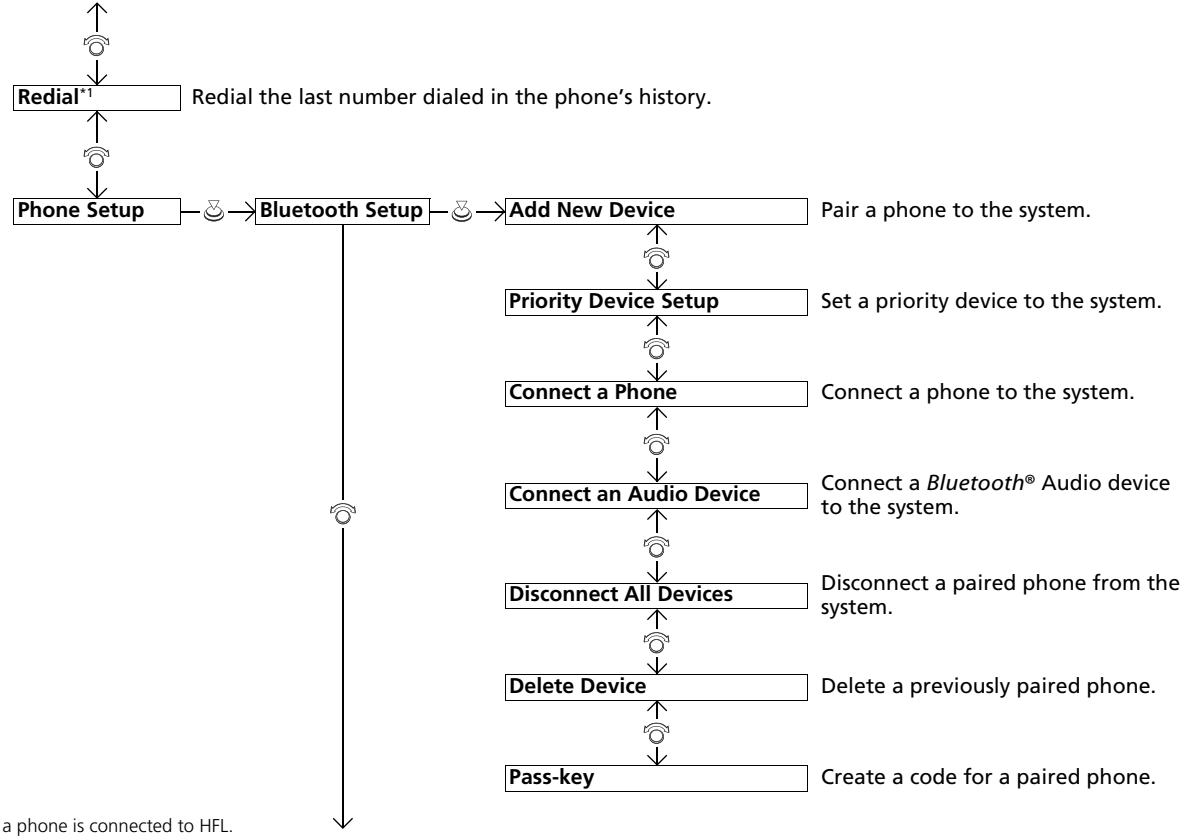
Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

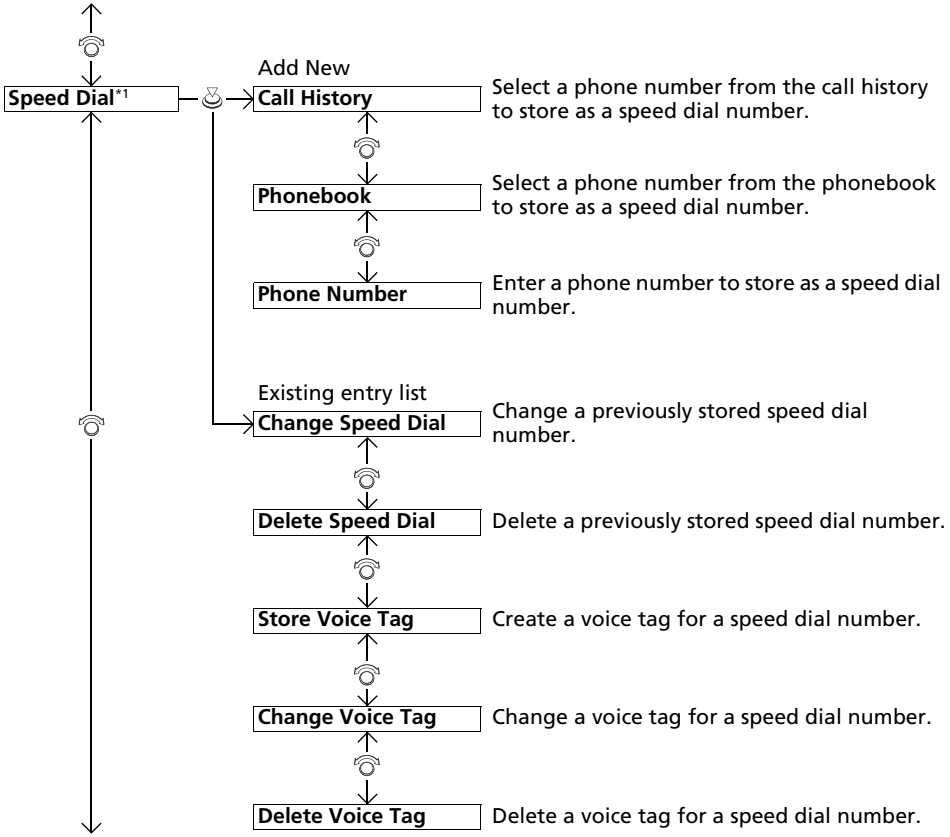
**HFL Menus**

To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

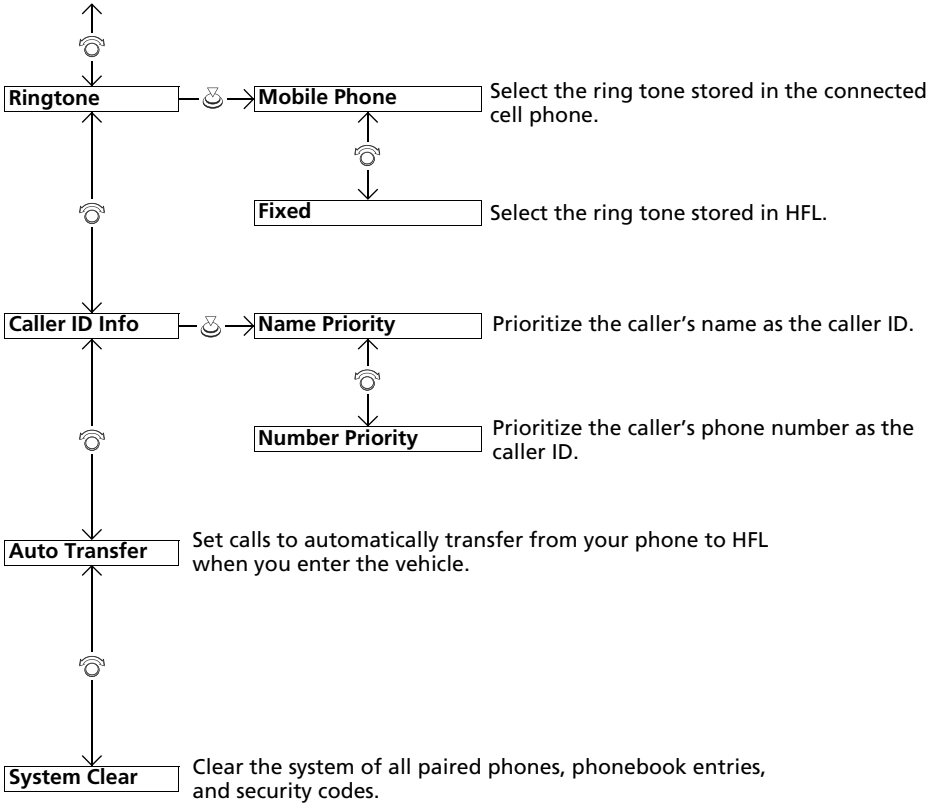
Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is canceled.



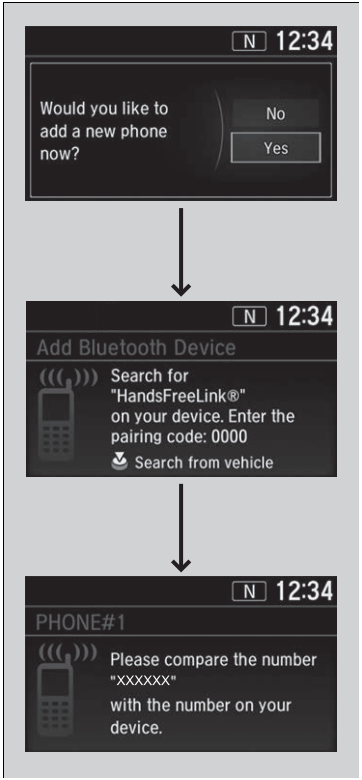

*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.




*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.


Ringtone
Mobile Phone
Select the ring tone stored in the connected cell phone.
Fixed
Select the ring tone stored in HFL.
Caller ID Info
Name Priority
Prioritize the caller's name as the caller ID.
Number Priority
Prioritize the caller's phone number as the caller ID.
Auto Transfer
Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.
System Clear
Clear the system of all paired phones, phonebook entries, and security codes.

## ■ Phone Setup




### ■ To pair a cell phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
3. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
   ▶ The audio system will enter a waiting mode for pairing.
4. Select **HandsFreeLink** from your phone.
   ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, press and follow the prompts.
   When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

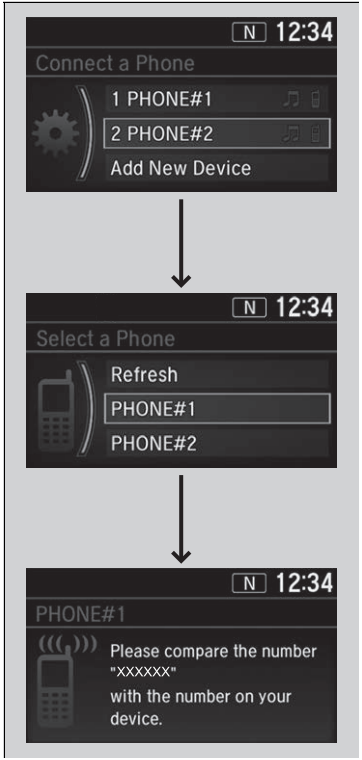
Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFL before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFL.
- If your phone is not ready to be paired or is not paired within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.
These icons indicate the following:
: The phone can be used with HFL.
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

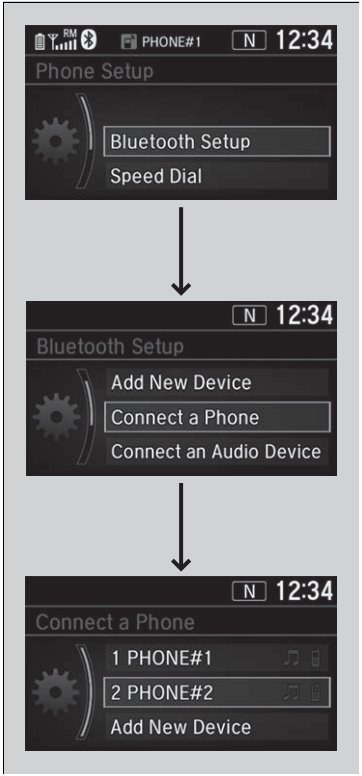
When pairing a phone from this audio system:
If your phone doesn't appear on the audio/information screen, select **Refresh** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone.
From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.




■ **To pair a cell phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)**

**1.** Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
**2.** Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
**3.** Rotate to select **Add New Device**, then press .
**4.** Press to select **OK**.
▶ The screen changes to device list.
**5.** Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
▶ HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
**6.** When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
▶ If your phone does not appear, select **Refresh** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink®**.
**7.** The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
This may vary by a phone.

*Continued*




■ **To change the currently paired phone**

**1.** Press the button or the button.

**2.** Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .

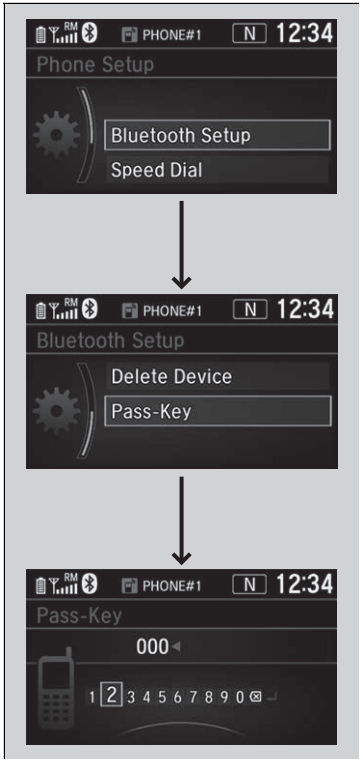
**3.** Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .

**4.** Rotate to select **Connect a Phone**, then press .

▶ The screen changes to a device list.

**5.** Rotate to select a desired device name, then press .

▶ HFL disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.




■ **To change the pairing code setting**

**1.** Press the button or the button.

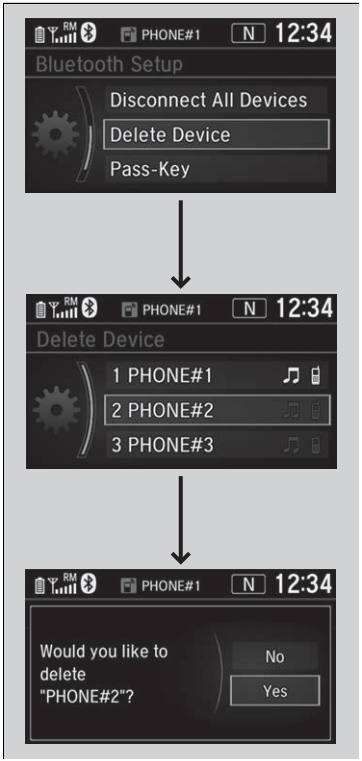
**2.** Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .

**3.** Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .

**4.** Rotate to select **Pass-Key**, then press .

**5.** Input a new pairing code, then press .

*Continued*




■ **To delete a paired phone**

**1.** Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.

**2.** Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .

**3.** Rotate to select **Bluetooth Setup**, then press .

**4.** Rotate to select **Delete Device**, then press .
▶ The screen changes to a device list.

**5.** Rotate to select a phone you want to delete, then press .

**6.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

Features

## ■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.

1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Ringtone**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Mobile Phone** or **Fixed**, then press ⊙.

Ring Tone

**Mobile Phone:** Depending on the make and model of the cell phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.
**Fixed:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

## ■ Caller ID Information

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.

1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Phone Setup**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Caller ID Info**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select a mode you want, then press ⊙.

Caller ID Information

**Name Priority:** A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.
**Number Priority:** A caller's phone number is displayed.

*Continued*

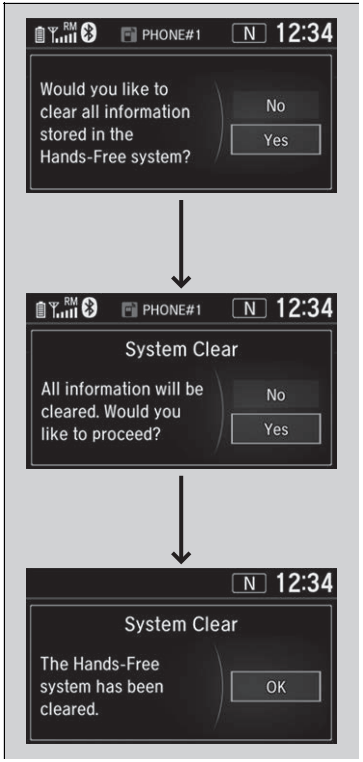
## ■ Automatic Transferring

If pairing between your phone and the system is executed while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFL.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Auto Transfer**.
4. Press to select **On** or **Off**.

## To Clear the System

Pairing codes, paired phones, all stored voice tags, all speed dial entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data are erased.




1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **System Clear**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
6. A notification appears on the screen. Press .

*Continued*

## ■ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFL.

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

| | |
|---|---|
| Pref | Fax |
| Home | Car |
| Mobile | Other |
| Work | Voice |
| Pager | |

If a name has four or more numbers, ... appears instead of category icons.

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFL.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

## Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Add New**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a place to choose a number from, then press .
   From **Call History**:
   ▶ Select a number from the call history.
   From **Phonebook**:
   ▶ Select a number from the connected cell phone's imported phonebook.
   From **Phone Number**:
   ▶ Input the number manually.

5. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Rotate to select **Yes** or **No**, then press .
6. Using the [ ] button, follow the prompts to say the name for the speed dial entry.

### Speed Dial

When any preset button is pressed, the **Speed Dial** screen is displayed.

When a voice tag is stored, you can press the [ ] button and call the number using voice commands.

*Continued*

■ **To edit a speed dial**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Change Speed Dial**, then press .
6. Select a new speed dial number, then press .

■ **To delete a speed dial number**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Delete Speed Dial**, then press .
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

### ■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Store Voice Tag**, then press .
6. Using the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

### ■ To change a voice tag

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Change Voice Tag**, then press .
6. Using the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

**Speed Dial**

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "*home*" as a voice tag.
It is easier for HFL to recognize a longer name. For example, use "*John Smith*" instead of "*John*."

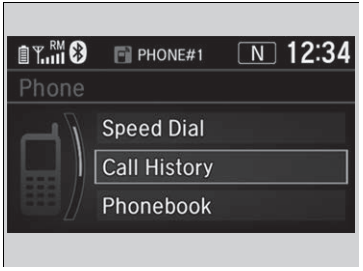
*Continued*

■ **To delete a voice tag**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Delete Voice Tag**, then press .
   ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

## ■ Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

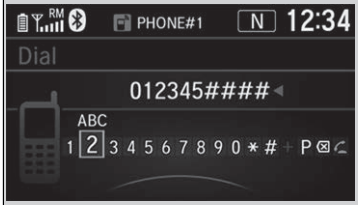



Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.
Press the button and follow the prompts.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

Features




## ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to HFL.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Rotate to select the initial, then press .
4. Rotate to select a name, then press .
5. Rotate to select a number, then press .

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

## ■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
4. Rotate to select , then press .

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the imported phonebook

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

➔ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 397
➔ **Speed Dial** P. 411

To make a call using a phone number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

➔ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 397
➔ **Speed Dial** P. 411



*Continued*

### ■ To make a call using redial

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Redial**, then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using redial

Press and hold the button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's call history.

### ■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, and **Missed Calls**.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Dialed Calls**, **Received Calls**, or **Missed Calls**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to HFL, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.

## ■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

**1.** Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
**2.** Rotate ⟲ to select **Speed Dial**, then press ⊙.
**3.** Rotate ⟲ to select a number, then press ⊙.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### To make a call using a speed dial entry

When any preset button is pressed, the **Speed Dial** screen is displayed.

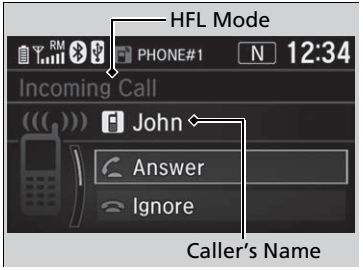
Select **Others** to view another paired phone's speed dial list.

When a voice tag is stored, press the [ ] button and call the number using voice commands.
➡ **Speed Dial** P. 411

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen. Press the [ ] button and follow the prompts.

*Continued*

## ■ Receiving a Call




When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming Call** screen appears.

Press the button to answer the call.
Press the button to decline or end the call.

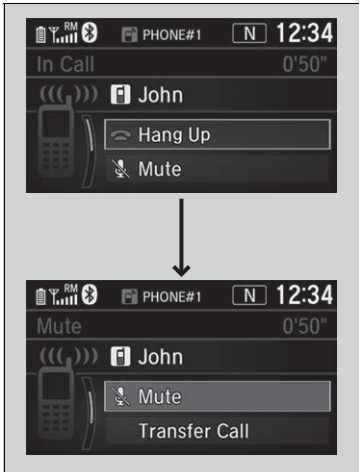
Receiving a Call

Call Waiting
Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Press the button again to return to the current call.
Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and buttons.
Rotate to select the icon, then press .

## ■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.
**Swap Call:** Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
**Mute:** Mute your voice.
**Transfer Call:** Transfer a call from HFL to your phone.
**Dial Tones:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.




1. To view the available options, press the button.
2. Rotate to select the option, then press .
   ▶ The check box is checked when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

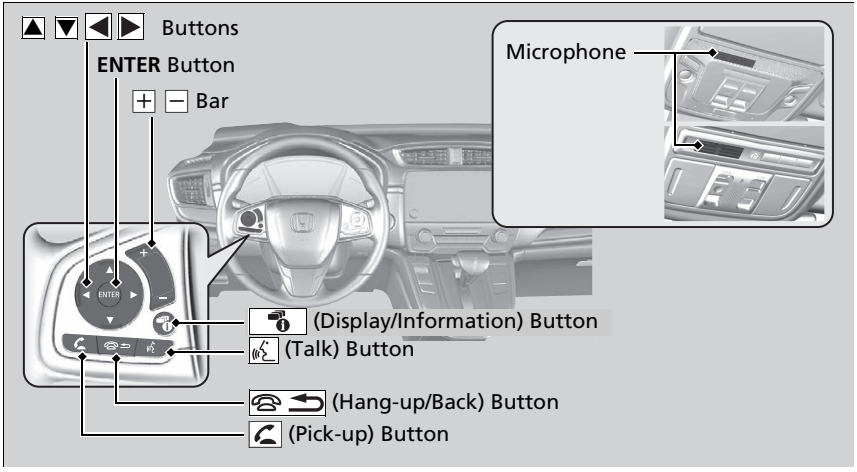
**Dial Tones**: Available on some phones.

Models with Display Audio

*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

## Using HFL

### HFL Buttons




*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:
- U.S.: Visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528 -7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay™ or Android Auto™, HFL is unavailable.
**How to customize** P. 366

Voice control tips
- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

Up to three speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered.
**Speed Dial** P. 434

Up to three previous calls can be displayed at a time among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

**(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the phone menu on the driver information interface, or to answer an incoming call.

**(Hang-up/back) button:** Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.

**(Talk) button:** Press to access Voice Portal.

**buttons:** Press to select an item displayed on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

**ENTER button:** Press to call a number listed in the selected item on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

**(display/information) button:** Select and press **ENTER** to display **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Phonebook** on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

To go to the **Phone Menu** screen:

**1.** Select PHONE to switch the display to the phone screen.
**2.** Select **MENU**.

*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®

*Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

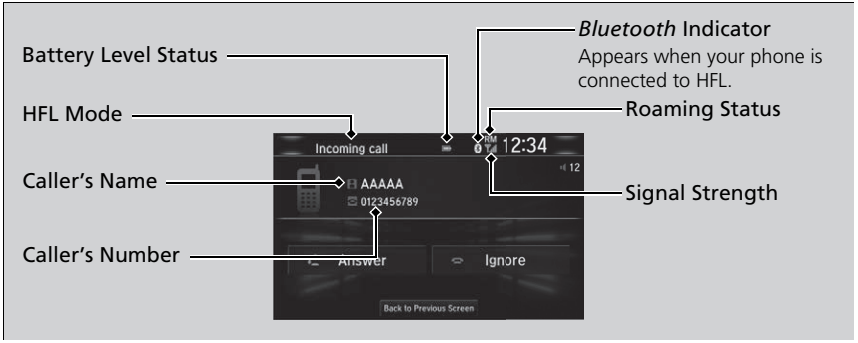
HFL Limitations
An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.



*Continued*

## ■ HFL Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.




## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

**Speed Dial** P. 434

HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

# HFL Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system.

HFL Menus

To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.

## ■ Phone Settings screen

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Phone**.

- **Phone**
  - **Bluetooth Device List**
    - (Existing entry list)
      - **Connect** (♫ 📱)
      - **Connect** (📱)
      - **Connect** (♫)

        Connect a paired device to the system.
      - **Disconnect**

        Disconnect a paired phone from the system.
      - **Delete**

        Delete a paired phone.
    - **Add Bluetooth Device**

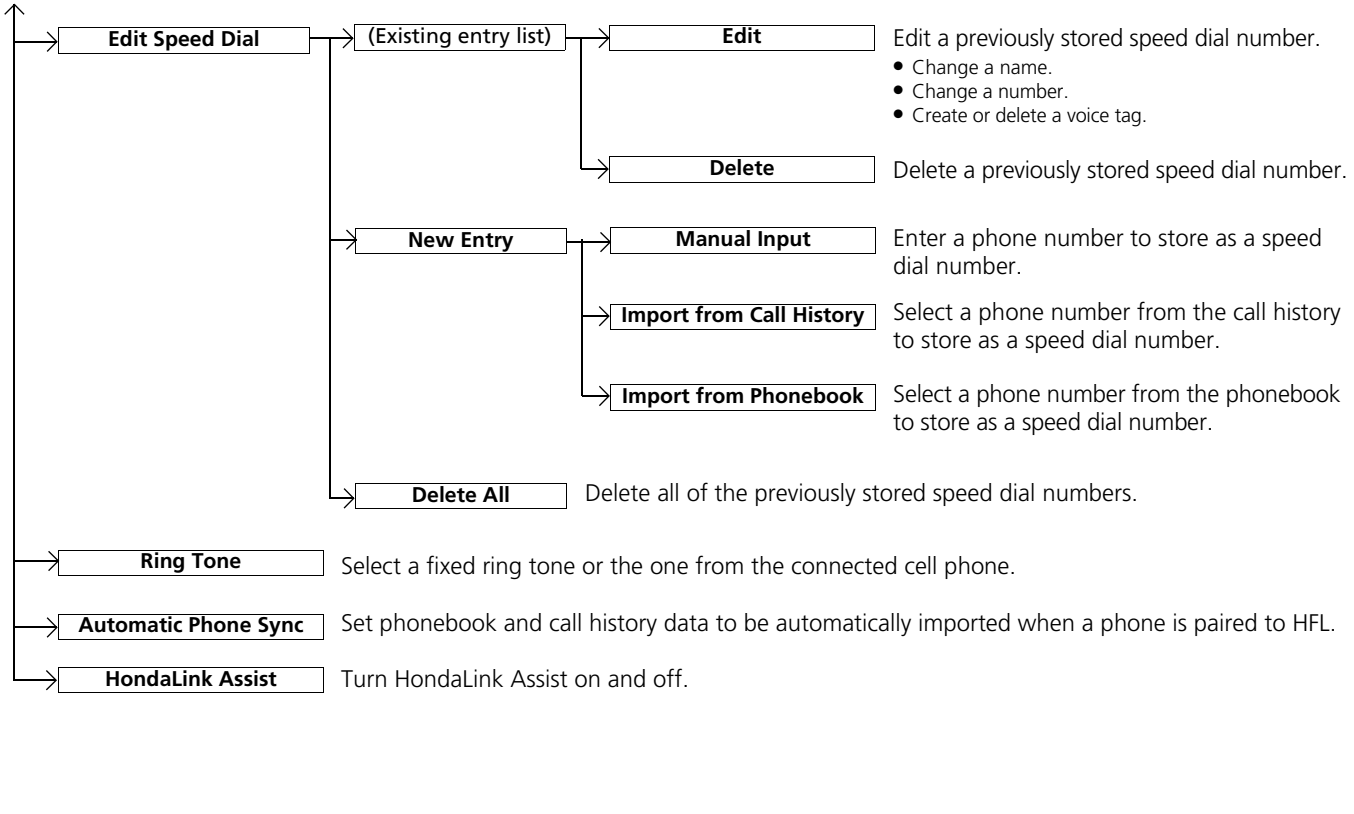
      Pair a new phone to the system.
    - **Priority Device Settings**
      - **Priority On/Off Status**

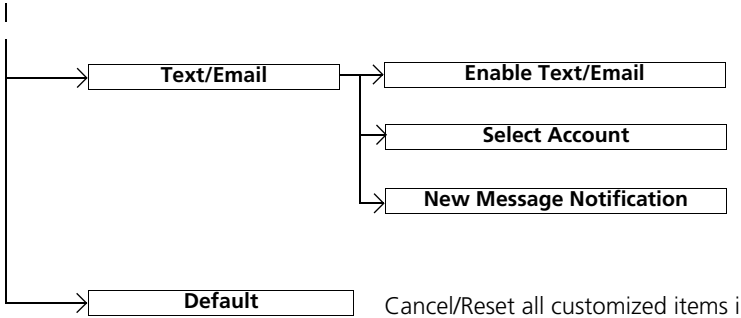
        Enable the system to or disables it from automatically establishing a connection with a *Bluetooth*® device which has been assigned priority.
      - **Audio**

        Select the priority device over another paired audio device(s).
      - **Phone**

        Select the priority device over another paired phone(s).

*Continued*

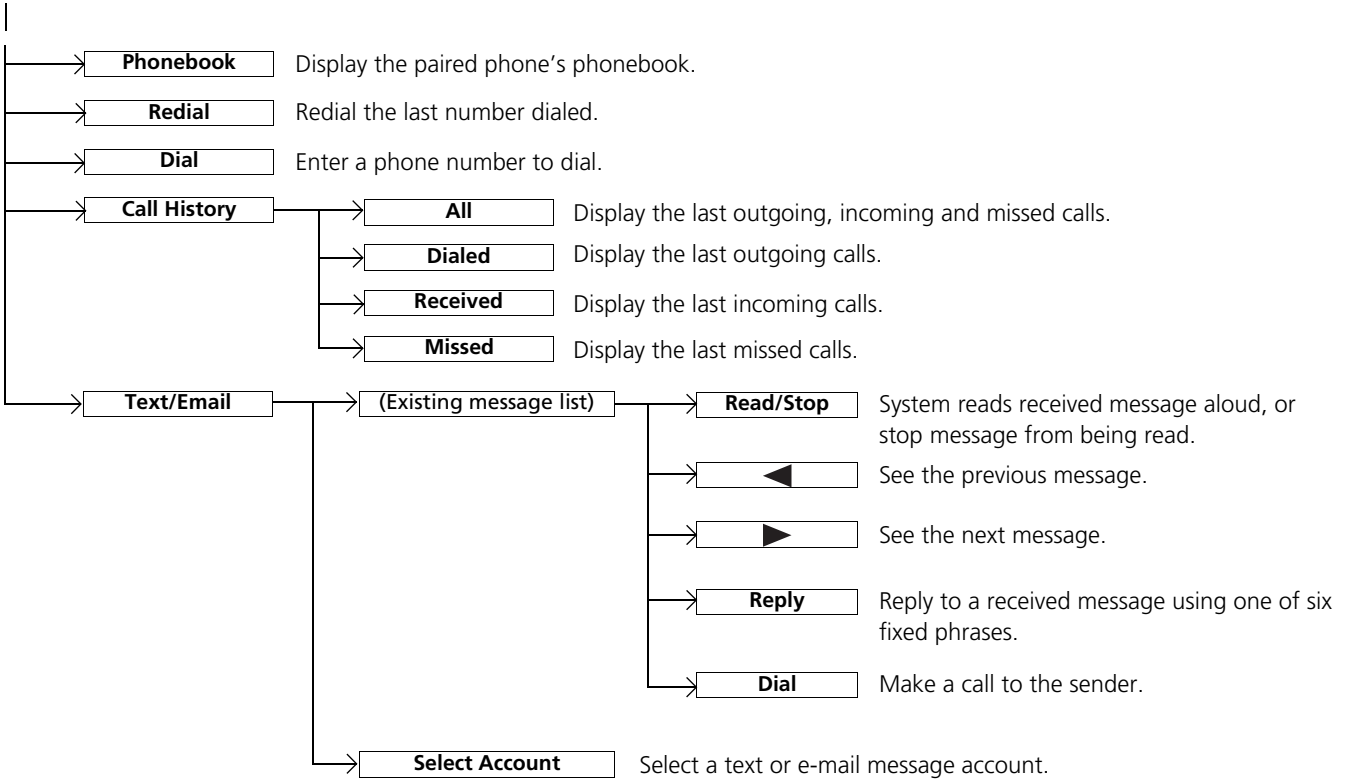

Edit Speed Dial
(Existing entry list)
Edit
Edit a previously stored speed dial number.
• Change a name.
• Change a number.
• Create or delete a voice tag.
Delete
Delete a previously stored speed dial number.
New Entry
Manual Input
Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.
Import from Call History
Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
Import from Phonebook
Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
Delete All
Delete all of the previously stored speed dial numbers.
Ring Tone
Select a fixed ring tone or the one from the connected cell phone.
Automatic Phone Sync
Set phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.
HondaLink Assist
Turn HondaLink Assist on and off.


Text/Email
Enable Text/Email
Turn the text/e-mail message function on and off.
Select Account
Select a text or e-mail message account.
New Message Notification
Select whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text/e-mail message.
Default
Cancel/Reset all customized items in the **Phone Settings** group as default.

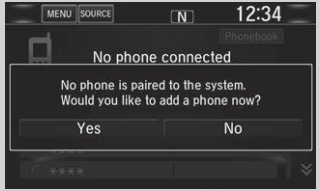
## ■ Phone Menu screen

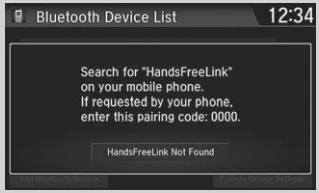
**1.** Select PHONE.
**2.** Select **MENU**.

- **Speed Dial**
  - **(Existing entry list)** — Dial the selected number in the speed dial list.
  - **New Entry**
    - **Manual Input** — Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Call History** — Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Phonebook** — Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.
- **Edit Speed Dial**
  - **(Existing entry list)** — Dial the selected number in the speed dial list.
  - **New Entry**
    - **Manual Input** — Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Call History** — Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.
    - **Import from Phonebook** — Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.


Phonebook
Display the paired phone's phonebook.
Redial
Redial the last number dialed.
Dial
Enter a phone number to dial.
Call History
All
Display the last outgoing, incoming and missed calls.
Dialed
Display the last outgoing calls.
Received
Display the last incoming calls.
Missed
Display the last missed calls.
Text/Email
(Existing message list)
Read/Stop
System reads received message aloud, or stop message from being read.
◀
See the previous message.
▶
See the next message.
Reply
Reply to a received message using one of six fixed phrases.
Dial
Make a call to the sender.
Select Account
Select a text or e-mail message account.

## ■ Phone Setup




### ■ To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select PHONE.
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
4. Select **HandsFreeLink** from your phone.
   ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **HandsFreeLink Not Found**, **Continue**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list. If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.
   ▶ You can prioritize a *Bluetooth*® device at the same time. Select **Yes** and then a device you want to prioritize.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready to be paired or is not paired within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.
These icons indicate the following:
: The phone can be used with HFL.
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay™, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable.

Features

## ■ To change the currently paired phone

**1.** Go to the phone settings screen.
➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 423

**2.** Select **Bluetooth Device List**.

**3.** Select a phone to connect.
▶ HFL disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.

**4.** Select **Connect** , **Connect** , or **Connect** .

### To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFL will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

To change the *Bluetooth*® connection priority device setting, select **Priority Device Settings** from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

## ■ To change the pairing code setting

**1.** Select HOME.

**2.** Select **Settings**.

**3.** Select **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi**.

**4.** Select the **Bluetooth** tab.

**5.** Select **Edit Pairing Code**.

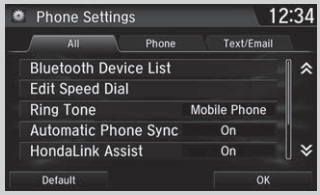
**6.** Select **Random** or **Fixed**.

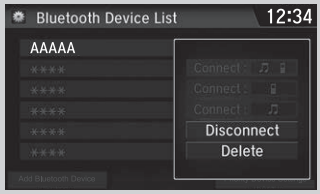
### To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.
To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.

*Continued*




■ **To delete a paired phone**

**1.** Go to the phone settings screen.
➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 423

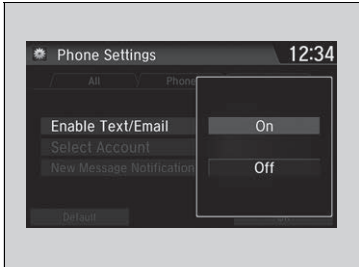
**2.** Select **Bluetooth Device List**.

**3.** Select a phone you want to delete.

**4.** Select **Delete**.

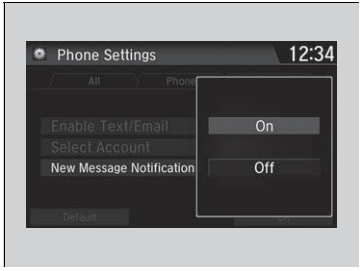
**5.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## To Set Up Text/E-mail Message Options




### To turn on or off the text/e-mail message function

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   **Phone Settings screen** P. 423
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Enable Text/Email**.
3. Select **Next**.
   ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **On** or **Off**.




### To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   **Phone Settings screen** P. 423
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **New Message Notification**.
3. Select **Next**.
   ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **On** or **Off**.

**To Set Up Text/E-mail Message Options**

To use the text/e-mail message function, it may be necessary to set up on your phone.

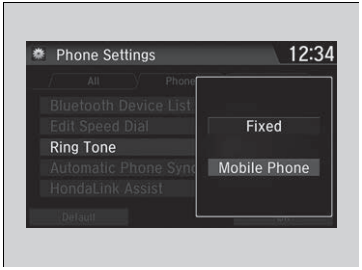
**To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice**

**On:** A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new message.
**Off:** The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.

*Continued*

## ■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.




1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   **Phone Settings screen** P. 423
2. Select **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Next**, then select **Fixed** or **Mobile Phone**.

Ring Tone

**Fixed**: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.
**Mobile Phone**: Depending on the make and model of the cell phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

## ■ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

### ■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

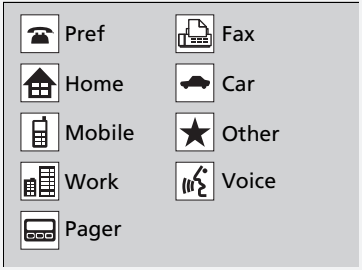
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

### ■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 423
2. Select **Automatic Phone Sync**.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

### Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a name from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



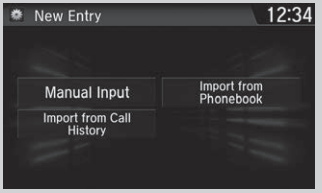

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

*Continued*

## ■ Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

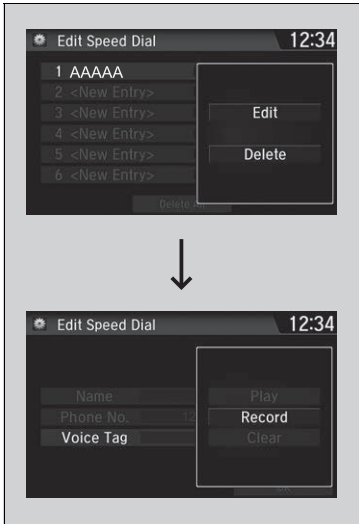


To store a speed dial number:

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 426
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select **New Entry**.
   From **Import from Call History**:
   ▶ Select a number from the call history.
   From **Manual Input**:
   ▶ Input the number manually.
   From **Import from Phonebook**:
   ▶ Select a number from the connected cell phone's imported phonebook.
4. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.
5. Select **Record**, or use the button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

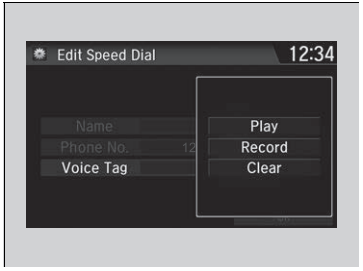
**Speed Dial**

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag. Say the voice tag name.




## ■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 423
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
5. Select **Record**, or use the button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.



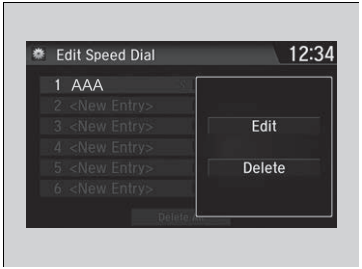

## ■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 423
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
   ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

### Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "*home*" as a voice tag.
It is easier for the system to recognize a longer name.
For example, use "*John Smith*" instead of "*John*."

*Continued*




■ **To edit a speed dial**

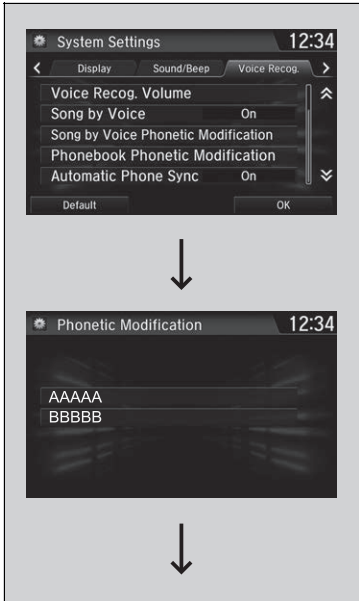
**1.** Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 423
**2.** Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
**3.** Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
**4.** Select a setting you want.

■ **To delete a speed dial**

**1.** Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 423
**2.** Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
**3.** Select an existing speed dial entry.
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
**4.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## ■ Phonebook Phonetic Modification

Add phonetic modifications or a new voice tag to the phone's contact name so that it is easier for HFL to recognize voice commands.




### ■ To add a new voice tag

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to add phonetic modification to.

Phonebook Phonetic Modification

You can store up to 20 phonetic modification items.

*Continued*

**7.** Select **New Voice Tag**.

**8.** Select a contact name you want to add to.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

**9.** Select **Modify**.
**10.** Using **Record** or the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
**11.** You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.

## ■ To modify a voice tag

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to modify phonetic modification.
7. Select a contact name you want to modify.
   ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
8. Select **Modify**.
9. Using **Record** or the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
10. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.

### Phonebook Phonetic Modification

You can only modify or delete contact names for the currently connected phone.

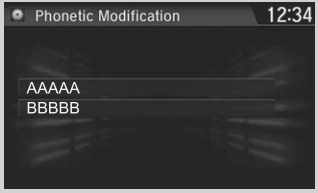
*Continued*

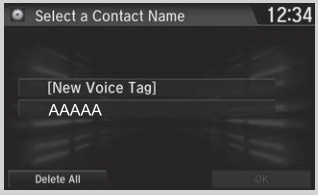
■ **To delete a modified voice tag**

**1.** Select HOME.
**2.** Select **Settings**.
**3.** Select **System**.
**4.** Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
**5.** Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.

**6.** Select the phone for which you want to delete phonetic modification.
**7.** Select a contact name you want to delete.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

**8.** Select **Delete**.
▶ The selected contact name has been selected.
**9.** Select **OK**.




### ■ To delete all modified voice tags

1. Select HOME.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Voice Recog.** tab.
5. Select **Phonebook Phonetic Modification**.
6. Select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification.
   ▶ The contact name list appears.
7. Select **Delete All**.
8. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **Yes**.

## ■ Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

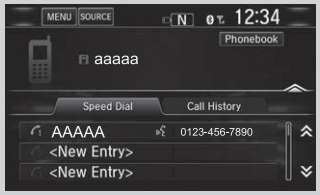
Making a Call

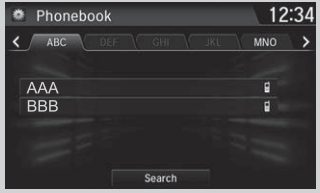
Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from most screens.
Press the button and say the voice tag name.

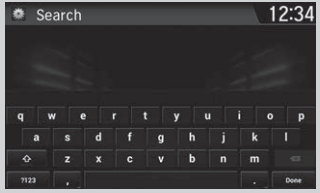
Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay™, phone calls can be made only from Apple CarPlay™.

*Continued*




## ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

**1.** Select PHONE.

**2.** Select **Phonebook**.

**3.** Select a name.
- ▶ You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.
- ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering name, if multiple numbers exist select a number.

**4.** Select a number.
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### To make a call using the imported phonebook

You can also select **Phonebook** on the **Phone Menu** screen.

You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

➡ **Speed Dial** P. 434

Features

## ■ To make a call using a phone number

**1.** Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 426

**2.** Select **Dial**.

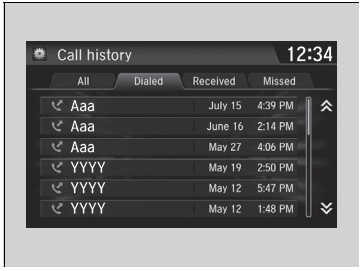
**3.** Select a number.
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.

**4.** Select .
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

## ■ To make a call using redial

**1.** Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 426

**2.** Select **Redial**.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.




## ■ To make a call using the Call History

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.

**1.** Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 426

**2.** Select **Call History**.

**3.** Select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**.

**4.** Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### To make a call using a phone number

You can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.
➡ **Speed Dial** P. 434

### To make a call using the Call History

The call history displays the last 20 all, dialed, received, or missed calls.
(Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)

*Continued*

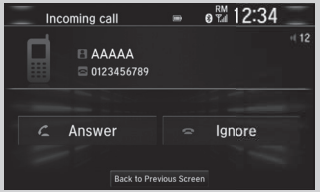
### ■ To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

**1.** Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 426

**2.** Select **Speed Dial**.

**3.** Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

## ■ Receiving a Call




When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the button to answer the call.
Press the button to decline or end the call.

**To make a call using a Speed Dial entry**

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.
➡ **Speed Dial** P. 434

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.
Press the button and follow the prompts.

**Receiving a Call**

Call Waiting
Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Press the button again to return to the current call.
Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and buttons.

## ■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.
**Mute**: Mute your voice.
**Transfer**: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.
**Touch Tones**: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

**Touch Tones**: Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

*Continued*

## ■ Receiving a Text/E-mail Message

HFL can display newly received text or e-mail messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a linked cell phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.

**1.** A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text or e-mail message.

**2.** Select **Read** to listen to the message.
▶ The text or e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.

**3.** To discontinue the message read-out, select **Stop**.

Receiving a Text/E-mail Message

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

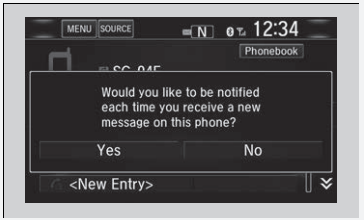
The system can only receive messages that are sent as text (SMS) messages. Messages sent using the data services will not be displayed in the list.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text and e-mail messages.

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text/e-mail message feature. Only use the text/e-mail message feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

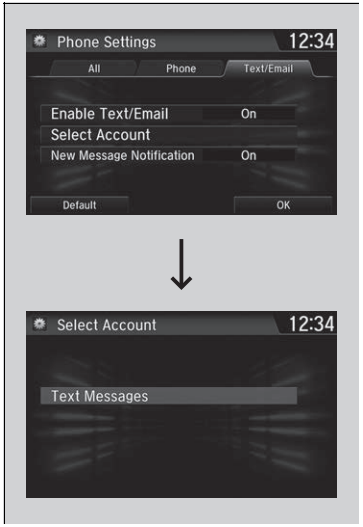
When you receive a text or e-mail message for the first time since the phone is paired to HFL, you are asked to turn the **New Message Notification** setting to **On**.

**To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice** P. 431



## Selecting a Text/E-mail Message Account

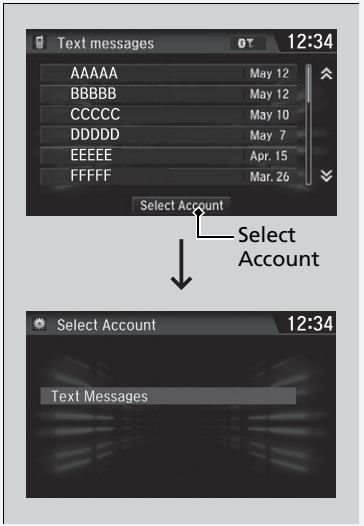
If a paired phone has text or e-mail message accounts, you can select one of them to be active and receive notifications.




1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   ➡ **Phone Settings screen** P. 423
2. Select the **Text/Email** tab, then **Select Account**.
   ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Text Messages** or an e-mail message account you want.

### Selecting a Text/E-mail Message Account

You can also select an e-mail message account from the folder list screen or the message list screen.

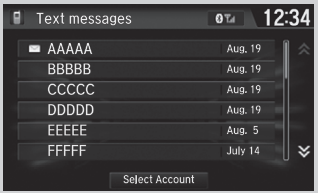



You can only receive notifications from one text or e-mail message account at a time.

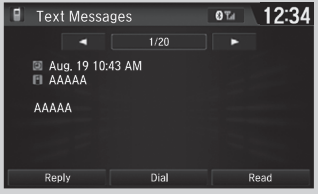
*Continued*

## ■ Displaying Messages

Message List




Text Message




### ■ Displaying text messages

**1.** Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 426

**2.** Select **Text/Email**.
▶ Select account if necessary.

**3.** Select a message.
▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

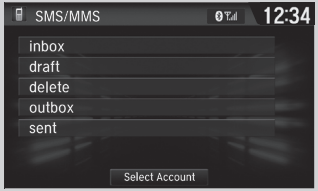
### Displaying Messages

The ✉ icon appears next to an unread message.

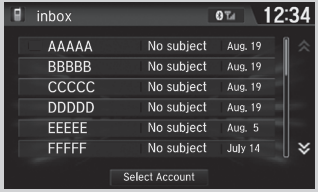
If you delete a message on the phone, the message is also deleted in the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's outbox.

To see the previous or next message, select ◀ (previous) or ▶ (next) on the message screen.

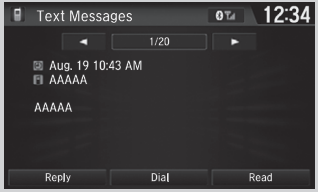
Folder List




Message List




E-mail Message




## ■ Displaying e-mail messages

**1.** Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
➡ **Phone Menu screen** P. 426

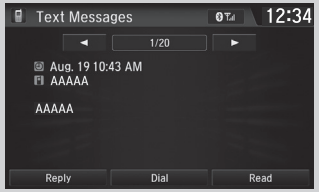
**2.** Select **Text/Email**.
▶ Select **Select Account** if necessary.

**3.** Select a folder.

**4.** Select a message.
▶ The e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.



*Continued*




## ■ Read or Stop reading a message

**1.** Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
➡ **Displaying Messages** P. 448
**2.** Select **Stop** to stop reading.
Select **Read** again to start reading the message from the beginning.

## ■ Reply to a message

**1.** Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
➡ **Displaying Messages** P. 448
**2.** Select **Reply**.
**3.** Select the reply message.
▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
**4.** Select **Send** to send the message.
▶ **Complete** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:
- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I'm on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.

Only certain phones receive and send messages when paired and connected. For a list of compatible phones:
- U.S.: Visit *automobiles.honda.com/handsfreelink/*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: For more information on smartphone compatibility, call 1-855-490-7351.

■ **Making a call to a sender**

**1.** Go to the text message screen.

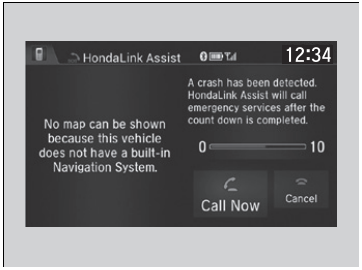
**2.** Select **Dial**.



*Continued*

## ■ In Case of Emergency*

### ■ Automatic collision notification




If your vehicle's airbags deploy or if the unit detects that the vehicle is severely impacted, your vehicle automatically will attempt to connect to the HondaLink operator. If connected, information about your vehicle, its location, and its condition can be sent to the operator*1; you also can speak to the operator when connected.

**IMPORTANT:** For vehicles equipped with HondaLink Assist, owner activation constitutes authorization for Honda to collect information from your vehicle needed to provide the service, and agreement to the Terms of Use at *www.hondalink.com/TermsAndConditions*. In a crash, HondaLink Assist will attempt to notify emergency services but NEITHER Honda-PRO NOR ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS GUARANTEE THAT SUCH NOTIFICATION WILL OCCUR.

Honda reserves the right to terminate HondaLink Assist services at any time or for any reason, and in the future may not be able to provide services due to changes in, or obsolescence of, technology integral to the service or changes in governmental regulation.

*1: Depending on your phone and adequate cellular coverage, your vehicle's location may not be sent to the operator.

In Case of Emergency*

Your vehicle may not be able to connect to the operator if the battery level is low, the line is disconnected, or you do not have adequate cellular coverage.

You cannot use this emergency service when:
- You travel outside the HondaLink service coverage areas.
- There is a problem with the connecting devices, such as the microphones, speakers, or the unit itself.

You cannot operate other phone-related functions using the screen while talking to the operator. Select **Hang Up** to terminate the connection to your vehicle.

Automatic collision notification

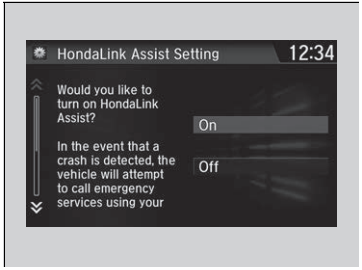
If the unit fails to connect to the operator, it repeatedly tries until it succeeds.





* Not available on all models

## ■ To enable notification




1. Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
   **Phone Settings screen** P. 423
2. Select the **Phone** tab, then **HondaLink Assist**.
   ▶ A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

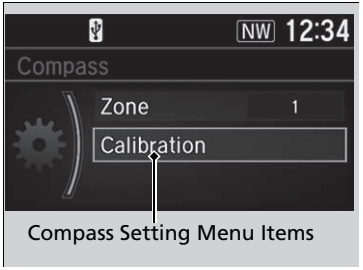
To enable notification

Setting options:
- **On:** Notification is available.
- **Off:** Disable the feature.

When you turn the ignition switch to ON II, the compass self-calibrates, and the compass display appears.

## Compass Calibration

If the compass indicates the wrong direction, or the **CAL** indicator blinks, you need to manually calibrate the system.



Compass Setting Menu Items

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II.
2. Press and hold the ☀/☽ (day/night) button until the display shows the compass setting menu.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Calibration**, then press ⊙.

4. When the display changes to **Push CAL Start**, press ⊙.
5. Drive the vehicle slowly in two circles.
   ▶ The compass starts to show a direction after the calibration. The **CAL** indicator goes off.

### Compass*

Compass operation can be affected under the following conditions:
- Driving near power lines or stations
- Crossing a bridge
- Passing a large vehicle, or driving near a large object that can cause a magnetic disturbance
- When accessories such as antennas and roof racks are mounted by magnets

### Compass Calibration

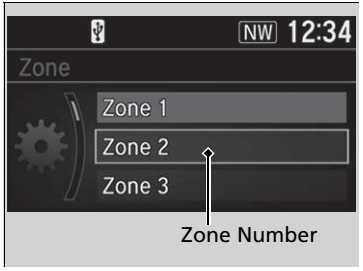
Calibrate the compass in an open area.

While setting the compass:
- The ⮌ (Back) button returns to the previous screen.

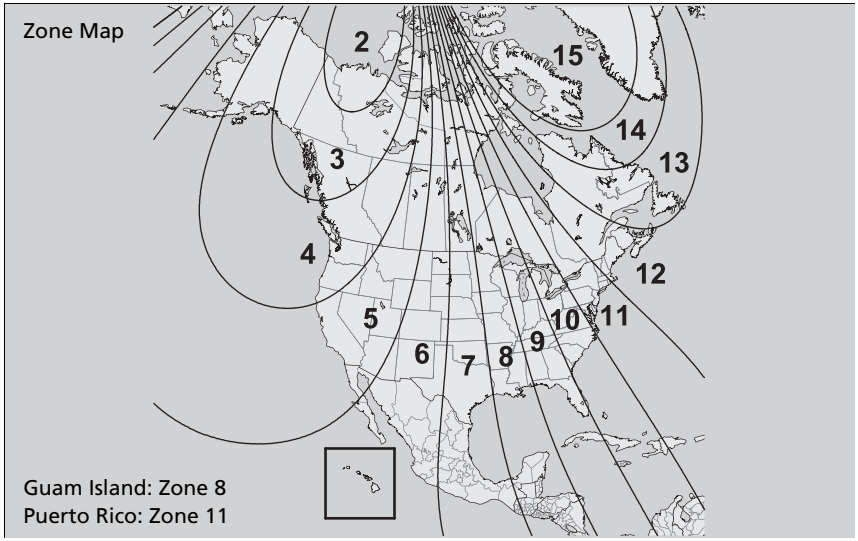


 * Not available on all models

# Compass Zone Selection



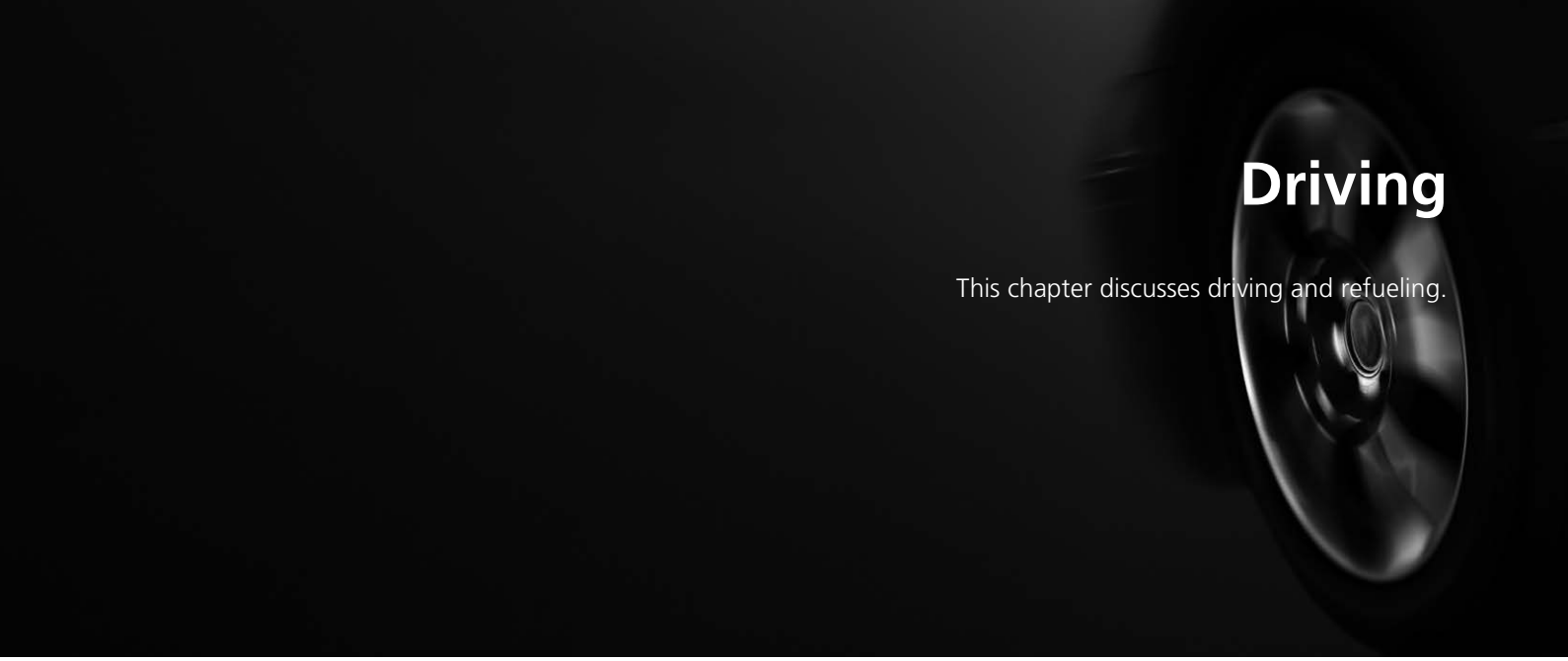

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II.
2. Press and hold the ☀/☽ (day/night) button until the display shows the compass setting menu.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Zone**, then press ⊙. The display shows the current zone number.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select the zone number of your area (See Zone Map), then press ⊙.




**Compass Zone Selection**

The zone selection is done to compensate the variation between magnetic north and true north.

If the calibration starts while the audio system is in use, the display returns to normal after the calibration is completed.



# Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.


**Before Driving** ..... 458
**Towing a Trailer**
Towing Preparation ..... 463
Driving Safely with a Trailer ..... 466
Towing Behind a Motorhome ..... 468
**Off-Highway Driving Guidelines**
General Information ..... 469
Important Safety Precautions ..... 469
Avoiding Trouble ..... 470
**When Driving**
Starting the Engine ..... 471, 473
Precautions While Driving ..... 478
Continuously Variable Transmission ... 479
Shifting ..... 480
Auto Idle Stop ..... 482
ECON Button ..... 488
Front Sensor Camera ..... 489
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ..... 491
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System ... 507
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) .. 511
Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System ..... 519
LaneWatch™* ..... 525
Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™* ..... 527
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) .. 528
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation ..... 532
**Braking**
Brake System ..... 534
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 540
Brake Assist System ..... 541
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) ..... 542
**Parking Your Vehicle**
When Stopped ..... 552
**Multi-View Rear Camera** ..... 558
**Refueling** ..... 560
**Fuel Economy and $CO_2$ Emissions** .... 563
**Turbo Engine Vehicle** ..... 564


* Not available on all models

# Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

## ■ Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the hood is securely closed.
  ▶ If the hood opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tires are in good condition.
  ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 596
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.
Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the hood, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the hood for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

## Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  ▶ Carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe.
  ➡ **Maximum Load Limit** P. 461
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close and lock all doors and the tailgate.
  ➡ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 151
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 203
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 209
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
  ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 200
  ➡ **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 201

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

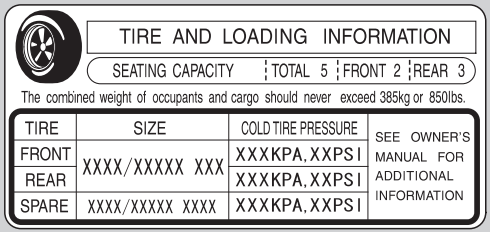
*Continued*

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats, or the operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 45
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  ➡ **Indicators** P. 84

## Maximum Load Limit

The maximum load for your vehicle is 850 lbs (385 kg). See the Tire and Loading Information label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

Label Example


TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION

SEATING CAPACITY | TOTAL 5 | FRONT 2 | REAR 3

The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 385kg or 850lbs.

| TIRE | SIZE | COLD TIRE PRESSURE | SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION |
|---|---|---|---|
| FRONT | XXXX/XXXXX XXX | XXXKPA, XXPSI | |
| REAR | | XXXKPA, XXPSI | |
| SPARE | XXXX/XXXXX XXXX | XXXKPA, XXPSI | |

This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit -

**(1)** Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

**(2)** Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

**(3)** Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

**(4)** The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

Maximum Load Limit

**⚠WARNING**

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):
The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, all cargo, and the tongue load.

**Specifications** P. 650

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):
The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle axle.

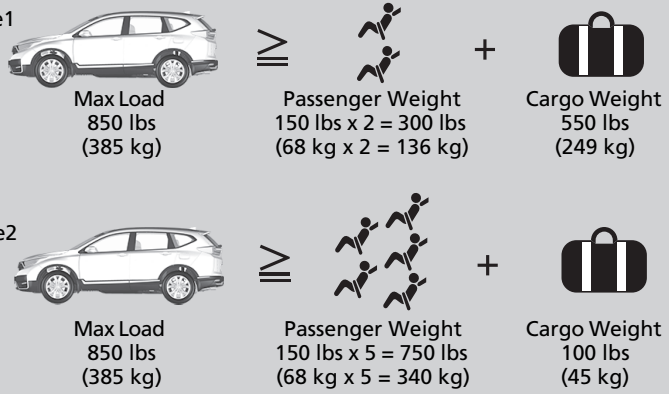
**Specifications** P. 650

Continued

**(5)** Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
**(6)** If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

Load Limits Example



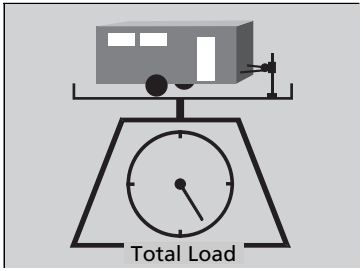

Maximum Load Limit

Towing a Trailer:
See Towing a Trailer to determine whether your vehicle is designed to tow a tailer.
**Towing a Trailer** P. 463

## Towing Preparation

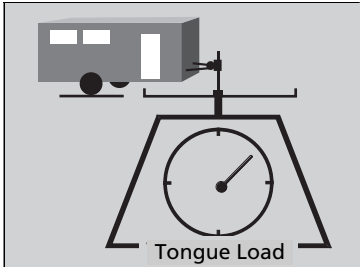
### ■ Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.




**■ Total trailer weight**

Maximum allowable weight of the trailer, cargo, and everything in or on it must not exceed 1,500 lbs (680 kg). Towing loads in excess of this can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.




**■ Tongue load**

The weight of the tongue with a fully loaded trailer on the hitch should be approximately 10% of the total trailer weight.

- Excessive tongue load reduces front tire traction and steering control. Too little tongue load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper tongue load, start by loading 60% of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40% toward the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

Towing Load Limits

**⚠WARNING**

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your cargo load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and the tongue load.

Break-in Period
Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 600 miles (1,000 km).

Never exceed the gross weight ratings.
Gross weight information
➡ **Specifications** P. 650



*Continued*

## ■ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

### ■ Hitches

The hitch must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

### ■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

### ■ Trailer brakes

Recommended for any trailer with a total weight of 1,000 lbs (450 kg) or more:
There are two common types of trailer brakes: surge and electric. Surge brakes are common for boat trailers, since the brakes will get wet. If you choose electric brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system, as it will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

### ■ Additional towing equipment

Many states and provinces/territories require special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets federal, state, province/territory, and local regulations.

Consult your trailer maker for proper installation and setup of the equipment.
Improper installation and setup can affect the handling, stability, and braking performance of your vehicle.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

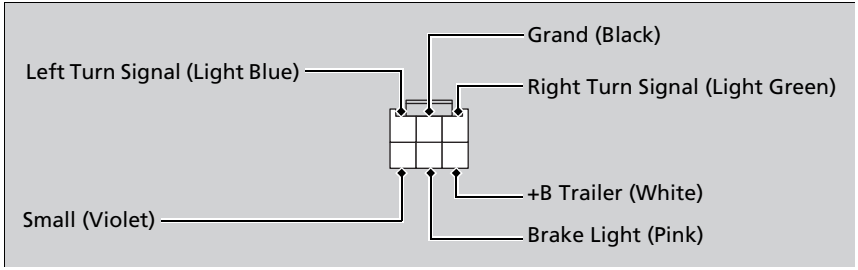
Trailer packages and products:
- Ball mount, hitch plug, hitch pin etc.
- Wiring harness kit
- Trailer hitch kit

**Trailer brakes** P. 464

Are available at a dealer.

## ■ Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with federal, state, province/territory, and local regulations. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.




We recommend that you have a dealer install a Honda wiring harness and converter. They are designed for your vehicle.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

Trailer light

The trailer lighting connector is located behind the left side panel in the cargo area.
Even if you are planning to use the non-Honda trailer lighting harness and converter, ask a dealer for the correct connector and pins.

# Driving Safely with a Trailer

## ■ Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
  ➡ **Towing Load Limits** P. 463
- Securely attach the hitch, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressures of the trailer tires, including the spare.
- Turn off the Auto Idle Stop system using the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button. The trailer weight can affect your vehicle's brake effectiveness if Auto Idle Stop is activated on a hill while towing a trailer.

## ■ Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.
- Use the D position when towing a trailer on level roads.

## ■ Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

Driving Safely with a Trailer

Operating speed when towing a trailer is restricted up to 65 mph (100 km/h).

Parking
In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tires.

## ■ Driving in Hilly Terrain

- Monitor your temperature gauge. If it nears the white (H) mark, turn off the climate control system and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.

## Towing Behind a Motorhome

Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, refer to the emergency towing information.

**Emergency Towing** P. 646

## General Information

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement, however, its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads. It is not designed for trail-blazing, or other challenging off-highway activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills and that your vehicle will handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Pay attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

## Important Safety Precautions

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations:

- Be sure to store cargo properly and do not exceed your cargo load limits.
  **Maximum Load Limit** P. 461
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

Off-Highway Driving Guidelines

**⚠WARNING**

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off-pavement can cause a crash or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.
- Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

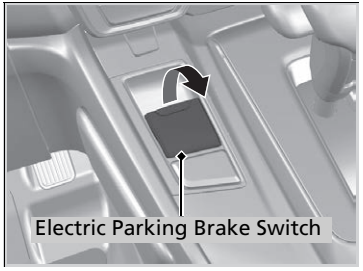
**Important Handling Information** P. 38
**Precautions While Driving** P. 478

## Avoiding Trouble

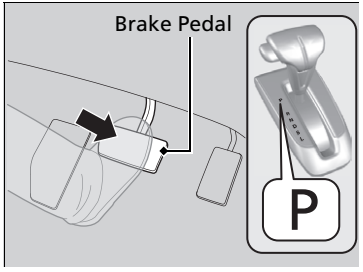
- **Check Out Your Vehicle** before you leave the pavement and make sure that all scheduled maintenance has been completed. Pay special attention to the condition of the tires, and check the tire pressures.
- **Remember** the route you choose presents limits (too steep or bumpy), you have limits (driving skill and comfort), and your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power). Failing to recognize these limits will likely put you and your passengers in a hazardous situation.
- **Accelerating and Braking** should be done slowly and gradually. Trying to start or stop too fast can cause a loss of traction and you could lose control.
- **Avoiding Obstacles and Debris** in the road reduces the likelihood of a rollover or damage to your suspension or other components.
- **Driving on Slopes** increases your risk of a rollover, particularly if you attempt to drive across a slope that is too steep. Going straight or down a slope is usually the safest. If you can't clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk it before you drive it. If there is any doubt whether you can safely pass, don't try it. Find another route. If you get stuck when climbing, do not try to turn around. Back down slowly following the same route you took up the hill.
- **Crossing a Stream** - Avoid driving through deep water. If you encounter water in your route (a small stream or large puddle, for example), evaluate it carefully before going ahead. Make sure it is shallow, flowing slowly, and has firm ground underneath. If you are not sure of the depth or the ground, turn around and find another route. Driving through deep water can also damage your vehicle. The water can get into the transmission and differential, diluting the lubricant and causing an eventual failure. It can also wash the grease out of the wheel bearings.
- **If You Get Stuck**, carefully go in the direction that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tires as this will only make things worse and could damage the transmission. If you are unable to free yourself, your vehicle will need to be towed. Front and rear tow hooks are provided for this purpose.

Models without smart entry system

# Starting the Engine




**1.** Make sure the parking brake is applied.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.




**2.** Check that the shift lever is in P, then depress the brake pedal.
▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.

**3.** Turn the ignition switch to START III without depressing the accelerator pedal.

## Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce battery drain.

If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. Consult a dealer for details.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Do not hold the key in START III for more than 10 seconds.
- If the engine does not start right away, wait for at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- If the engine starts, but then immediately stops, wait at least 30 seconds before repeating step 3 while gently depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal once the engine starts.

Continued

## ■ Starting to Drive

**1.** Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the shift lever in [D]. Select [R] when reversing.
**2.** With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.
➡ **Parking Brake** P. 534

### ■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Move the shift lever to [D], [S], or [L] when facing uphill, or [R] when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Starting the Engine

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.
➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 165

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Hill start assist system

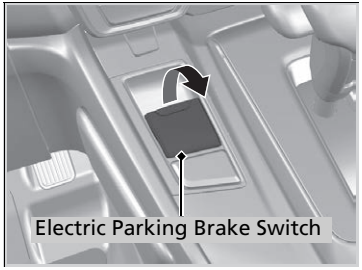
Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

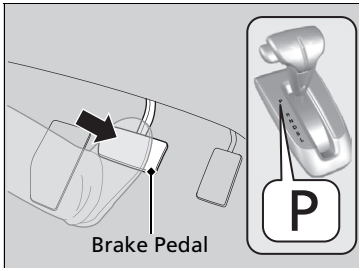
Hill start assist will operate even when VSA® is switched off.

Models with smart entry system

# Starting the Engine




**1.** Make sure the parking brake is applied.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.




**2.** Check that the shift lever is in P, then depress the brake pedal.
▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.

## Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce battery drain.

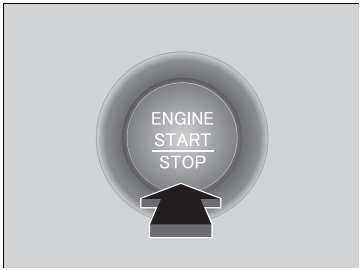
If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. Consult a dealer for details.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.
If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

**Immobilizer System** P. 165

*Continued*




**3.** Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

## ■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

**1.** Shift to P.
**2.** Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Starting the Engine

Bring the smart entry remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the smart entry remote is weak.

➡ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 627

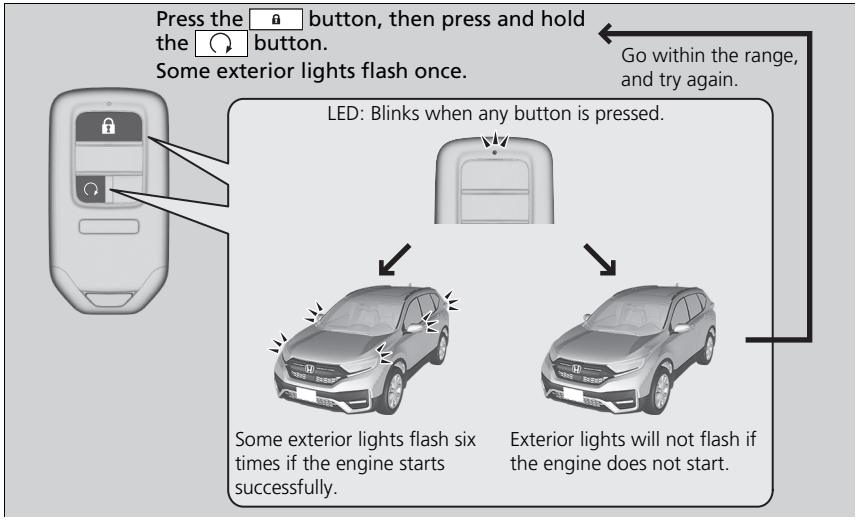
The engine may not start if the smart entry remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.
If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

## ■ Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback*

You can remotely start the engine using the button on the smart entry remote.

### ■ To start the engine




When started remotely, the engine automatically shuts off after 10 minutes of idling and/or the brake pedal and **ENGINE START/STOP** button have not been pressed simultaneously.

To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the button, then press and hold the button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

* Not available on all models

*Continued*



**⚠WARNING**

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic and can rapidly accumulate in closed or even partly enclosed areas.
Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.
Never use the remote engine starter with the vehicle parked in a garage or other areas with limited ventilation.

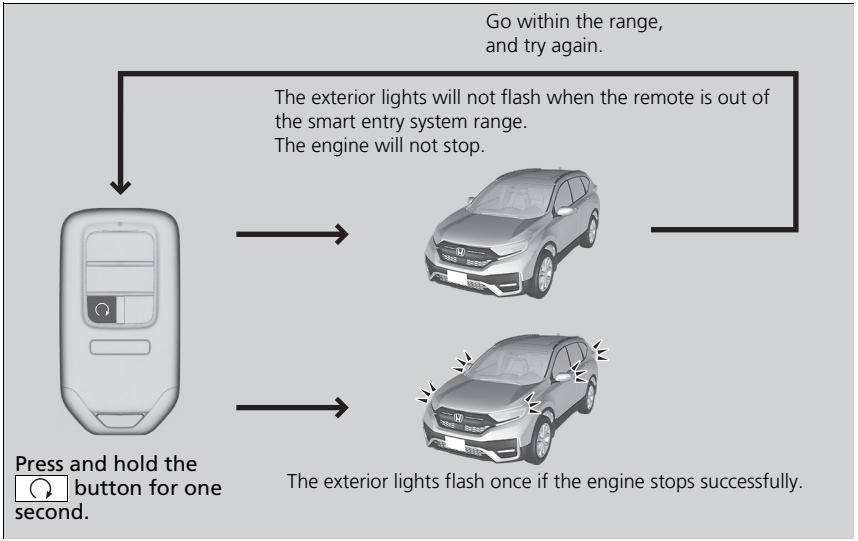
The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the range will be reduced. The range may be less when the vehicle is running. This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting using the audio/information screen*.
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The gear is in a position other than P.
- The hood is open, or any door or the tailgate is unlocked.

## ■ To stop the engine




### Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback*

- You have already used the remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered smart entry remote is in the vehicle.
- There is an antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The security system alarm is not set.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically precondition inside the vehicle.
When it is warm outside:

- The air conditioning is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The defroster is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear defogger and door mirror heaters* are activated.
- The seat and heated steering wheel are activated*

**Heated Steering Wheel*1** P. 229
**Front Seat Heaters*** P. 230





* Not available on all models

## ■ Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the button* on the smart entry remote

**1.** Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button simultaneously.

When the engine was started in any case

**2.** Put the shift lever in D. Select R when reversing.

**3.** With the parking brake is applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.

▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

**4.** Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

### ■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator. Move the shift lever to D, S, or L when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the button* on the smart entry remote

The engine stops when the shift lever is moved out of P before the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed. Follow step 1 when starting to drive.

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA® is switched off.



* Not available on all models

# Precautions While Driving

## ■ Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers whenever possible.
- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the center of gravity.
- Do not carry heavy cargo on roof.
- Roof load capacity is 165 lbs (75 kg), available roof racks/carriers may have lower capacities. Please check accessory's information (Honda accessory).

## ■ In Rain

Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

## ■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Precautions While Driving

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

# Continuously Variable Transmission

## ■ Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

## ■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Precautions While Driving

If the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY I*1 while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in N, as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 600 miles (1,000 km) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as to not damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km). You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

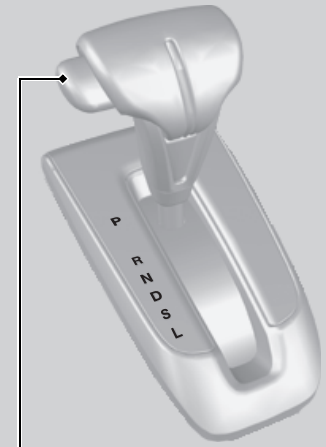
Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

**Important Handling Information** P. 38
**Precautions While Driving** P. 478

# Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ **Shift lever positions**




**P** **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine

**R** **Reverse**
Used when reversing

**N** **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked

**D** **Drive**
Used for normal driving

**S** **Drive (S)**
Used:
- For better acceleration
- To increase engine braking
- When going up or down hills

**L** **Low**
- Used to further increase engine braking
- Used when going up or down hills

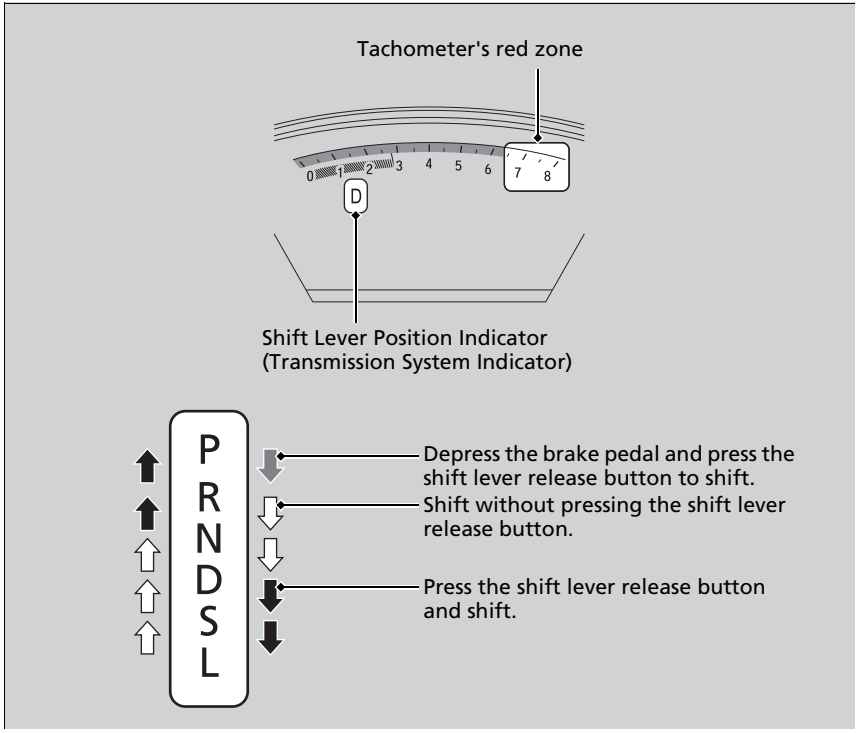
## Shifting

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 and remove the key unless the shift lever is in P.

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Shift Lever Operation




### Shift Lever Operation

**NOTICE**

When you change the shift lever from D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

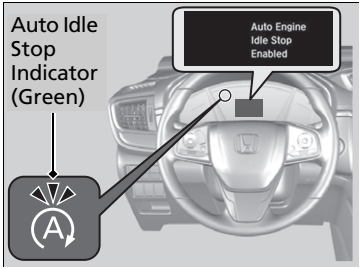
If the indicator of the currently selected gear position, or the transmission system indicators are blinking simultaneously, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

# Auto Idle Stop

To help maximize fuel economy, the engine automatically stops when the vehicle comes to a stop, depending on environmental and vehicle operating conditions. The indicator (green) comes on at this time.




The engine then restarts once the vehicle is about to move again, and the indicator (green) goes off.

➡ **The Engine Automatically Restarts When:** P. 486

The environmental and vehicle conditions that impact Auto Idle Stop system operation are varied.

➡ **Auto Idle Stop Activates When:** P. 484, 485

If the driver's door is opened while the indicator (green) comes on, a buzzer sounds to notify you that the Auto Idle Stop function is in operation.

A message associated with Auto Idle Stop appears on the driver information interface or the audio/information screen*.

➡ **Indicators** P. 84
➡ **Customized Features** P. 127, 366

## Auto Idle Stop

The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the 12-volt battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the 12-volt battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

The duration of the Auto Idle Stop operation:

- **Increase** in the ECON mode, compared to when the ECON mode is off, with climate control in use.

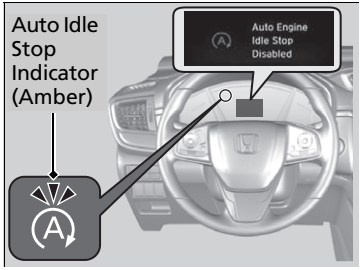
➡ **ECON Button** P. 488

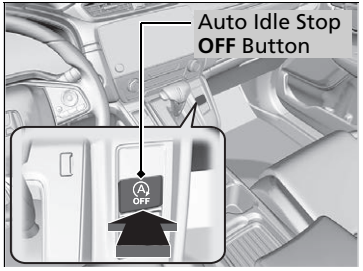




* Not available on all models

## ■ Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF




To turn the Auto Idle Stop system off, press this button. The Auto Idle Stop system stops.

▶ Auto Idle Stop system will stop and the indicator (amber) will come on.

The Auto Idle Stop system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

### Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF

If you turn off the Auto Idle Stop system while it is activated, the engine will restart.

*Continued*

## ■ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

The vehicle stops with the shift lever in D and the brake pedal depressed.
When you shift into P quickly with depressing the brake pedal, the Auto Idle Stop continues to operate, even if the brake pedal is released.

▶ If you move the shift lever slowly, the engine may automatically restarts.

### ■ Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The engine coolant temperature is low or high.
- The transmission fluid temperature is low or high.
- The vehicle comes to a stop again before the vehicle speed reaches 3 mph (5 km/h) after the engine starts.
- Stopped on a steep incline.
- The transmission is in a position other than D.
- The engine is started with the hood open.
  ▶ Turn off the engine. Close the hood before you restart the engine to activate Auto Idle Stop.
- The battery charge is low.
- The internal temperature of the battery is 41°F (5°C) or less.
- The climate control system is in use, and the outside temperature is below –4°F (–20°C) or over 104°F (40°C).
- The climate control system is in use, and the temperature is set to **Hi** or **Lo**.
- FRONT is ON (indicator on).

### Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

Do not open the hood while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated. If the hood is opened, the engine will not restart automatically.

In this case, restart the engine with the ignition switch* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button*.

➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 471, 473

Models with smart entry system

Pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button causes the engine to no longer restart automatically. Follow the standard procedure to start the engine.

➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 473

When ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation, the vehicle stops without depressing the brake pedal and Auto Idle Stop may activate.





* Not available on all models

■ **Auto Idle Stop may not activate when:**

- The vehicle is stopped by braking suddenly.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- The fan speed is high.
- Altitude is high.
- The vehicle is repeatedly accelerated and decelerated at a low speed.
- The climate control system is in use, and there is a significant difference between the set temperature and the actual interior temperature.
- The climate control system is in use, and humidity in the interior is high.



*Continued*

## ■ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

- The brake pedal is released (without the automatic brake hold system activated).
- The accelerator pedal is depressed (with the automatic brake hold system activated).
  ➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 538
- When the transmission is put into [P] from [D] or [N] on a slope (without the automatic brake hold system activated).

### ■ The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed*1 when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- A steering wheel is operated.
- The transmission is put into [R], [S], and [L], or when it is set from [N] to [D].
  ▶ If you put the transmission into [P] after the Auto Idle Stop activates, the Auto Idle Stop continues to operate. In this case, the engine restarts when you move the shift lever other than [P]. When operating the shift lever, the brake pedal must be firmly depressed.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is reduced and the vehicle starts moving while stopped on an incline.
- The brake pedal is released slightly during a stop.
- The battery charge becomes low.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The driver's seat belt is unlatched.
- [FRONT] is ON (indicator on).
- The climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.
- The climate control system is being used to dehumidify the interior.
- The vehicle ahead of you starts again when your vehicle stops automatically with ACC with Low Speed Follow.

**The Engine Automatically Restarts When:**

If you are using an electronic device during Auto Idle Stop, the device may temporarily be turned off when the engine restarts.

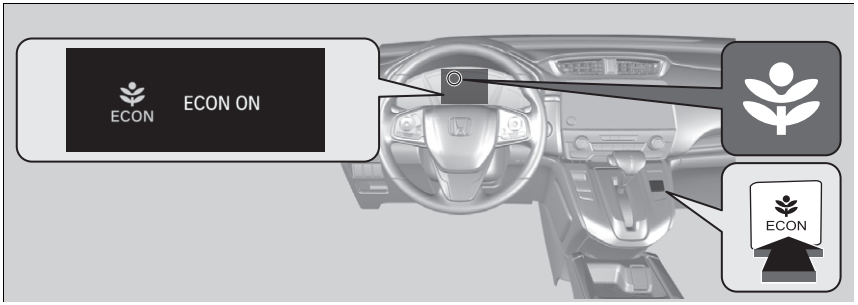
**The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed*1 when:**

*1: With the automatic brake hold system activated, you can release the brake pedal during Auto Idle Stop is in operation.
If the automatic brake hold system has been turned off, or if there is a problem with the system, the engine will restart automatically when you release the brake pedal.

## ■ Starting Assist Brake Function

Briefly keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal to restart the engine. This can keep your vehicle from unexpectedly moving while on an incline.

# ECON Button




The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.
The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, transmission, climate control system, and cruise control.

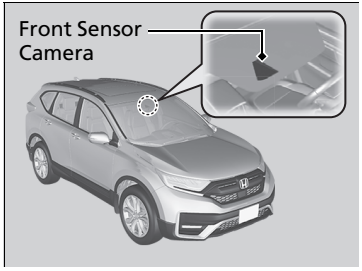
ECON Button

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.

# Front Sensor Camera

The camera, used in systems; such as RDM, LKAS, ACC with Low Speed Follow, auto high-beam and CMBS™, is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate their functions.

## ■ Camera Location and Handling Tips




This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

**Front Sensor Camera**

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the hood, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

*Continued*

Front Sensor Camera

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate:Camera Temperature Too High**: message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the air flow directed toward the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate:Clean Front Windshield**: message appears:

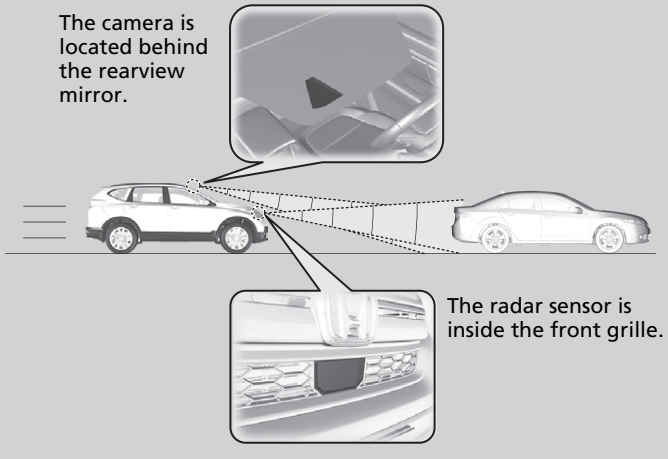
- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windshield. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windshield and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

# Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

## When to use




■ Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 90 mph (145 km/h).
**No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) or above.

■ Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In D or S.

Continued



**⚠WARNING**

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on expressways or freeways and in good weather conditions.

**⚠WARNING**

ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

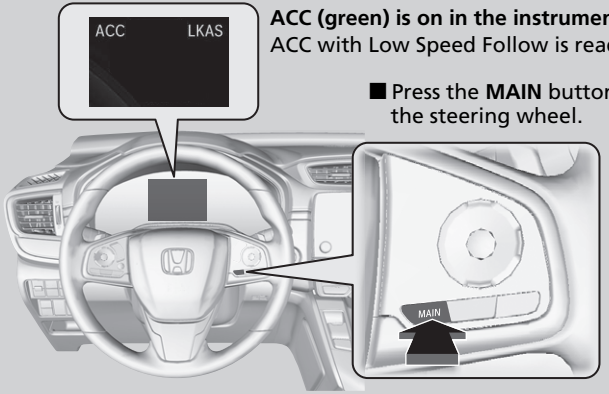
Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

**Important Reminder**

As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.

## ■ How to activate the system

How to use




**ACC (green) is on in the instrument panel.**
ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.

■ Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, both ACC with Low Speed Follow and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

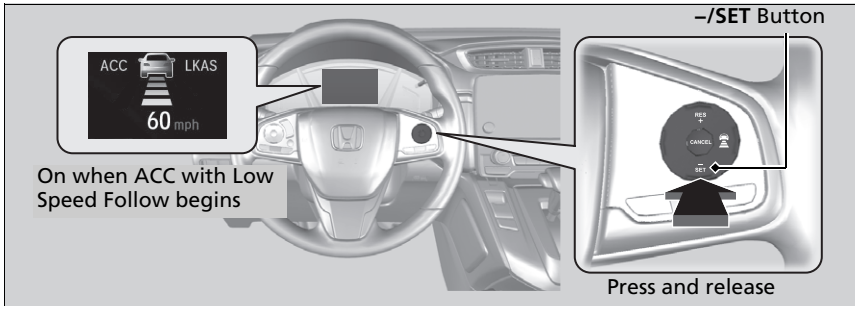
**ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 498

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC with Low Speed Follow will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

## To Set the Vehicle Speed




**When driving at 25 mph (40 km/h) or above:** Take your foot off the pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.
**When driving slower than 25 mph (40 km/h):** If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to 25 mph (40 km/h) regardless of current vehicle speed. If your vehicle is stationary and a vehicle is detected ahead, your vehicle speed can be set, even with the brake pedal depressed.

### To Set the Vehicle Speed

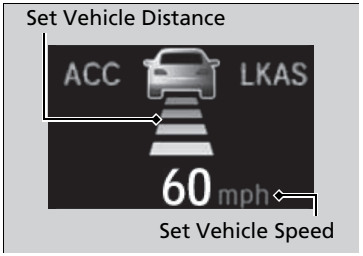
You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface or audio/information screen* between mph and km/h.
**Customized Features** P. 118, 366

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF, low tire pressure/TPMS, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™), and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*




When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, distance bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

When you use ACC with Low Speed Follow, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

## When in Operation

### There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

**To Set or Change Following-Interval** P. 501

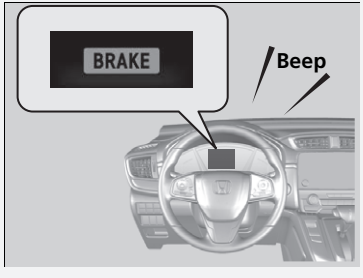
ACC with Low Speed Follow Range: 394 ft. (120 m)

A vehicle icon appears on the driver information interface

When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed is detected in front of you, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, a beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface.
Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead.




Even if the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the distance between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range. Change the **ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep** setting.

**Customized Features** P. 127, 366

*Continued*

### ■ There is no vehicle ahead

A vehicle icon with dotted-line contour appears on the driver information interface

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from traveling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

### ■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.
ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

When in Operation

**Limitations**

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe distance when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

➡ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 498

## ■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop

Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the driver information interface.

When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, the vehicle icon on the driver information interface blinks. If you press the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow operates again within the prior set speed.

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depressing the accelerator pedal will resume operation of ACC with Low Speed Follow within the prior set speed.

A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop

**⚠WARNING**

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Continued

## ■ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 489

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (Wrong size, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the front grille is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tire chains are installed.

### ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The radar sensor for ACC with Low Speed Follow is shared with the collision mitigation braking system™ (CMBS™).

➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)** P. 542

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 489

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

■ **Detection limitations**

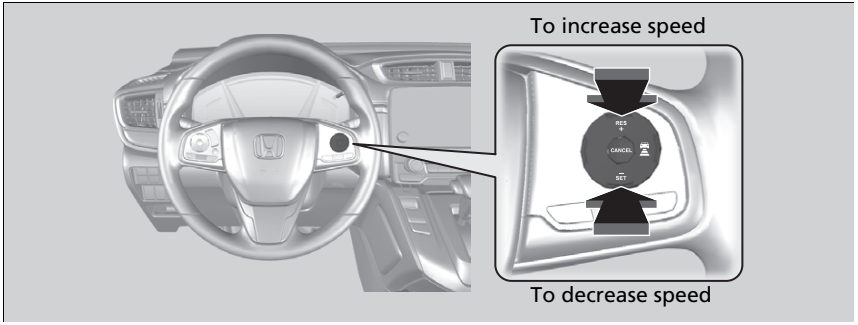
- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle or a pedestrian in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.



*Continued*

## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button on the steering wheel.



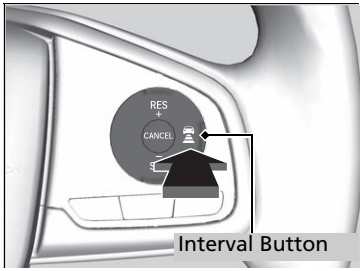

- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep pressing the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 5 mph or 5 km/h accordingly.

### To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **–/SET** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

## To Set or Change Following-Interval




Press the (Interval) button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.
Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-interval.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.



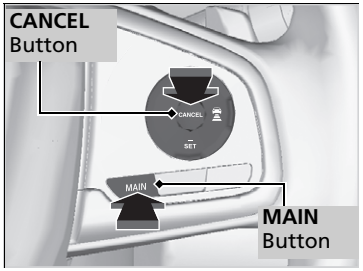
*Continued*

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

| Following-Interval | | When the Set Speed is: | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | 50 mph (80 km/h) | 65 mph (104 km/h) |
| Short | | 83 feet<br>25 meters<br>1.1 sec | 100 feet<br>31 meters<br>1.1 sec |
| Middle | | 110 feet<br>33 meters<br>1.5 sec | 137 feet<br>42 meters<br>1.5 sec |
| Long | | 154 feet<br>47 meters<br>2.1 sec | 200 feet<br>61 meters<br>2.1 sec |
| Extra Long | | 204 feet<br>62 meters<br>2.8 sec | 272 feet<br>83 meters<br>2.9 sec |

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the distance between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow distance setting.

## To Cancel




To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
  ▶ ACC with Low Speed Follow indicator goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have canceled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

*Continued*

### ■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically canceled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected, or the tires are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA® or CMBS™ is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA® system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
- When the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.

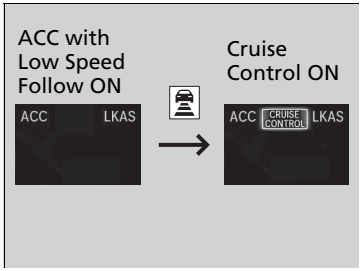
The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The engine is turned off.

Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC with Low Speed Follow to cancel improves, then press the **–/SET** button.

## To Switch ACC with Low Speed Follow to Cruise Control




Press and hold the (interval) button for one second. **Cruise Mode Selected** appears on the driver information interface for two seconds, and then the mode switches to Cruise.
To switch back to ACC with Low Speed Follow, press and hold the button again for one second.

### When to use

Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~.

## To Set the Vehicle Speed

Take your foot off the pedal and press the **–/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.
The moment you release the **–/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

When you use cruise control, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

### To Switch ACC with Low Speed Follow to Cruise Control

Always be aware which mode you are in. When you are driving in Cruise mode, the system will not assist you to maintain a following-interval from a vehicle ahead of you.

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface or audio/information screen* between mph and km/h.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 118, 366



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph or 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep pressing the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 5 mph or 5 km/h accordingly.

## ■ To Cancel

To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:
After cruise control has been canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

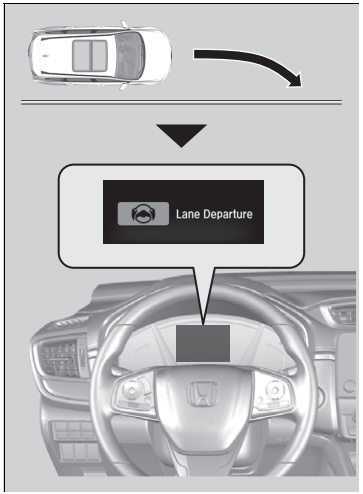
- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- When the **MAIN** button is turned off.

At vehicle speeds of 22 mph (35 km/h) or less, cruise control canceled automatically.

# Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

## ■ How the System Works




The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 127, 366

As a visual alert, the **Lane Departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

▶ Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

*Continued*

Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System

**Important Safety Reminder**

Like all assistance systems, the RDM system has limitations.

Over-reliance on the RDM system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The RDM system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The RDM system may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 489

The RDM system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

➡ **RDM Conditions and Limitations** P. 509

There are times when you may not notice RDM functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

## ■ How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is traveling between about 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

### Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System

If LKAS is off and you have selected **Narrow** from the customized options using the driver information interface* or the audio/information screen*, the message below will appear in case the system determines a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 127, 366

### How the System Activates

The RDM system may automatically shut off and the indicator comes and stays on.

➡ **Indicators** P. 84

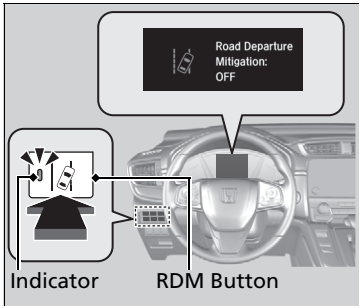
RDM system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.



* Not available on all models

## RDM On and Off




Press the RDM button to turn the system on and off.

▶ The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the driver information interface when the system is on.

## RDM Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

### Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the front windshield.

RDM On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the driver information interface* or the audio/information screen*, the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 127, 366

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF, low tire pressure/TPMS, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™), and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- When driving on roads with double lines.

■ **Vehicle conditions**

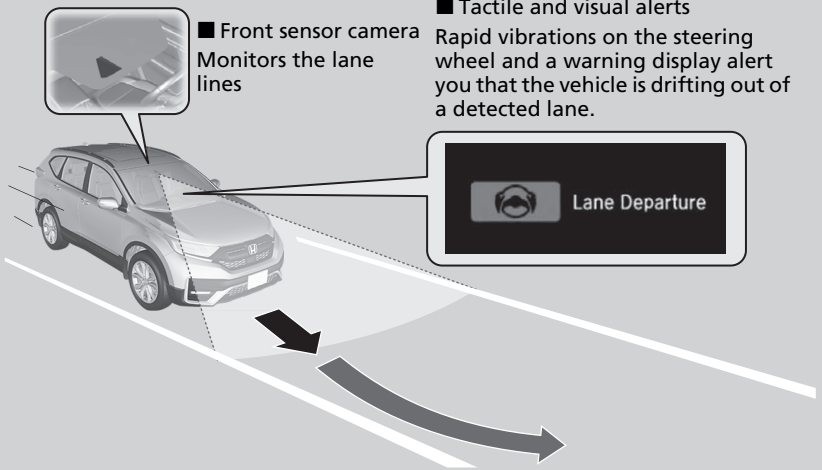
- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tire chains are installed.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

# Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.




When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

**Important Safety Reminders**

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

➡ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 103

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windshield and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on freeways.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

➡ **The LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 517

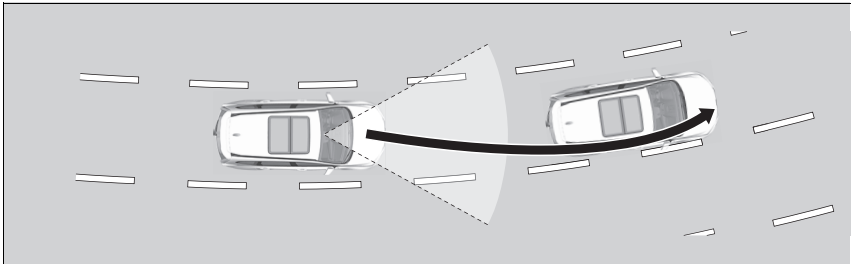
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 489

*Continued*

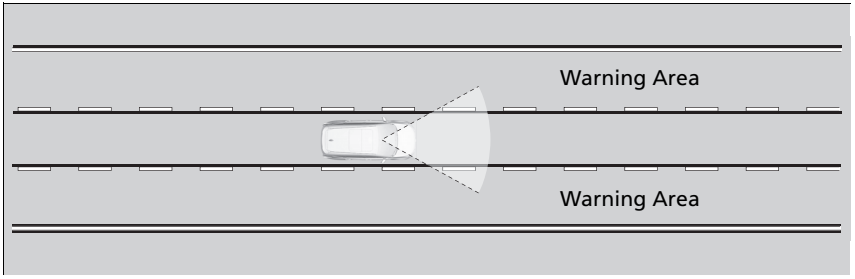
## ■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane, when the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



## ■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.




Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

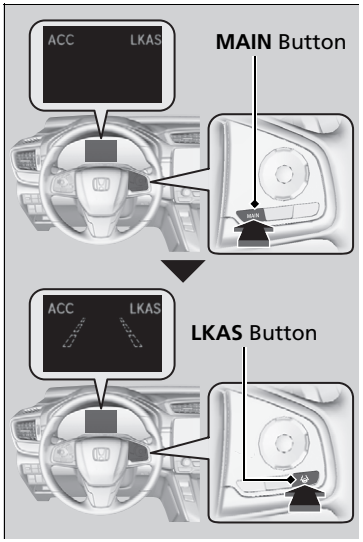
When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be canceled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

## When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the center of the lane.
- The vehicle speed is between about 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.

### How to activate the system



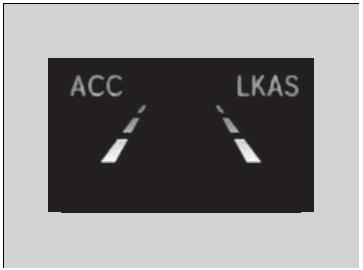

**1.** Press the **MAIN** button.
▶ The LKAS is on in the driver information interface.
The system is ready to use.

**2.** Press the LKAS button.
▶ Lane outlines appear on the driver information interface.
The system is activated.

Continued

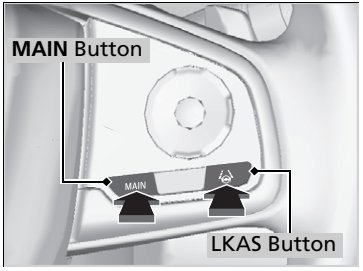
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

If the vehicle drifts toward either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.




**3.** Keep your vehicle near the center of the lane while driving.
▶ The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

## ■ To cancel




To cancel the LKAS:
Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

### When the System can be Used

The LKAS temporarily deactivates when it fails to detect lane lines. When the system detects the lines again, it comes back on automatically.

### To cancel

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC with Low Speed Follow on and off.

When the LKAS is suspended, the lane lines on the driver information interface change to contour lines, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

■ **The system operation is suspended if you:**

- Set the wipers to continuous operation.
  ▶ Turning the wipers off resumes the LKAS.
- Decrease the vehicle speed to 40 mph (64 km/h) or less.
  ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to 45 mph (72 km/h) or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

- Set the wiper switch to **AUTO** and the wipers operate continuously.
  ▶ The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate intermittently.

*Continued*

■ **The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:**
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is quickly turned.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- The vehicle runs on a curved road over the speed limit.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be canceled when:**
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
- When driving through a sharp curve.
- When driving at a speed in excess of approximately 90 mph (145 km/h).
- When the ABS or VSA® systems engage.

A beeper will sound if the LKAS is automatically canceled.

## ■ The LKAS Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markings.
- Reflections on the interior of the front windshield.



*Continued*

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white lines (or yellow lines).
- When driving on roads with double lines.

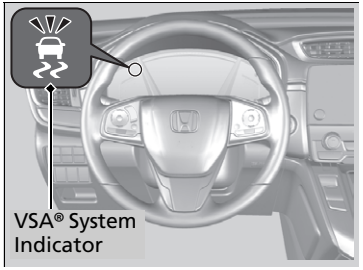
■ **Vehicle conditions**

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

# Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

VSA® helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

## ■ VSA® Operation




When VSA® activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

The VSA® may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA® system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

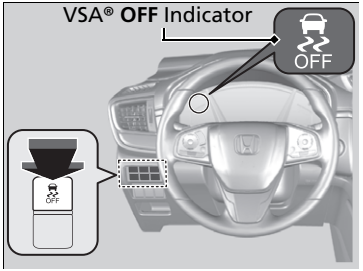
VSA® cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA® system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA® temporarily switched off.

Continued

## ■ VSA® On and Off




This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA® functionality/ features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA® functionality/features, press the (VSA® OFF) button until you hear a beep.

VSA® is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

When the button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA® off if you are not able to free it when the VSA® is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA® on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA® system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF, low tire pressure/TPMS, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™), and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

# Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes each of the front and rear wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

## Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA® system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

# Blind spot information System*

Is designed to detect vehicles in specified alert zones adjacent to your vehicle, particularly in harder to see areas commonly known as "blind spots."

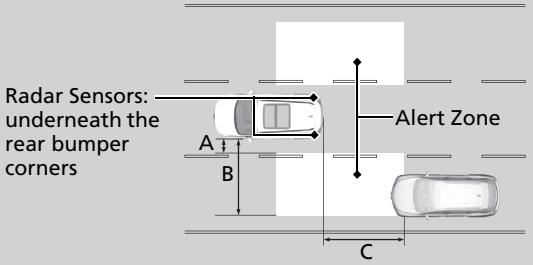
When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on for a few seconds, providing assistance when you change lanes.

## ■ How the system works

- The transmission is in D.
- Your vehicle speed is between 20 mph (32 km/h) and 100 mph (160 km/h)

**Alert zone range**

A: Approx. 1.6 ft. (0.5 m)
B: Approx. 10 ft. (3 m)
C: Approx. 10 ft. (3 m)




Blind spot information System*

## ⚠WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.
Do not rely only on the blind spot information system when changing lanes.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

**Important Safety Reminder**

Like all assistance systems, blind spot information system has limitations. Over reliance on blind spot information system may result in a collision.

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur.

- The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on due to obstruction (splashes, etc.) even without the **Blind Spot Info Not Available** driver information interface appearing.
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may come on even with the message appearing.



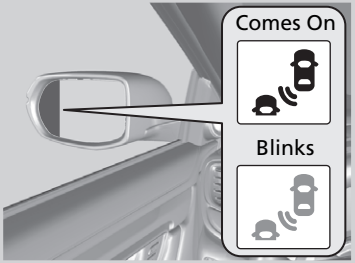
 * Not available on all models

## ■ When the system detects a vehicle

Blind spot information System Alert Indicator:
Located on the outside rearview mirror on both sides.

■ Comes on when
- A vehicle enters the alert zone from behind to overtake you with a speed difference of no more than 31 mph (50 km/h) from your vehicle.
- You pass a vehicle with a speed difference of no more than 12 mph (20 km/h).

■ Blinks and the beeper sounds when
You move the turn signal lever in the direction of the detected vehicle. The beeper sounds three times.




### Blind spot information System*

The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:
- A vehicle does not stay in the alert zone for more than two seconds.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle you are passing is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.

You can change the setting for blind spot information system.
**Customized Features** P. 366

Turn the system off when towing a trailer.
The system may not work properly for the following reasons:
- The added mass tilts the vehicle and changes the radar coverage.
- The trailer itself can be detected by the radar sensors, causing the blind spot information system alert indicators to come on.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## Blind spot information System*

Blind spot information system may be adversely affected when:

- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc,.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well, such as a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up external electrical interference.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.
- The orientation of the sensors has been changed.
- In bad weather (Heavy rain, snow, and fog).
- Making a turn at an intersection.
- Driving on a bumpy road.
- Making a short turn that slightly tilts the vehicle.

For proper blind spot information system use:

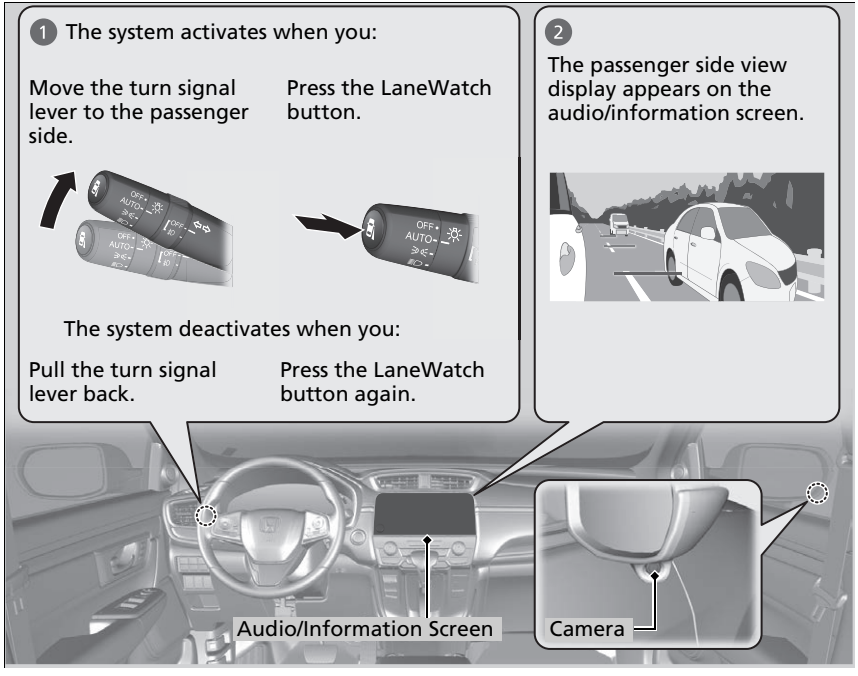
- Always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the rear bumper corner area or the radar sensors to be repaired, or the rear bumper corner area is strongly impacted.

The system does not operate when in R.

 * Not available on all models

# LaneWatch™*

LaneWatch is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicle, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.




LaneWatch™*

## ⚠WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

**Important Safety Reminder**
Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tires are over or under inflated.
- Your tires or wheels are of varied size or construction.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

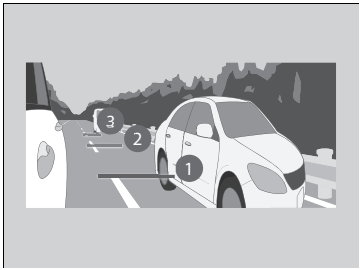
### ■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with Turn Signal**: Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal lever.
- **Display Time after Turn Signal Off**: Changes the remaining Lane Watch display time after you pull the turn signal lever back.
- **Reference Line**: Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Display**: Adjusts display settings.

**Customized Features** P. 366

### ■ Reference Lines




Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line 1 (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line 3 is farther away.

#### LaneWatch™*

The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the shift lever is in R.

For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

#### Reference Lines

The area around the reference line 1 (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines 1, 2 and 3 on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.



 * Not available on all models

# Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™*

When the system senses a loss of front wheel traction, it automatically transfers some power to the rear wheels. This allows you to utilize all available traction and may increase mobility.

You still need to exercise the same care when accelerating, steering, and braking that you would in a two wheel drive vehicle.

If you excessively spin all four wheels and overheat the AWD system, only the front wheels receive power. Stop until the system cools down.

Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™*

NOTICE

Do not continuously spin the front tires of your vehicle. Continuously spinning the front tires can cause transmission or rear differential damage.

The AWD system may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

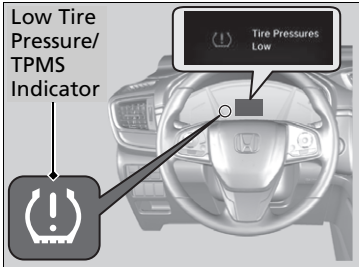
➲ **Tire and Wheel Replacement** P. 602



* Not available on all models

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tire, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tire while you are driving to determine if one or more tires are significantly under-inflated.




This will cause the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The system does not monitor the tires when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tire pressure and can trigger the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

Tire pressure checked and inflated in:
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tire pressure indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The TPMS may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire.

**Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 596

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Snow chains are used.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:
- A compact spare tire is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tires, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at calibration.
- Snow chains are used.

## ■ TPMS Calibration

You must start TPMS calibration every time you:
- Adjust the pressure in one or more tires.
- Rotate the tires.
- Replace one or more tires.

Before calibrating the TPMS:
- Set the cold tire pressure in all four tires.
  ➡ **Checking Tires** P. 596

Make sure:
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift lever is in P.
- The ignition switch is in ON II*1.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*Continued*

### TPMS Calibration

TPMS cannot be calibrated if a compact spare tire is installed.

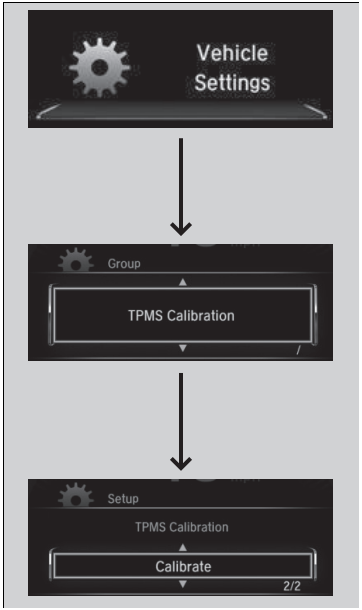
The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 30-65 mph (48-105 km/h).

During calibration, if the ignition is turned off then on again, and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, the low tire pressure indicator may come on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the snow chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the TPMS.

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tires are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tires be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.




Models with color audio system

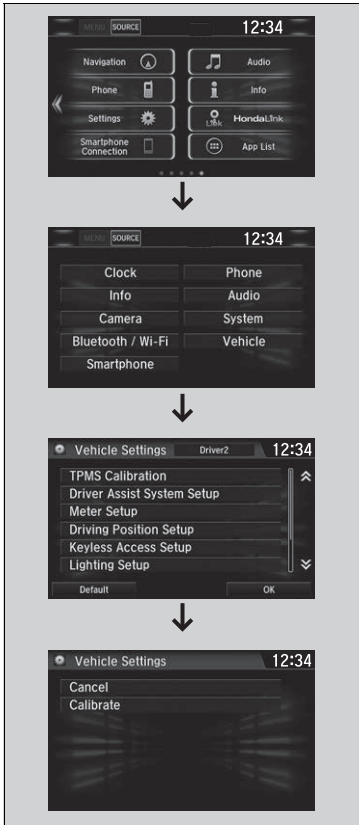
You can calibrate the system from the customized features on the driver information interface.

1. Press the button then ▲/▼ button to select **Vehicle Settings**, then press the **ENTER** button.
   ▶ **TPMS Calibration** appears on the display.
2. Press the **ENTER** button.
   ▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Calibrate**.
3. Press the ▲/▼ button and select **Calibrate**, then press the **ENTER** button.
   ▶ **Calibration Started** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Calibration Failed To Start** message appears, repeat steps 2-3.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

TPMS Calibration

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF, low tire pressure/TPMS, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™), and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.




Models with Display Audio

You can calibrate the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Select HOME.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Vehicle**.
5. Select **TPMS Calibration**.
6. Select **Cancel** or **Calibrate**.
   ▶ When the calibration is complete, the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Calibration Failed To Start.** message appears, repeat step 6.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

U.S. models

# Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale

when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

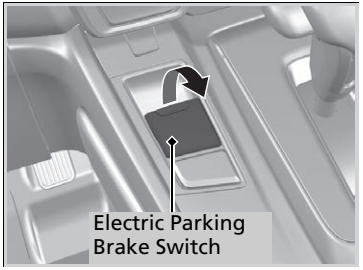
TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

# Brake System

## ■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.

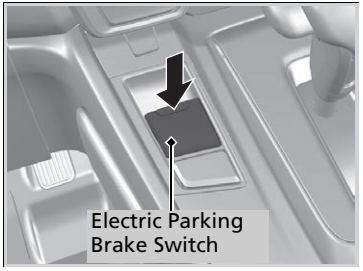



### ■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the ignition switch*1 is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on.




### ■ To release

The vehicle must be ON II*1 in order to release the electric parking brake.

**1.** Depress the brake pedal.

**2.** Press the electric parking brake switch.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Braking

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

### Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.

➡ **If the Battery Is Dead** P. 629

**If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA® system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.**

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and the brake hold system is applied.
- When the engine is turned off while the brake hold system is applied.
- When there is a problem with the brake hold system while brake hold is applied.

### ■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

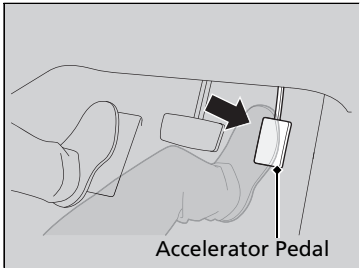
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.

**Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature** P. 536

### ■ To release automatically

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.




Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

The parking brake automatically releases as you depress the accelerator pedal when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in P or N.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Parking Brake

Models with ACC with Low Speed Follow

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the engine is turned off while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is traveling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Brake system indicator
- VSA® system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

*Continued*

### ■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the ignition switch is in ON (II)*1, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Shift the select lever to (P).
2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up and release the parking brake switch.
   ▶ Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator has come on.
3. Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within 3 seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
   ▶ Two beeps indicates that the feature has been activated.
   ▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
   ▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the engine.
   ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature for when putting your vehicle through a conveyor type car wash or when having your vehicle towed. You can follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
2. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK (0)*1 and then within 2 seconds push down the parking brake switch.
   ▶ Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
   ▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both ACC with Low Speed Follow and the automatic brake hold system.
   ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Parking brake system

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

## ■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➔ **Brake Assist System** P. 541
➔ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 540

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, this is caused by the brake wear indicator rubbing on the brake rotor and indicates that the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. If you hear only an occasional squeak or squeal when you initially apply the brake pedal, this may be normal and caused by high frequency vibration of the brake pads against the rotating brake disc.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear/speed position. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Whenever the brakes are activated by CMBS™ or another system that automatically controls braking, the brake pedal is depressed and released in accordance with braking function.

*Continued*

## ■ Automatic Brake Hold

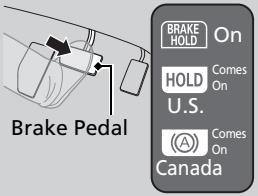
Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■ Turning on the system

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

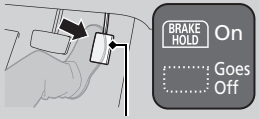
■ Activating the system




Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The shift lever must not be in P or R.

- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■ Canceling the system




Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in a position other than P or N. The brake hold is disengaged and the vehicle starts to move.

- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system releases the brake automatically.

Automatic Brake Hold

**⚠WARNING**

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

**⚠WARNING**

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

■ **The system automatically cancels when:**
- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever to P or R.

■ **The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:**
- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ **Turning off the automatic brake hold system**

Automatic Brake Hold Button

While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

**When Stopped** P. 552

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the engine is off.

Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

# Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

### ■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 6 mph (10 km/h), the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use an incorrect tire type and size.

When the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking is not affected, there is a possibility of the ABS not operating. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with steering control during hard braking.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more stopping distance than a vehicle without the ABS:
- When driving on rough road surfaces, including when driving on uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- When tire chains are installed.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while vehicle is accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

# Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

**■ Brake assist system operation**

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

# Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

**Important Safety Reminder**

The CMBS™ is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS™ may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

➔ **CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations** P. 548

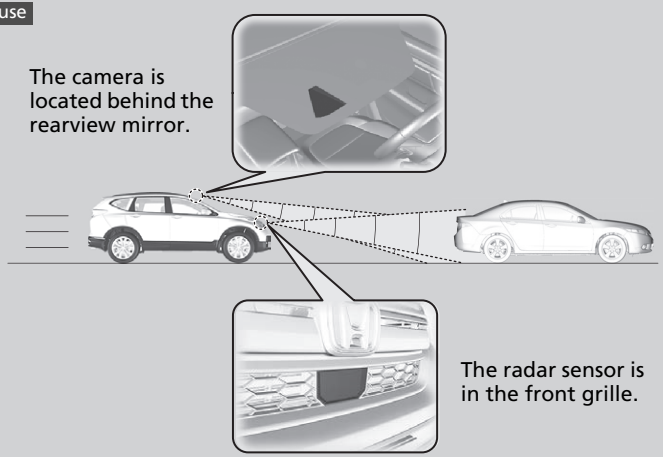
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➔ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 489

Be careful not to have radar sensor cover strongly impacted.

## ■ How the system works

When to use




The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 3 mph (5 km/h) and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS™ activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 3 mph (5 km/h) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 62 mph (100 km/h) or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:

- Vehicles detected in front of you that are stationary, oncoming, or traveling in your same direction.
- A pedestrian who is detected in front of you.

- Your vehicle speed is above 62 mph (100 km/h), and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with a vehicle detected in front of you traveling in your same direction.

Continued

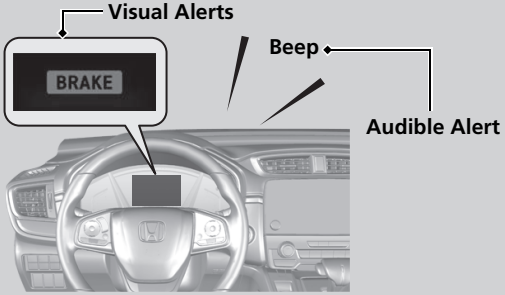
How the system works

When the CMBS™ activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be canceled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

## ■ When the system activates

The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)




You can change the distance (**Long**/**Normal**/**Short**) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on through the driver information interface* or the audio/information screen* setting options.

**Customized Features** P. 127, 366

How the system works

The camera in the CMBS™ is also designed to detect pedestrians.

However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.

Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

**CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations** P. 548

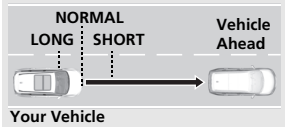
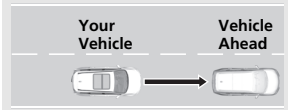




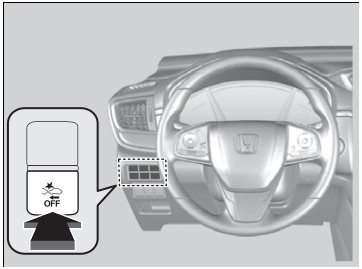
* Not available on all models

## ■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS™ may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

| Distance between vehicles | | CMBS™ | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | The sensors detect a vehicle | Audible & Visual WARNINGS | Braking |
| Stage one |  | There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you. | When in **Long**, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short**, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**. | — |
| Stage two |  | The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced. | Visual and audible alerts. | Lightly applied |
| Stage three | | The CMBS™ determines that a collision is unavoidable. | | Forcefully applied |

## ■ CMBS™ On and Off




Press and hold the button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS™ is off:

- The CMBS™ indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the driver information interface reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS™ is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

### Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

The CMBS™ may automatically shut off, and the CMBS™ indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions.

➡ **CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations** P. 548

When the CMBS™ is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be canceled if the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF, low tire pressure/TPMS, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™), and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ With Little Chance of a Collision

The CMBS™ may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

**■ When Passing**
Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

**■ At an intersection**
Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.

**■ On a curve**
When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

**■ Through a low bridge at high speed**
You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

**■ Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.**
You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects [such as a traffic sign and guard rail] on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

For the CMBS™ to work properly:

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not paint, or apply any coverings or paint to radar sensor area. This can impact CMBS™ operation.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:
- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

Continued

## ■ CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS™ indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS™ functions.

**Front Sensor Camera** P. 489

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the front windshield.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, pedestrians or other vehicles may not be detected).

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast on a snowy or wet roadway).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.

CMBS™ Conditions and Limitations

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the CMBS™ off button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tire, etc.).
- When tire chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.



*Continued*

■ **Detection limitations**

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is slouching or squatting.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 3 feet (1 meter) or taller than about 7 feet (2 meter) in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands or raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

### ■ Automatic shutoff

CMBS™ may automatically shut itself off and the CMBS™ indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected (wrong tire size, flat tire, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused CMBS™ to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

## When Stopped

**1.** Depress the brake pedal firmly.
**2.** With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
**3.** Move the shift lever from D to P.
**4.** Turn off the engine.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off in about 15 seconds.

Always confirm the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

### Parking Your Vehicle

**⚠WARNING**

**The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.**

**A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.**

**Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift lever position indicator.**

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

### When Stopped

After shutting off the engine, you may hear certain noises coming from the vehicle. Here's the lowdown:
- Noise from Under Vehicle: This noise is caused by the vacuum pump inside the fuel evaporation leakage check module (ELCM).

Depending on conditions, the pump will come on for about 15 minutes about 5 to 10 hours after engine shutoff. This noise is just normal vehicle operation and don't indicate a vehicle problem.

When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into P before the vehicle stops completely.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

# Cross Traffic Monitor*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

**⚠CAUTION**

Cross Traffic Monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

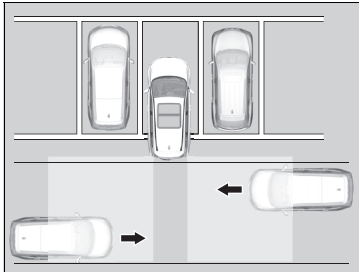
Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.



 * Not available on all models

## How the System Works



Radar sensors:
Underneath the rear bumper corners

The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor system is turned on.
  **Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off** P. 557
- The transmission is in R.
- Your vehicle is moving at 3 mph (5 km/h) or lower.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not detect or provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

### Cross Traffic Monitor*

Cross Traffic Monitor may not detect an approaching vehicle, or may delay alerting you under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle and a wall, near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 3 mph (5 km/h) or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 6 mph (10 km/h) and 16 mph (25 km/h).
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

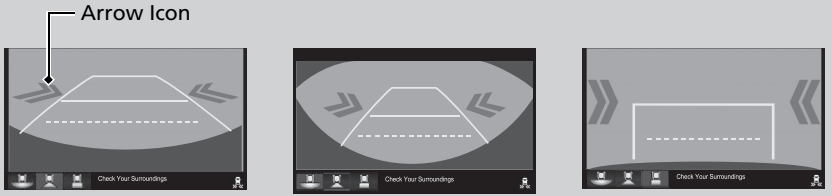
For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.



* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ When the System Detects a Vehicle




Normal View　Wide View　Top Down View

An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.

When the System Detects a Vehicle

If the [icon] on the lower right changes to [icon] when the transmission is in [R], mud snow or ice may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

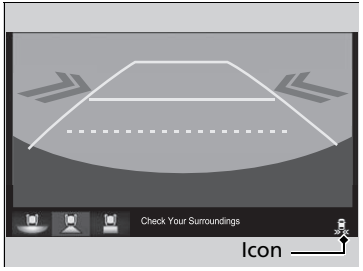
If the [icon] comes on when the transmission is in [R], there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the transmission in [R], there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system.
Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off

You can switch on and off the system using the audio/information screen.

**1.** Select HOME.
**2.** Select **Settings**.
**3.** Select **Camera**.
**4.** Select **Cross Traffic Monitor**.
**5.** Select **On** or **Off**, then select **OK**.

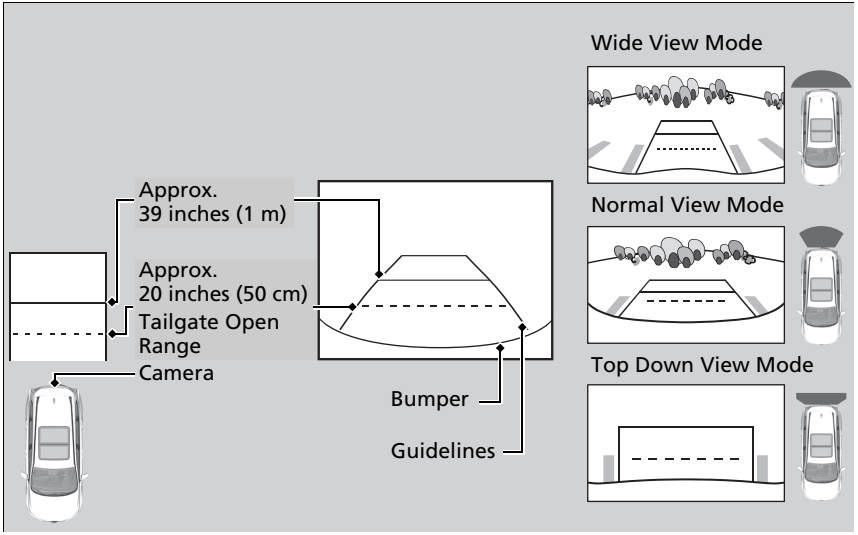



The system can also be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by pressing the CTM icon.

## About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view.
The display automatically changes to a rear view when the shift lever is moved to R.

### ■ Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area




About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

Models with color audio system

You can change the **Camera Guideline On** or **Off** settings.

**Customized Features** P. 359

Models with Display Audio

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

**Customized Features** P. 366

**Fixed Guideline**
**On:** Guidelines appear when you shift into R.
**Off:** Guidelines do not appear.
**Dynamic Guideline**
**On:** Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
**Off:** Guidelines do not move.

You can view three different camera angles on the rearview display.

Models with color audio system

Press the selector knob to switch the angle.

Models with Display Audio

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the angle.

: Wide view

: Normal view

: Top down view

All models

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the power system, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of R, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.

# Fuel Information

■ **Fuel recommendation**

**Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher**

Use of lower octane gasoline can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ **Top tier detergent gasoline**

Because the level of detergency and additives in gasoline vary in the market, Honda endorses the use of "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" where available to help maintain the performance and reliability of your vehicle. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new gasoline standard jointly established by leading automotive manufacturers to meet the needs of today's advanced engines.

Qualifying gasoline retailers will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" standards at the retail location. This fuel is guaranteed to contain the proper level of detergent additives and be free of metallic additives. The proper level of detergent additives, and absence of harmful metallic additives in gasoline, help avoid build-up of deposits in your engine and emission control system.

For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or on information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, visit *www.hondacars.com*. In Canada, visit *www.honda.ca* for additional information on gasoline. For more information on top tier gasoline, visit *www.toptiergas.com*.

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 14 US gal (53 L)**

Fuel Information

NOTICE

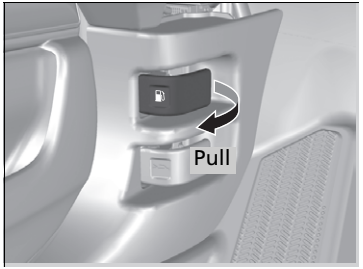
We recommend quality gasoline containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits. In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend the use of gasoline that does NOT contain harmful manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT, if such gasoline is available.

Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact a dealer for service.

Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol. If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

# How to Refuel

Your fuel tank is not equipped with a fuel filler cap. You can insert the filler nozzle directly into the filler neck. The tank seals itself again when you pull out the filler nozzle.




1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the lower left corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The fuel fill door opens.

How to Refuel

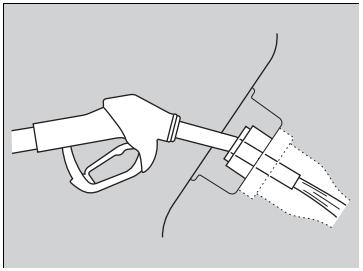
**⚠WARNING**

**Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.**

- **Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.**
- **Handle fuel only outdoors.**
- **Wipe up spills immediately.**

The fuel filler opening is designed to accept only service station filler nozzles for refueling. Use of smaller diameter tubes (e.g., those used to siphon fuel for other uses) or other non-service station devices can damage the area in and around the filler opening.

*Continued*



**4.** Place the end of the filler nozzle on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.
- ▶ Make sure that the end of the filler nozzle goes down along with the filler pipe.
- ▶ Keep the filler nozzle level.
- ▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically.
- ▶ If you do not fill up the tank to full, always add a minimum of 1.3 US gal (5.0 L) of fuel.
- ▶ After filling, wait about five seconds before removing the filler nozzle.

**5.** Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

**How to Refuel**

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

If the filler nozzle keeps turning off when the tank is not full, there may be a problem with the pump's fuel vapor recovery system. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult a dealer.

If you repeatedly fill the tank with less than the specified minimum amount of fuel, the malfunction indicator lamp may come on. If this happens, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If you have to refuel your vehicle from a portable container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.

**Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container** P. 648

# Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing $CO_2$ Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing $CO_2$ emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

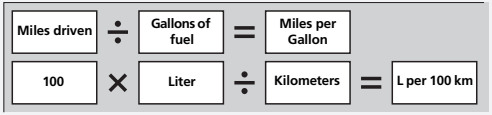
## Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the driver information interface.

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.
  **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 577
- Maintain the specified tire pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess cargo.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

### Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing $CO_2$ Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.




In Canada, posted fuel economy numbers are established following a simulated test.
For more information on how this test is performed, please visit *https:/www.nrcan.gc.ca* and search for "fuel consumption testing" in the search field at the top of the page.

## Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine's exhaust gas pressure.

- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.

- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the Maintenance Minder. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 1,292°F (700°C). It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

Turbo Engine Vehicle

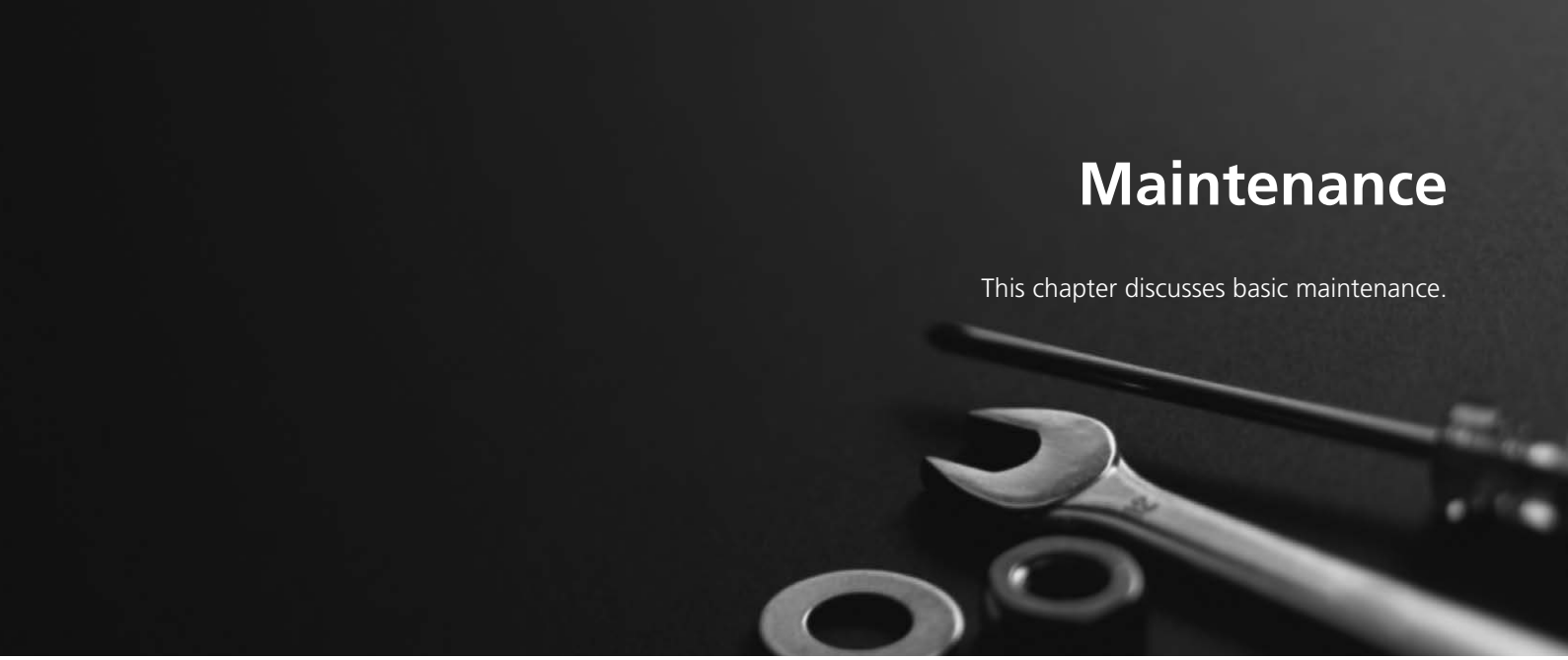
The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the filter is indicated on the driver information interface. Follow the information of when to replace them.

**Maintenance Minder™** P. 569

The temperature gauge pointer is at the H mark when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain. This is normal. The gauge goes down after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

# Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.




**Before Performing Maintenance**
- Inspection and Maintenance ..... 566
- Safety When Performing Maintenance ..567
- Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service ..... 568

**Maintenance Minder™** ..... 569

**Maintenance Under the Hood**
- Maintenance Items Under the Hood. 575
- Opening the Hood ..... 576
- Recommended Engine Oil ..... 577
- Oil Check ..... 578
- Adding Engine Oil ..... 579
- Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter ..... 580
- Engine Coolant ..... 582
- Transmission Fluid ..... 584
- Brake Fluid ..... 585
- Refilling Window Washer Fluid ..... 586

**Replacing Light Bulbs** ..... 587

**Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** ... 592

**Checking and Maintaining Tires**
- Checking Tires ..... 596
- Tire and Loading Information Label ..... 597
- Tire Labeling ..... 597
- DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles).. 599
- Wear Indicators ..... 601
- Tire Service Life ..... 601
- Tire and Wheel Replacement ..... 602
- Tire Rotation ..... 603
- Winter Tires ..... 604

**Battery** ..... 605

**Remote Transmitter Care**
- Replacing the Button Battery ..... 607

**Climate Control System Maintenance** .. 609

**Cleaning**
- Interior Care ..... 610
- Exterior Care ..... 612

**Accessories and Modifications** ..... 615

# Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. (Note, however, that service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect.)

## ■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

### ■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

➡ **Maintenance** P. 29

### ■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  ➡ **Checking the Brake Fluid** P. 585
- Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 596
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 587
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 592

Inspection and Maintenance

U.S. models

**Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individuals using parts that are "certified" to EPA standards.**

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the maintenance main items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the driver information interface.

➡ **Maintenance Service Items** P. 572

If you want to perform complex maintenance tasks that require more skills and tools, you can purchase a subscription to the Service Express website at *www.techinfo.honda.com*.

➡ **Authorized Manuals** P. 660

If you want to perform maintenance yourself, make sure that you have the necessary tools and skills first. After performing maintenance, update the records in the separate maintenance booklet.

# Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

## ■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the hood.
  ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

## ■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.
  ▶ Do not open the hood while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

**⚠WARNING**

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations according to the schedules in this owner's manual.

**⚠WARNING**

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

## Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

Select the Maintenance Minder to see maintenance items that are due soon and to see the percentage of life remaining in the engine oil.

When the engine oil life is less than 15%, a Maintenance Minder message will appear every time you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1, reminding you to bring your vehicle to a dealer for service.

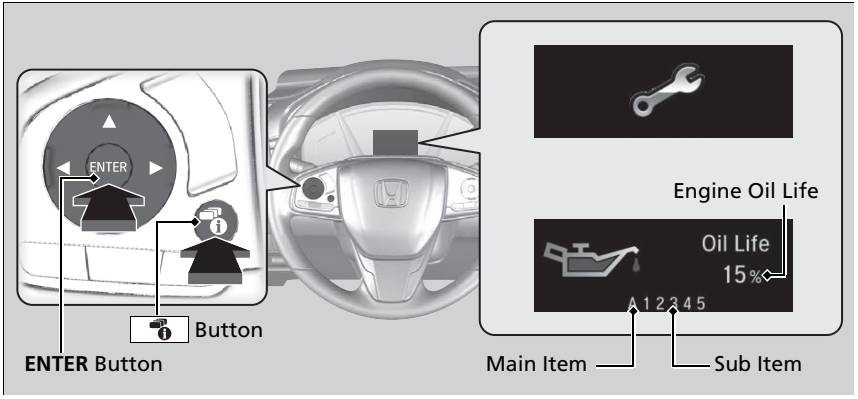
*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

# To Use Maintenance Minder™

## ■ Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

Certain maintenance items due soon, along with the estimated remaining oil life, appear on the driver information interface.
You can view them on the Maintenance Minder screen at any time.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON (II)*1.
2. Press the button several times until is displayed.
3. Press **ENTER** to go to the Maintenance Minder screen. The engine oil life appears on the driver information interface along with maintenance items due soon.




*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

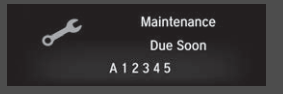
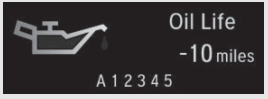
Based on the engine operating conditions, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

| Displayed Engine Oil Life (%) | Calculated Engine Oil Life (%) |
|---|---|
| **100** | 100 to 91 |
| **90** | 90 to 81 |
| **80** | 80 to 71 |
| **70** | 70 to 61 |
| **60** | 60 to 51 |
| **50** | 50 to 41 |
| **40** | 40 to 31 |
| **30** | 30 to 21 |
| **20** | 20 to 16 |
| **15** | 15 to 11 |
| **10** | 10 to 6 |
| **5** | 5 to 1 |
| **0** | 0 |

There is a list of maintenance main and sub items you can view on the driver information interface.

**Maintenance Service Items** P. 572

## Maintenance Minder Messages on the Driver Information Interface

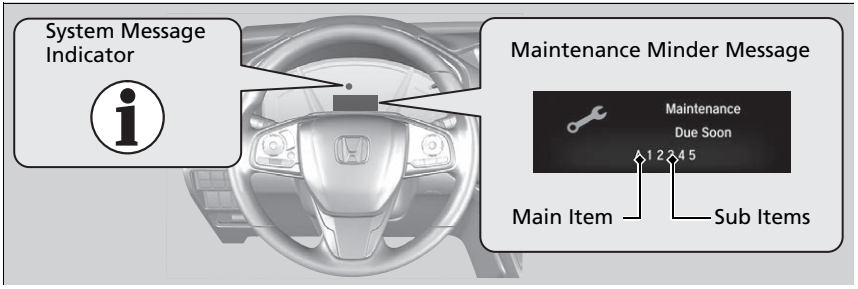
| Maintenance Message | Oil Life Display | Explanation | Information |
|---|---|---|---|
| — | | When you select the Maintenance Minder screen, it displays codes for maintenance items due at the next engine oil change, along with the percentage of engine oil life remaining. | — |
| **Maintenance Due Soon**<br>  | | The engine oil life indicator starts to appear along with other due-soon maintenance item codes when the remaining oil life drops to 15 percent. | The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life. |
| **Maintenance Due Now**<br> | | The remaining engine oil life is 5 to 1 percent. Press the [i] button to switch to another display. | The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible. |
| **Maintenance Past Due**<br> |  | The engine oil has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). The negative distance on the display blinks. | The engine oil life has passed.<br>The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately. |

The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the Maintenance Minder message.



*Continued*

## ■ Maintenance Service Items




Maintenance Service Items

- Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

U.S. models

| CODE | Maintenance Main Items |
|---|---|
| A | • Replace engine oil*1 |
| B | • Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter<br>• Inspect front and rear brakes<br>• Inspect these items:<br>  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots<br>  • Suspension components<br>  • Driveshaft boots<br>  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)<br>  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids<br>  • Exhaust system#<br>  • Fuel lines and connections# |

| CODE | Maintenance Sub Items |
|---|---|
| 1 | • Rotate tires |
| 2 | • Replace air cleaner element*2<br>• Replace dust and pollen filter*3<br>• Inspect drive belt |
| 3 | • Replace transmission fluid*4 |
| 4 | • Replace spark plugs<br>• Inspect valve clearance |
| 5 | • Replace engine coolant |
| 6 | • Replace rear differential fluid* |
| 7 | • Replace brake fluid*5 |

*1: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty in the first column on page 657.

*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 25,000 miles (40,000 km).
*5: If a Maintenance Minder Indicator does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.





* Not available on all models

Canadian models

Maintenance Service Items

- Inspect idle speed every 256,000 km (160,000 miles).
- Adjust the valves during services A, 0, 9, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

| CODE | Maintenance Main Items |
|---|---|
| A | • Replace engine oil*1 |
| 0 | • Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter |

*1: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 24,000 km (15,000 miles).
*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 40,000 km (25,000 miles).
*5: If a Maintenance Minder Indicator does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.
#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty in the first column on page 657.

| CODE | Maintenance Sub Items |
|---|---|
| 1 | • Rotate tires |
| 2 | • Replace air cleaner element*2<br>• Replace dust and pollen filter*3<br>• Inspect drive belt |
| 3 | • Replace transmission fluid*4 |
| 4 | • Replace spark plugs<br>• Inspect valve clearance |
| 5 | • Replace engine coolant |
| 6 | • Replace rear differential fluid* |
| 7 | • Replace brake fluid*5 |
| 9 | • Service front and rear brakes<br>• Inspect these items:<br>  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots<br>  • Suspension components<br>  • Driveshaft boots<br>  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)<br>  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids<br>  • Exhaust system#<br>  • Fuel lines and connections# |

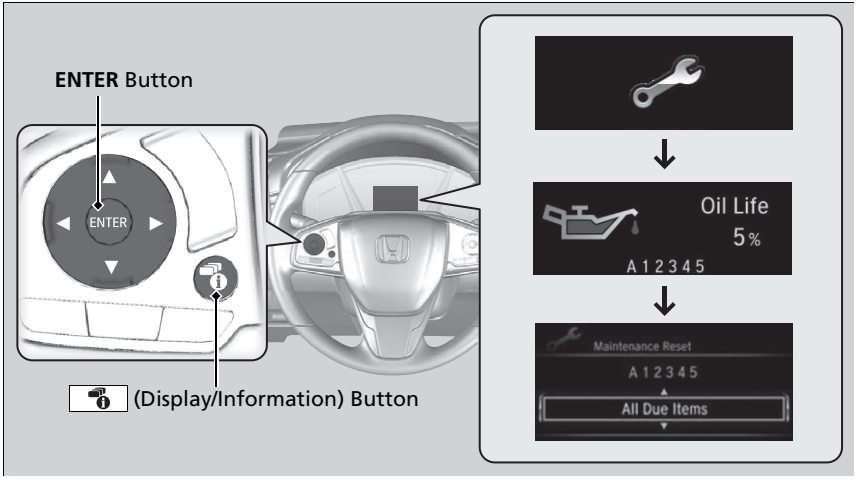


* Not available on all models

Continued

## ■ Resetting the Display

Reset the Maintenance Minder display if you have performed the maintenance service.




**1.** Turn the ignition switch to ON II*1.
**2.** Press the (display/information) button repeatedly until the appears.
**3.** Press the **ENTER** button.
**4.** Press and hold the **ENTER** button for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
**5.** Press ▲ / ▼ to select a maintenance item to reset, or to select **All Due Items** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
**6.** Press the **ENTER** button to reset the selected item.
**7.** Repeat from step 4 for other items you wish to reset.

*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the Maintenance Minder™ display yourself.

Models with Display Audio

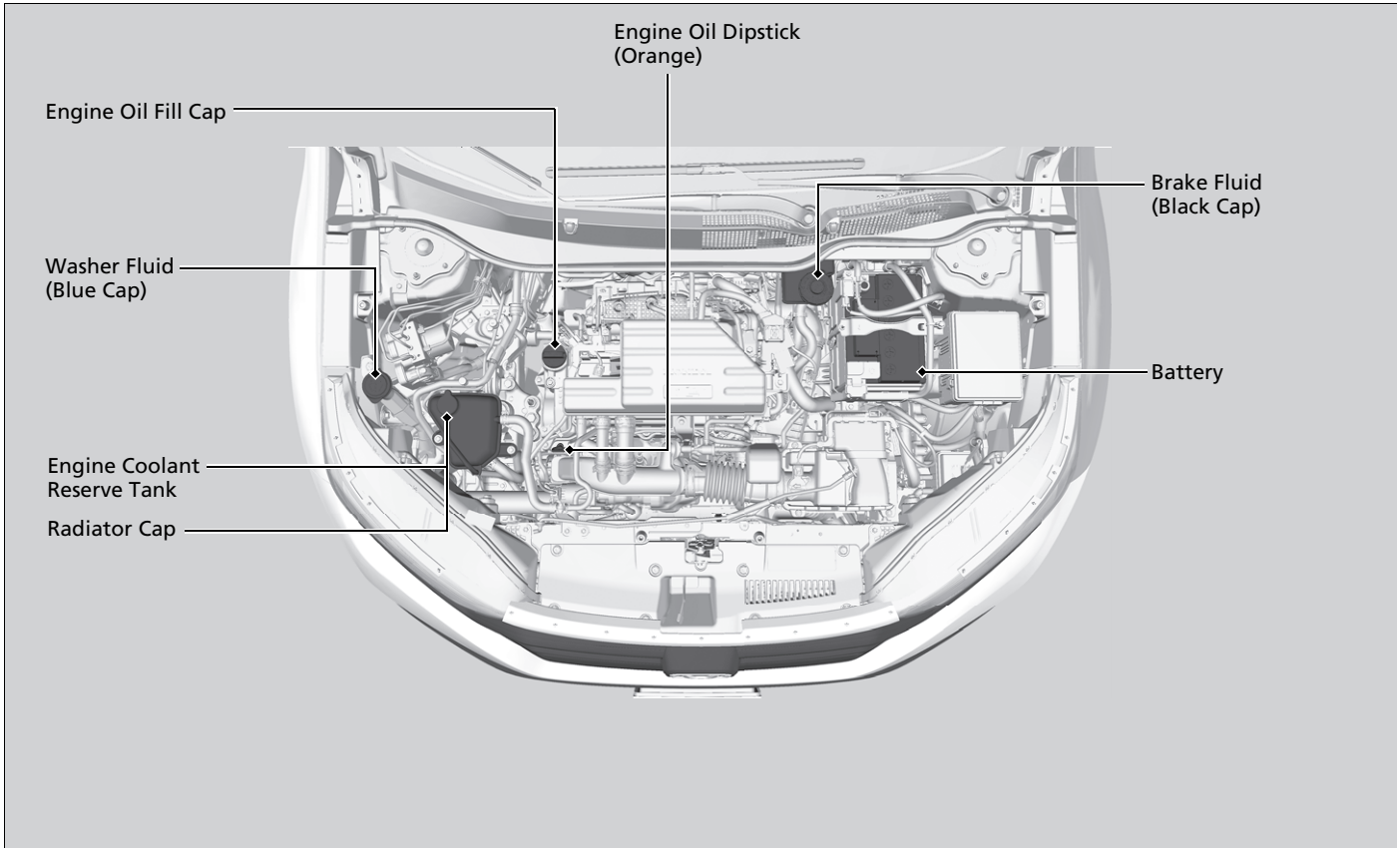
You can also reset the Maintenance Minder™ display using the audio/information screen.

➔ **How to customize** P. 366

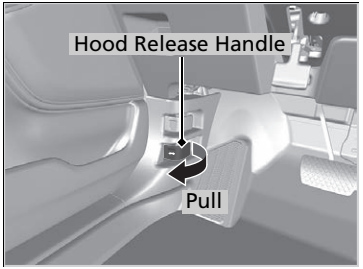
Models with color audio system

You can also reset the Maintenance Minder™ display using the driver information interface.

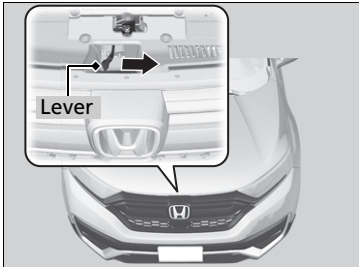
## Maintenance Items Under the Hood



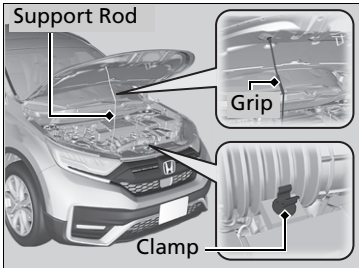
# Opening the Hood




1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the hood release handle under the lower left corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The hood will pop up slightly.




3. Push the hood latch lever (located under the front edge of the hood to the center) to the side and raise the hood. Once you have raised the hood slightly, you can release the lever.




4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the hood.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the hood. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 12 inches (30 cm) and let the hood close.

Opening the Hood

**⚠WARNING**

**The hood support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine.**
**To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod:**
**Use the foam grip instead.**

**NOTICE**

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised. The hood will strike the wipers, resulting in damage to the hood and/or the wipers.

When closing the hood, check that the hood is securely latched.

If the hood latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

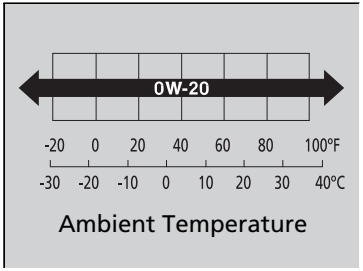
Do not open the hood while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.

# Recommended Engine Oil

- **Honda Genuine Motor Oil**
- **Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil with an API Certification Seal on the container.**

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.




Use Honda Genuine Motor Oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.

### ■ Synthetic oil

You may also use synthetic motor oil if it is labeled with the API Certification Seal and is the specified viscosity grade.

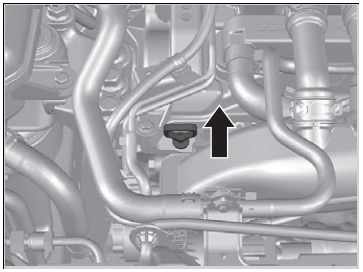
Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

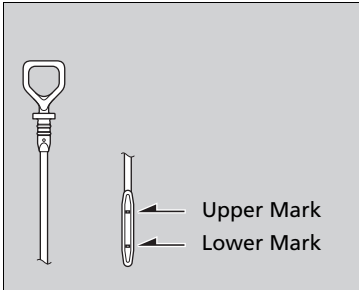
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

# Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.
Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



**1.** Remove the dipstick (orange).
**2.** Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
**3.** Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.



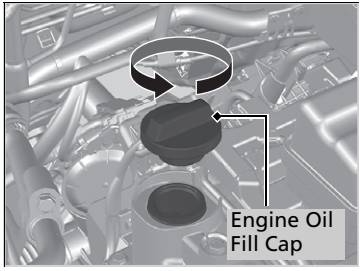

**4.** Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Under certain driving conditions, it is normal for the engine oil level to rise above the upper mark. If you have a concern, consult a dealer for details.

# Adding Engine Oil




1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

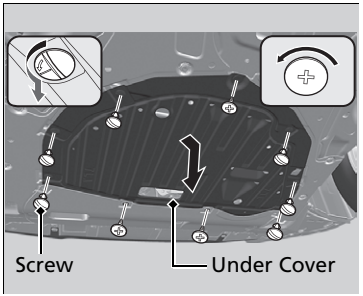
NOTICE

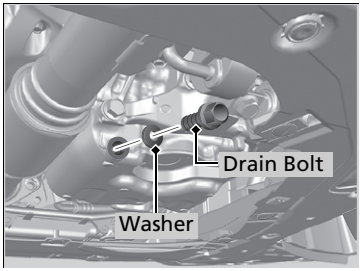
Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

# Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You must change the engine oil and oil filter regularly in order to maintain the engine's lubrication. The engine may be damaged if they are not changed regularly. Specialized equipment and procedures are required to change the engine oil and oil filter. Have an authorized Honda dealer replace them.
Do not attempt to change the engine oil and oil filter yourself.

Change the oil and filter in accordance with the maintenance message on the driver information interface.



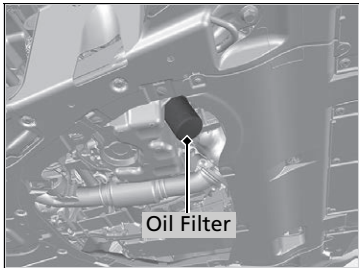




1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, and then turn the engine off.
2. Open the hood and remove the engine oil fill cap.
3. Remove the phillips head screws and slotted head screws by turning 90° counterclockwise on the undercarriage and remove the under cover.
4. Remove the drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine, and drain the oil into a suitable container.

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

NOTICE

You may damage the environment if you do not dispose of the oil in a suitable way. If you are changing the oil by yourself, appropriately dispose of the used oil. Put the oil in a sealed container and take it to a recycling center. Do not throw the oil away into a garbage can or onto the ground.




5. Remove the oil filter and dispose of the remaining oil.
6. Check that the filter gasket is not stuck to the engine contact surface.
   ▶ If it is stuck, you must detach it.
7. Wipe away dirt and dust adhering to the contact surface of the engine block, and install a new oil filter.
   ▶ Apply a light coat of new engine oil to the oil filter gasket.
8. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt.
   ▶ Tightening torque:
   30 lbf·ft (40 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)
9. Pour the recommended engine oil into the engine.
   ▶ Engine oil change capacity (including filter):
   3.7 US qt (3.5 L)
10. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap securely and start the engine.
11. Run the engine for a few minutes, and then check that there is no leak from the drain bolt or oil filter.
12. Stop the engine, wait for three minutes, and then check the oil level on the dipstick.
    ▶ If necessary, add more engine oil.
13. Reinstall the under cover in the same order it was removed.

### Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You will need a special wrench to replace the oil filter. You can buy this wrench from a dealer.

When installing the new oil filter, follow the instructions supplied with the oil filter.

Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The low oil pressure indicator should go off within five seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.

Be sure to verify that the oil filter is designed for your vehicle. A Honda genuine oil filter is recommended for optimum lubrication flow and filtration properties to assure the reliability of the engine.

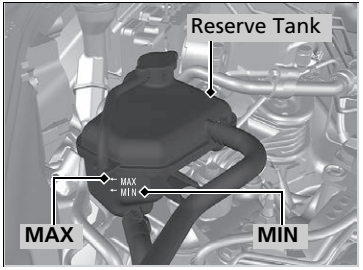
# Engine Coolant

**Specified coolant: Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2**

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

## ■ Checking the Coolant




1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

**⚠WARNING**

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

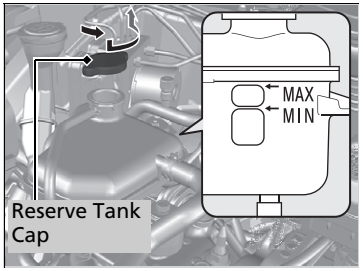
NOTICE

Genuine Honda engine coolant is a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water that can withstand freezing at temperatures as low as about -31°F (-35°C). If your vehicle is consistently subjected to temperatures below this, the concentration of antifreeze in the coolant should be increased. Consult a dealer for details.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

## ■ Adding the Coolant




1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Turn the reserve tank cap 1/8 turn counterclockwise and relieve any pressure in the coolant system.
3. Push down and turn the reserve tank cap counter-clockwise to remove it.
4. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
5. Put the reserve tank cap back on, and tighten it fully.

Adding the Coolant

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

# Transmission Fluid

## ■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

**Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2**

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid yourself.

Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

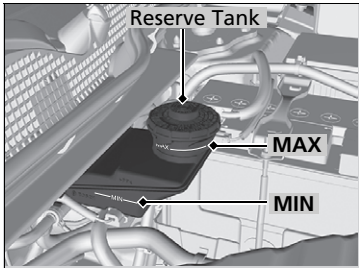
NOTICE

**Do not mix HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.**
Using a transmission fluid other than HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission. Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

# Brake Fluid

**Specified fluid: Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3**

## Checking the Brake Fluid




The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Brake Fluid

NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

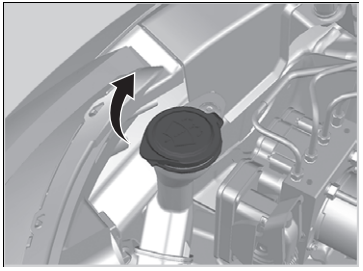
If the specified brake fluid is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid from a sealed container as a temporary replacement.

Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the longevity of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

# Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.



If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Canadian models

If the washer fluid is low, a message appears on the driver information interface.

All models

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

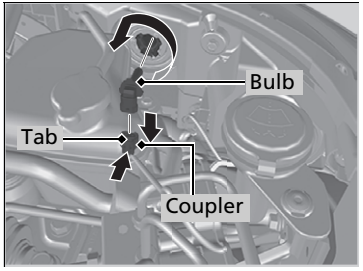
Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump.

## Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

| | |
|---|---|
| **High beam headlight:** | **60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)*<br>LED type*** |
| **Low beam headlight:** | **55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)*<br>LED type*** |

### High Beam Headlights




1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb counter-clockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

Headlight Bulbs

Models with halogen headlights

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit.
Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

Models with LED headlights

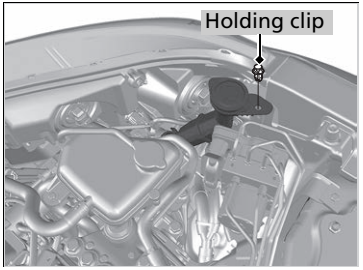
Headlights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

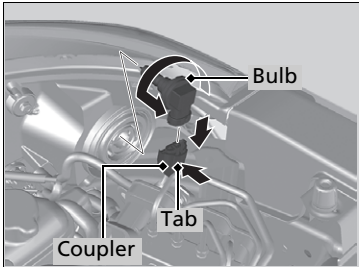


* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Low Beam Headlights




Passenger side

**1.** Remove the holding clip using a flat-tip screwdriver, then remove the upper part of the window washer reserve tank.

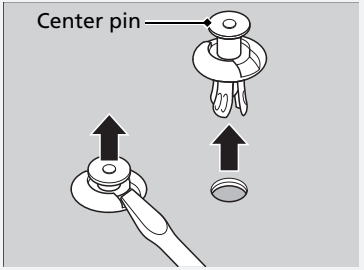
Both side

**2.** Push the tab to remove the coupler.
**3.** Rotate the old bulb counter-clockwise to remove.
**4.** Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
**5.** Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

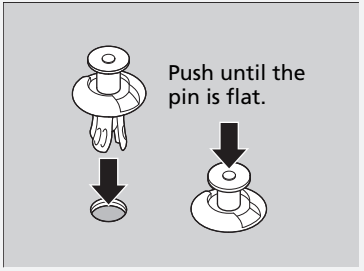
Low Beam Headlights

Holding clip

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the center pin to remove the clip.




Insert the clip with the center pin raised, and push until it is flat.



## Fog Lights*

Fog lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Parking/Daytime Running Lights

Parking/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Front Turn Signal/Front Side Marker Lights

Front turn signal lights/front side marker lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights*

Side turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Brake/Taillight, Rear Turn Signal Light and Rear Side Marker Lights

Brake/taillight, rear turn signal light and rear side marker lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

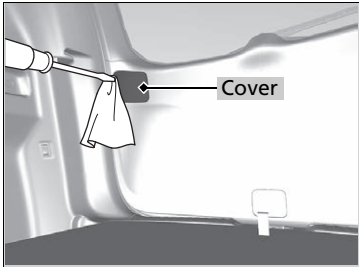


* Not available on all models

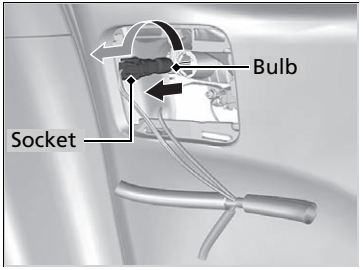
# Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Taillight: LED**
**Back-Up Light: 16W**




**1.** Remove the cover by prying on the edge using a flat-tip screwdriver.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.




**2.** Turn the socket to the left and remove it. Remove the old bulb.
**3.** Insert a new bulb.

Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Rear License Plate Light

Rear license plate light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

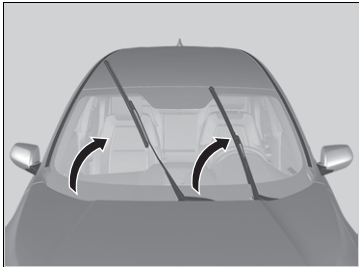
## High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

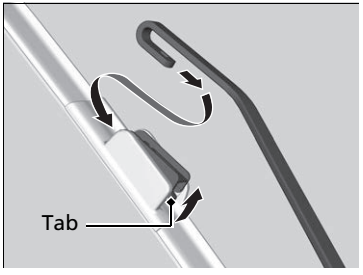
## Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks, become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

## Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



**1.** Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

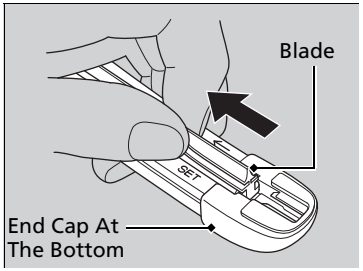



**2.** Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

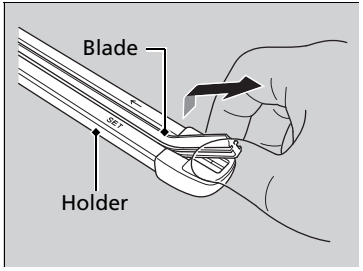
Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

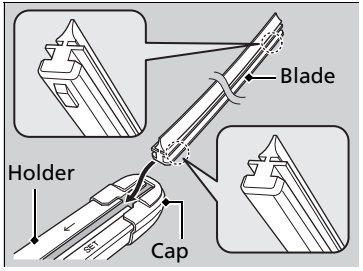
Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windshield, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windshield.




**3.** Pull the end of the wiper blade to the direction of the arrow in the image until it unfastens from the holder's end cap.

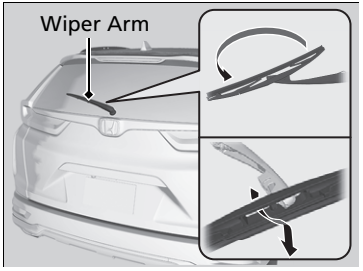



**4.** Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.

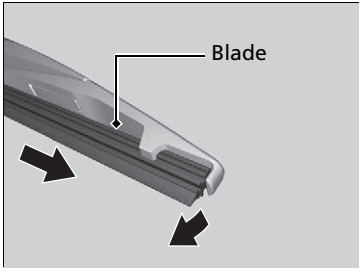



**5.** Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.
▶ The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.
**6.** Slide the holder onto the wiper arm, then push down the lock tab.
**7.** Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

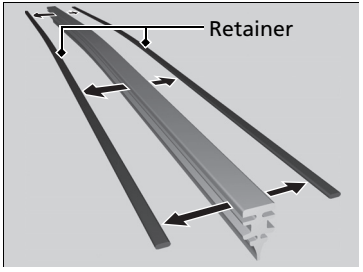
# Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber




**1.** Raise the wiper arm off.
**2.** Pivot the bottom end of the holder up until it comes off from the wiper arm.



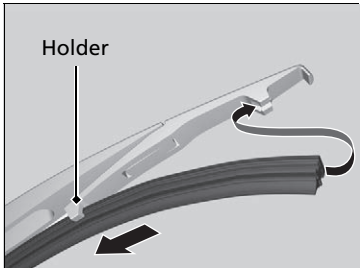

**3.** Slide the blade out of the holder.




**4.** Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE
Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the rear window.




**5.** Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
▶ Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

## Checking Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

### ■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tires provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label or specifications page for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tires make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tires. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tire gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tires, including the spare. Even tires in good condition can lose 1–2 psi (10–20 kPa, 0.1–0.2 kgf/cm$^2$) per month.

### ■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tires and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tire if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  ➧ **Wear Indicators** P. 601
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

Checking Tires

**⚠WARNING**

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tire pressure can be as much as 4–6 psi (30–40 kPa, 0.3–0.4 kgf/cm$^2$) higher than if checked when cold.

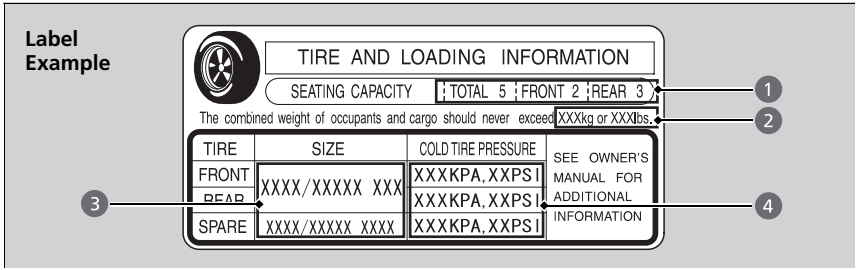
Whenever tire pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the TPMS.
➧ **Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)** P. 528

Have a dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tires and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

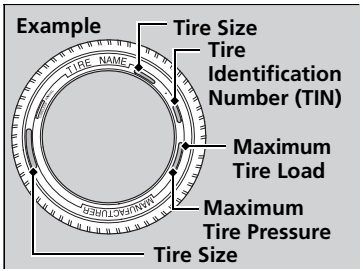
Check the spare tire pressure once a month or before long trips.

# Tire and Loading Information Label

The label attached to the driver's doorjamb provides necessary tire and loading information.




## Tire Labeling




The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described below.

### ■ Tire Sizes

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size.

**»Tire and Loading Information Label**

The tire and loading information label attached to the driver's doorjamb contains:

1. The number of people your vehicle can carry.
2. The total weight your vehicle can carry. Do not exceed this weight.
3. The original tire sizes for front, rear, and spare.
4. The proper cold tire pressure for front, rear, and spare.

**»Tire Sizes**

Following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

**P235/60 R18 102T**

P: Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).
235: Tire width in millimeters.
60: Aspect ratio (the tire's section height as a percentage of its width).
R: Tire construction code (R indicates radial).
18: Rim diameter in inches.
102: Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).
T: Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

Continued

## ■ Tire Identification Number (TIN)

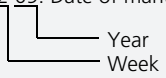
The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the example in the side column. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

## ■ Glossary of Tire Terminology

**Cold Tire Pressure** – The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).
**Load Rating** – Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.
**Maximum Inflation Pressure** – The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.
**Maximum Load Rating** – Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.
**Recommended Inflation Pressure** – The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.
**Treadwear Indicators (TWI)** – Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

**DOT B97R FW6X 2209**
DOT: This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.
B97R: Manufacturer's identification mark.
FW6X: Tire type code.
22 09: Date of manufacture.



# DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

## ■ Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

## ■ Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

For example:
**Treadwear 200**
**Traction AA**
**Temperature A**

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

*Continued*

## ■ Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

## ■ Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

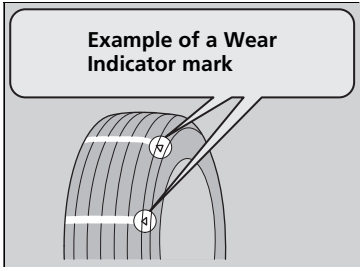
Traction

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## Wear Indicators




The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1/16 inch (about 1.6 mm) shallower than elsewhere on the tire. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tire.

**Worn out tires have poor traction on wet roads.**

## Tire Service Life

The life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. All tires, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

# Tire and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tires with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall). Using tires of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tires in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Tire and Wheel Replacement

**⚠WARNING**

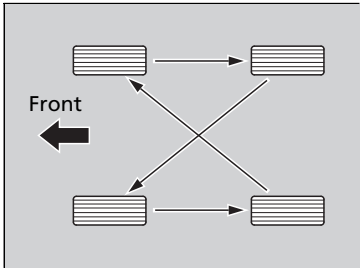
Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

# Tire Rotation

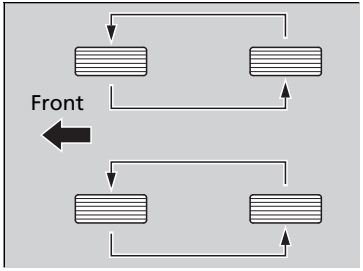
Rotating tires according to the maintenance messages on the driver information interface helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tire life.

### ■ Tires without rotation marks




Rotate the tires as shown here.

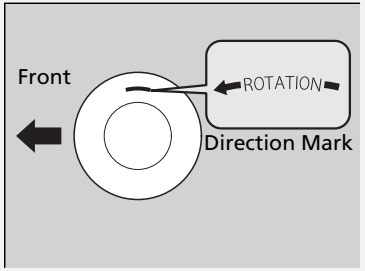
### ■ Tires with rotation marks




Rotate the tires as shown here.

## Tire Rotation

Tires with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tires should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.




Whenever tires are rotated, you must calibrate the TPMS.

**Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**
P. 528

# Winter Tires

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount all season marked "M+S" tires, snow tires, or tire chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tire chains, snow tires, or all season tires when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tires:
- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tires.
- Mount the tires to all four wheels.

For tire chains:
- Install them on the front tires only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Models with 235/65R17 tires
Models with 235/55R19 tires

**Cable-type: SCC RADIAL CHAIN TC2111MM**

Models with 235/60R18 tires

**Cable-type: SCC RADIAL CHAIN TC2212MM**

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Winter Tires

**⚠WARNING**

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

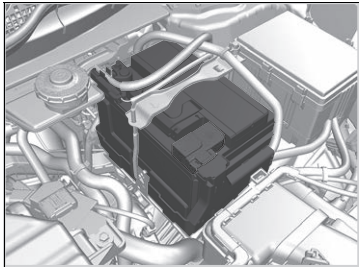
NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tire chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tires, be aware that these tires are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

## Checking the Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.
  **Audio System Theft Protection** P. 242
- The clock resets*.
  **Clock** P. 138
- Canadian models only: The immobilizer system needs to be reset.
  **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 94

Battery

**⚠WARNING**

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

When conducting any battery maintenance, wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do it.

**WARNING:** Battery post, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds.
**Wash your hands after handling.**

* Not available on all models

# Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Battery

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult a dealer for more information.

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop.
Using a battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type and size. Ask a dealer for more details.

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) System*, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)*, Low Tire Pressure/TPMS, and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1 after re-connecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



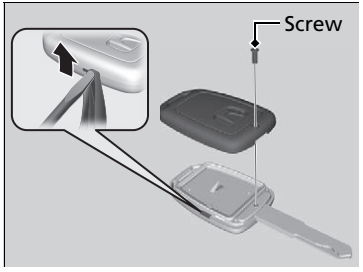


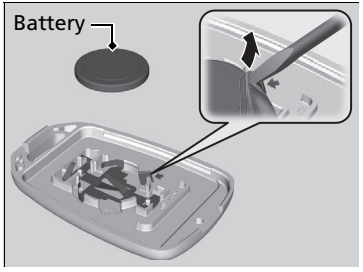
* Not available on all models

## Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

### ■ Master Keys with Remote Transmitter*




**Battery type: CR1620**

**1.** Unscrew the cover with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.

**2.** Open the remote transmitter.
▶ Wrap the small flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the transmitter.

**3.** Remove the button battery with the small flat-tip screwdriver.

**4.** Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

Replacing the Button Battery

**⚠WARNING**

**CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD**
The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed.
Keep new and used batteries away from children.
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

NOTICE
An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

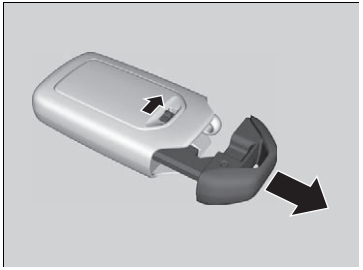
Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.



* Not available on all models

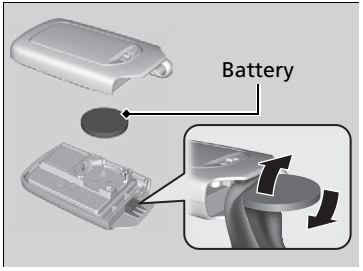
*Continued*

## ■ Smart Entry Remote*



**Battery type: CR2032**

**1.** Remove the built-in key.




**2.** Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
- ▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the remote transmitter.
- ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.

**3.** Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



 * Not available on all models

## Air Conditioning

To ensure proper and safe operation, the Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE J2845) recommends that the refrigerant system only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

New replacement mobile air conditioning evaporators must be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.

## Dust and Pollen Filter

The climate control system is equipped with a dust and pollen filter that collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air. The Maintenance Minder™ messages will let you know when to replace the filter.

We recommend that you replace the dust and pollen filter sooner when using your vehicle in areas with high concentrations of dust.

### Climate Control System Maintenance

NOTICE

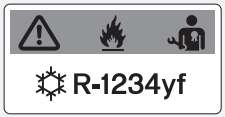
Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

Air conditioner label is found under the hood:

**Safety Labels** P. 81
**Specifications** P. 650

Canadian models




: Caution
: Flammable Refrigerant
: Requires Registered Technician to Service
: Air Conditioning System

### Dust and Pollen Filter

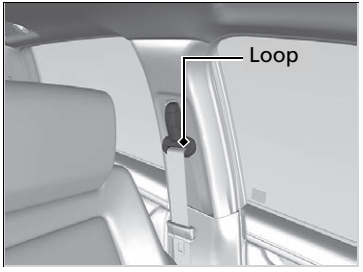
If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced. Please contact a dealer for replacement.

## Interior Care

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt. Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

### ■ Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.




### ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

**Interior Care**

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.
Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or gasoline.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

**Cleaning the Window**

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

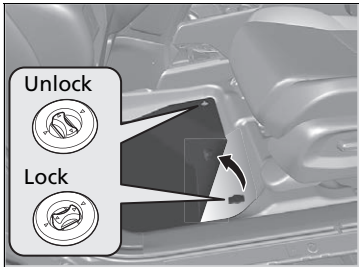
Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front sensor camera and the rainfall/light sensor*.





* Not available on all models

## Floor Mats




The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchors, which keep them from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

**Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.**

### Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors.
Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

## Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

**1.** Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
**2.** Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
**3.** Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
**4.** Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

### Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark colored clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discoloration or stains.



* Not available on all models

# Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive.
Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

## ■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

## ■ Using an Automated Car Wash

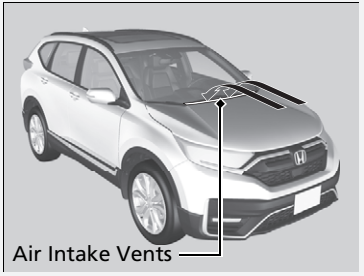
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

## ■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.




Do not spray water onto the capless unit when the fuel fill door is open. It can cause damage to the fuel system or engine.

## ■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

## ■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get gasoline, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

## ■ Maintaining Aluminum Wheels

Aluminum is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminum alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their luster or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

*Continued*

## ■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.
Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.
However, if you see large amounts water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  ➡ **Fuses** P. 641
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

## Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet federal, state, province, territory, and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

Accessories and Modifications

**⚠WARNING**

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

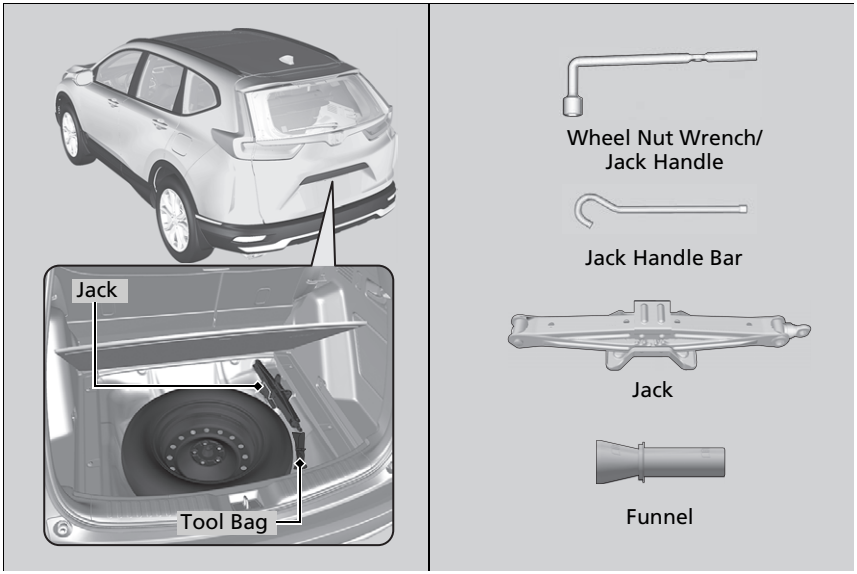
Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

# Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.


**Tools**
Types of Tools ..... 618
**If a Tire Goes Flat**
Changing a Flat Tire ..... 619
**Engine Does Not Start**
Checking the Engine ..... 626
If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak ..... 627
Emergency Engine Stop ..... 628
**If the Battery Is Dead** ..... 629
**Shift Lever Does Not Move** ..... 632
**Overheating**
How to Handle Overheating ..... 633
**Indicator, Coming On/Blinking**
If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On ..... 635
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On ..... 635
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks ..... 636
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks ..... 637
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On ..638
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On ..... 639
If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks ..... 640
**Fuses**
Fuse Locations ..... 641
Inspecting and Changing Fuses ..... 645
**Emergency Towing** ..... 646
**If You Cannot Open the Tailgate** .... 647
**Refueling** ..... 648

## Types of Tools




Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the cargo area.

## Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tire with a compact spare tire. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tire repaired or replaced.

**1.** Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface, and apply the parking brake.
**2.** Put the transmission into P.
**3.** Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*Continued*

Changing a Flat Tire

Follow compact spare precautions:
Periodically check the tire pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.
Specified Pressure: 60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm$^2$)

When driving with the compact spare tire, keep the vehicle speed under 50 mph (80 km/h). Replace with a full-size tire as soon as possible.

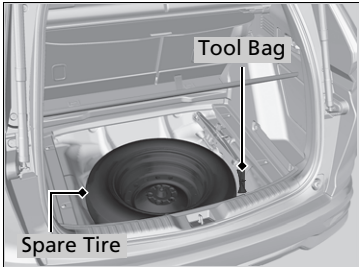
The compact spare tire and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tire or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tire chains on a compact spare tire. If a chain-mounted front tire goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tires and replace it with the compact spare tire. Remove the flat front tire and replace it with the full-size tire that was removed from the rear. Mount the tire chains on the front tire.

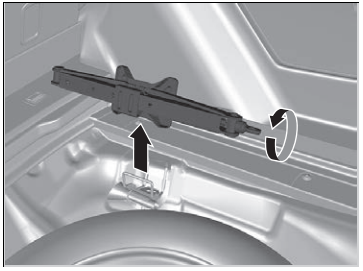
NOTICE
Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.

## ■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tire

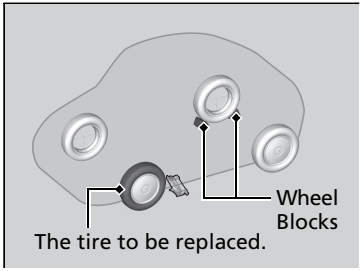
**1.** Open the cargo area floor lid.



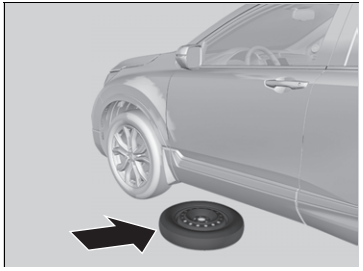

**2.** Take the tool bag out of the cargo area. Take the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar out of the tool bag.



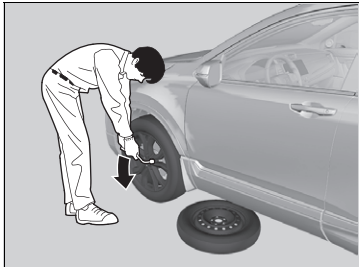
**3.** Take the jack out of the spare tire area.
**4.** Unscrew the wing bolt and remove the spacer cone. Then remove the spare tire.




**5.** Place a wheel block or rock in the front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tire.



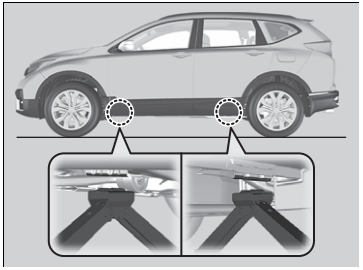
**6.** Place the compact spare tire under the vehicle body (wheel side up) near the tire that needs to be replaced.



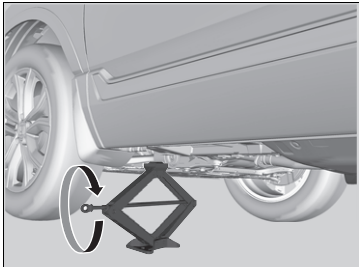
**7.** Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

*Continued*

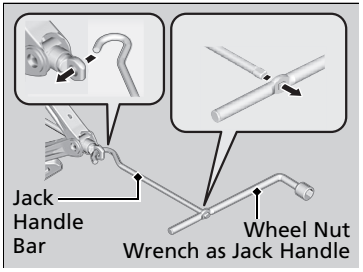
## How to Set Up the Jack



**1.** Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tire to be changed.



**2.** Turn the end bracket clockwise (as shown in image) until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.




**3.** Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tire is off the ground.

How to Set Up the Jack

**⚠WARNING**

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

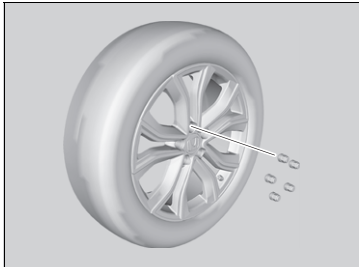
Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or their shape may not match.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

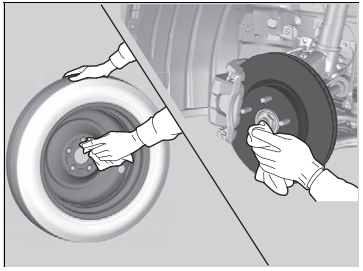
Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

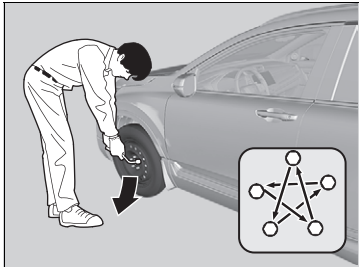
## Replacing the Flat Tire



**1.** Remove the wheel nuts and flat tire.



**2.** Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
**3.** Mount the compact spare tire.
**4.** Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.



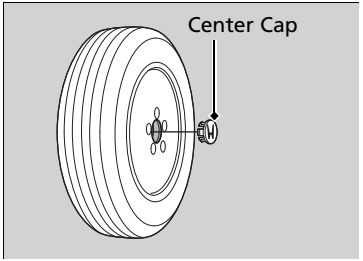
**5.** Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.
**Wheel nut torque:**
80 lbf·ft (108 N·m, 11 kgf·m)

Replacing the Flat Tire

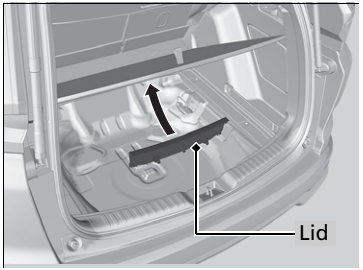
Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

*Continued*

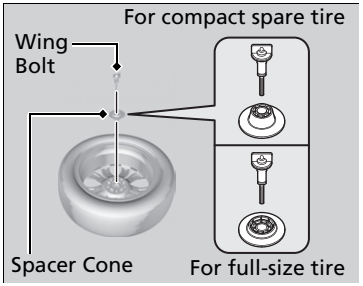
## ■ Storing the Flat Tire




**1.** Remove the center cap.




**2.** Remove the cargo area lid as shown.




**3.** Place the flat tire face down in the spare tire well.
**4.** Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tire with the wing bolt.
**5.** Securely store the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar back in the tool bag. Store the bag in the cargo area properly.
**6.** Store the jack in its holder. Turn the jack's end bracket to lock it in place.

Storing the Flat Tire

**⚠WARNING**

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

## ■ TPMS and the Compact Spare Tire

If you replace a flat tire with the spare tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few miles (kilometers), the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on. **Tire Pressures Low** appears on the driver information interface, but this is normal.

Calibrate the TPMS when you replace the tire with a specified regular tire.

➲ **TPMS Calibration** P. 529

## Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

Checking the Engine

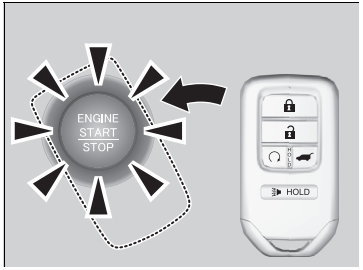
If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.
➡ **If the Battery Is Dead** P. 629

| Starter condition | Checklist |
|---|---|
| **Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly.**<br>The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly. | Models with smart entry system<br>**Check for a message on the driver information interface.**<br>• If the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears<br>➡ **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak** P. 627<br>▶Make sure the smart entry remote is in its operating range.<br>➡ **ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range** P. 176 |
| | **Check the brightness of the interior lights.**<br>Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness.<br>• If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all<br>➡ **Battery** P. 605<br>• If the interior lights come on normally ➡ **Fuses** P. 641 |
| **The starter turns over normally, but the engine doesn't start.**<br>There may be a problem with a fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly. | **Review the engine start procedure.**<br>Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 471 |
| | **Check the immobilizer system indicator.**<br>When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started.<br>➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 165 |
| | **Check the fuel level.**<br>There should be enough fuel in the tank.<br>➡ **Fuel Gauge** P. 118 |
| | **Check the fuses.**<br>Check all fuses or have the vehicle checked by a dealer.<br>➡ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 645 |
| | **If the problem continues:**<br>➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 646 |

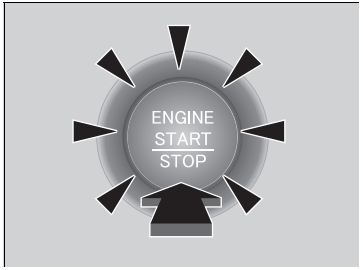
Models with smart entry system

# If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds and the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the driver information interface; and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes and the engine will not start. Start the engine as follows:




**1.** Touch the center of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the smart entry remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing.
The buttons on the smart entry remote should be facing you.
▶ The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.




**2.** Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.
▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Models with smart entry system

# Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the engine disables the power assist the engine provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Canadian models

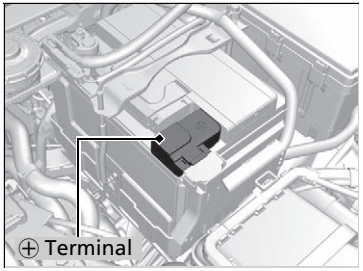
Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

Emergency Engine Stop

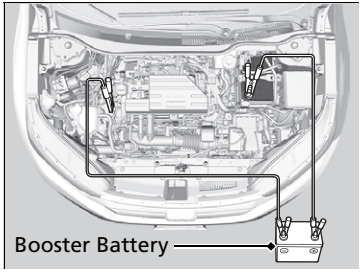
Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be switched off.
If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

## Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as the audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the hood.




**1.** Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's battery positive ⊕ terminal.
**2.** Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
**3.** Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
- ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
- ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volts. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.




**4.** Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

If the Battery Is Dead

**⚠WARNING**

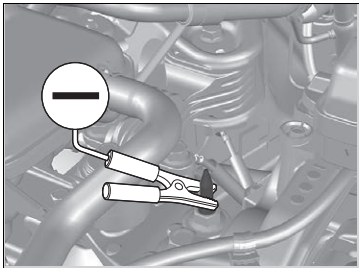
A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

*Continued*



**5.** Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt (as shown). Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
**6.** If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
**7.** Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

## What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order:

**1.** Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
**2.** Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
**3.** Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
**4.** Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

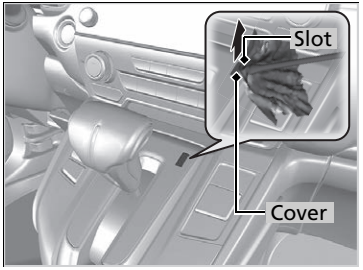
### What to Do After the Engine Starts

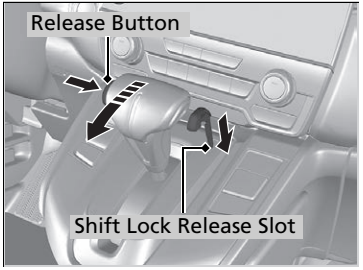
The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Road Departure Mitigation (RDM), Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system, Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF, Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™), low tire pressure/TPMS, and Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface when you turn the ignition switch to ON II*1 after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

# Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

## ■ Releasing the Lock




**1.** Set the parking brake.

Models without smart entry system

**2.** Remove the key from the ignition switch.

Models with smart entry system

**2.** Remove the built-in key from the smart entry remote.

All models

**3.** Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot (as shown in image) and remove the cover.

**4.** Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.

**5.** While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into N.

▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

## How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge needle is at the H mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
- **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

### ■ First thing to do

**1.** Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

**2.** Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the hood.

▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the hood.

How to Handle Overheating

**⚠WARNING**

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

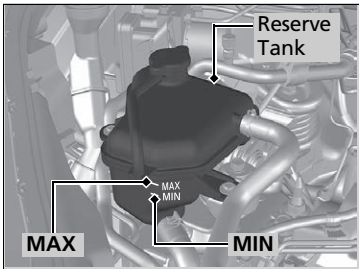
Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge needle at the H mark may damage the engine.

Continuing to drive with the **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.



*Continued*

### ■ Next thing to do




**1.** Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the temperature gauge needle goes down.
▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.

**2.** Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level, and check the cooling system components for leaks.
▶ If the coolant level, in the reserve tank is low, or no coolant in the tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the reserve tank cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. Add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark and put the cap back on.

### ■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it, and check the temperature gauge.
If the temperature gauge needle has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

How to Handle Overheating

**⚠WARNING**

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

## If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the indicator comes on**

**1.** Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.

**2.** If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

**1.** Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.

**2.** Open the hood and check the oil level.

➡ **Oil Check** P. 578

**3.** Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.

▶ The indicator goes off: Start driving again.

▶ The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

## If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Turn off the climate control system, rear defogger, and other electrical systems. Immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

# If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp comes on**

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 31 mph (50 km/h) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

# If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

U.S.

Canada

(Red)

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

■ **Reason for the indicator to blink**

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks**

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.
Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On**
P. 638

# If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

■ **If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically.**
➡ **Parking Brake** P. 534

- If the brake system indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  ▶ Preventing the vehicle from moving
  Put the transmission into P.

- If the brake system indicator (amber) comes on alone, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

# If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.
If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

# If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**

A tire pressure is significantly low, or the TPMS has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the TPMS or the compact spare tire is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Drive carefully avoiding abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tire pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tire pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the TPMS after the tire pressure is adjusted.

➔ **TPMS Calibration** P. 529

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on**

Have the tire inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tire causes the indicator to blink, change the tire to a full-size tire. The indicator will go off after driving for a few miles (kilometers).

▶ Calibrate the TPMS after a full-size tire is reinstalled.

➔ **TPMS Calibration** P. 529

If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tire can cause it to overheat. An overheated tire can fail. Always inflate your tires to the prescribed level.

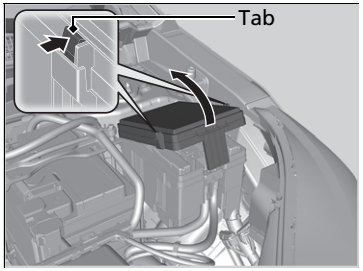
## Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1 and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

### ■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Located near the brake fluid reservoir. Push the tabs to open the box.




### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

| | Circuit Protected | Amps |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | VST 1 | (30 A) |
| | Electric Brake Booster | 40 A |
| | Main Fan Motor | 30 A |
| | Relay Module 1 | 30 A |
| | IG Main 2*2 | 30 A |
| | –*3 | – |
| | Relay Module 2 | 30 A |
| | Battery | 125 A |
| 2 | EPS | 70 A |
| | IG Main 1 | 30 A*2<br>50 A*3 |
| | Fuse Box Option | 40 A |
| | Fuse Box 1 | 60 A |
| | Front Wiper Motor | 30 A |
| | Sub Fan Motor | 30 A |
| 3 | Rear Defroster | 40 A |
| | Starter Motor | 30 A |
| | Fuse Box 2 | 40 A |
| | ABS/VSA Motor | 40 A |
| | ABS/VSA FSR | 40 A |
| | Blower Motor | 40 A |
| 4 | Option Block 1*2 | (40 A) |
| | –*3 | – |
| | Option Block 2*2 | (40 A) |
| | –*3 | – |
| | VST 2 | (30 A) |
| | Power Tail Gate*2 | (40 A) |
| | –*3 | – |
| 5 | VB ACT | 7.5 A |
| 6 | Washer | 15 A |
| 7 | FI Main | 15 A |
| 8 | FI Sub | 15 A |
| 9 | Stop Lights | 10 A |
| 10 | Injector | 20 A |
| 11 | LAF | 7.5 A |

*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.
*2:Models with smart entry system
*3:Models without smart entry system

| | Circuit Protected | Amps |
|---|---|---|
| 12 | FI ECU | 10 A |
| 13 | Front Wiper Deicer*1<br>–*2 | (15 A)<br>– |
| 14 | Hazard | 10 A |
| 15 | IG Coil | 15 A |
| 16 | Transmission | 15 A |
| 17 | – | – |
| 18 | Back Up | 10 A |
| 19 | – | – |
| 20 | E-DPS* | (20 A) |
| 21 | Rear Seat Heater*1<br>–*2 | (20 A)<br>– |
| 22 | Front Fog Lights*/Lower Shutter Grille | (10 A) |
| 23 | Magnetic Clutch/Upper Shutter Grille*3<br>VMP MAIN*4 | 10 A<br>(20 A) |
| 24 | Horn | 10 A |
| 25 | Cooling Fan | 7.5 A |
| 26 | – | – |
| 27 | Back Up 2 | (30 A) |
| 28 | ST Magnetic Switch | (7.5 A) |
| 29 | – | – |
| 30 | – | – |
| 31 | VMP*4 | (10 A) |
| 32 | –*4 | – |
| 33 | –*4 | – |
| 34 | USB Charger*4 | (7.5 A) |
| 35 | –*4 | – |
| 36 | –*4 | – |

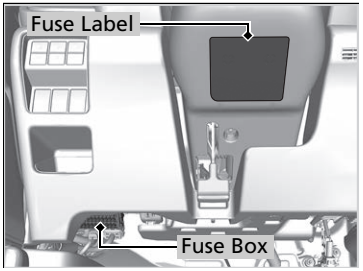
*1:Models with smart entry system
*2:Models without smart entry system
*3:Models without navigation system
*4:Models with navigation system

* Not available on all models

## Interior Fuse Box

### Fuse Box A

Located under the dashboard.




Fuse locations are shown on the label on the steering column lower cover.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

| | Circuit Protected | Amps |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Accessory | 10 A |
| 2 | Key Lock | 5 A |
| 3 | Option 3 | 10 A |
| 4 | Option 2*1<br>Transmission*2 | 5 A<br>(10 A) |
| 5 | Option | 10 A |
| 6 | SRS Indicator | 10 A |
| 7 | Meter | 10 A |
| 8 | Fuel Pump | 15 A |
| 9 | A/C | 10 A |
| 10 | Accessory Power Socket (Center Console) | (20 A) |
| 11 | Engine Control | 5 A |
| 12 | Passenger's Side Door Lock | 10 A |
| 13 | Driver's Side Door Unlock | 10 A |
| 14 | Rear Driver's Side Power Window | 20 A |
| 15 | Front Passenger's Side Power Window | 20 A |
| 16 | Door Lock | 20 A |
| 17 | Transmission*1<br>Option 2*2 | (10 A)<br>5 A |
| 18 | Front Driver's Lumber support* | (10 A) |
| 19 | Moonroof* | (20 A) |
| 20 | Starter | 10 A |
| 21 | ACG | 10 A |
| 22 | Daytime Running Light | 10 A |
| 23 | Steering Wheel Heater* | (10 A) |
| 24 | Option | 5 A |
| 25 | Driver's Door Lock | (10 A) |
| 26 | Passenger's Side Door Unlock | 10 A |
| 27 | Rear Passenger's Side Power Window | 20 A |
| 28 | Driver's Power Window | 20 A |
| 29 | Front Accessory Power Socket | 20 A |
| 30 | Smart Entry*1<br>STS*2 | 10 A<br>5 A |
| 31 | Driver's Power Seat Reclining* | (20 A) |
| 32 | Front Seat Heater* | (20 A) |
| 33 | Driver's Power Seat Sliding* | (20 A) |
| 34 | ABS/VSA | 10 A |
| 35 | SRS | 10 A |
| 36 | HAC Option* | 20 A |
| 37 | Trailer | 15 A |
| 38 | Driver's Side Door Lock | 10 A |
| 39 | Driver's Door Unlock | (10 A) |
| a | Power Tailgate Closer* | (20 A) |
| b | Passenger's Power Seat Sliding* | (20 A) |
| c | Passenger's Power Seat Reclining* | (20 A) |
| d | Panorama Shade Motor | (20 A) |
| e | Audio Amp | (20 A) |
| f | EPT L | (20 A) |
| g | EPT R | (20 A) |
| h | Accessory Power Socket (Cargo Area) | (20 A) |

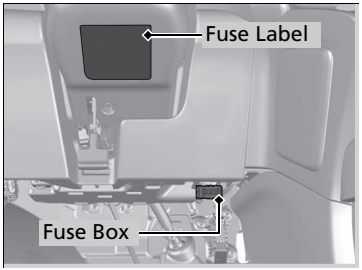
*1:Models with smart entry system
*2:Models without smart entry system

* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Fuse Box B

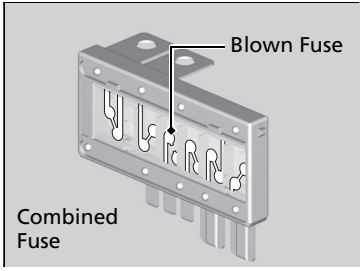
Located under the dashboard.
Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

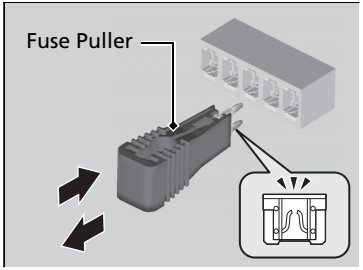



## ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

| | Circuit Protected | Amps |
|---|---|---|
| A | VST ACC1 | 5 A |
| B | +B BACKUP2 MAIN | 15 A |
| C | +B EOP | 7.5 A |
| D | +B VSA | 5 A |
| E | IG1 VSA1 | 7.5 A |
| F | IG1 METER VST | 5 A |
| G | IG1 VSA2 | 7.5 A |

# Inspecting and Changing Fuses




1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK 0*1. Turn the headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
   ▶ If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.
4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
   ▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller, and replace it with a new one.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/SOTP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specific amperage on the fuse label.

**Fuse Locations** P. 641

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

# Emergency Towing

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

All models

■ **Flat bed equipment**

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
**This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

2WD models

■ **Wheel lift equipment**

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tires and lift them off the ground. The rear tires remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

NOTICE

Improper towing, such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

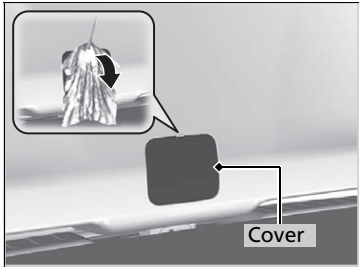
2WD models

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flat bed equipment.

**Parking Brake** P. 534

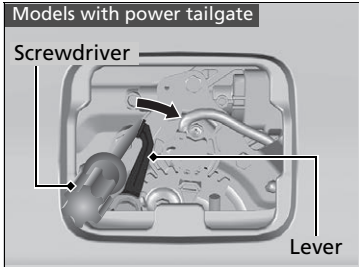
## What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure:



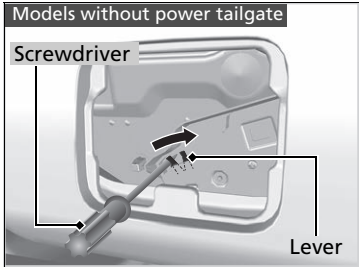

**1.** Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the inside of the tailgate.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

Models with power tailgate




**2.** To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while pushing the lever to the right using a flat-tip screw driver.

Models without power tailgate



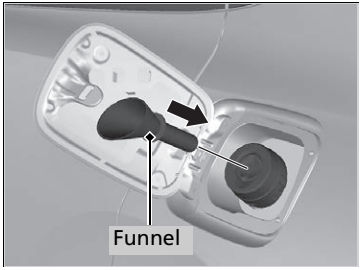

If You Cannot Open the Tailgate

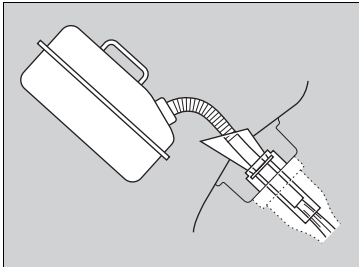
Following up:
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

## Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container

If you have run out of fuel and need to refuel your vehicle from a portable fuel container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.



1. Turn off the engine.
2. Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
   ▶ The fuel fill door opens.
3. Take the funnel out of the tool case in the cargo area.
   ➡ **Types of Tools** P. 618
4. Place the end of the funnel on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.
   ▶ Make sure that the end of the funnel goes down along with the filler pipe.
5. Fill the tank with fuel from the portable fuel container.
   ▶ Pour fuel carefully so you do not spill any.
6. Remove the funnel from the filler neck.
   ▶ Wipe up any fuel from the funnel before storing it.
7. Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container

**⚠WARNING**

**Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.**

- **Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.**
- **Handle fuel only outdoors.**
- **Wipe up spills immediately.**

NOTICE

Do not insert the nozzle of a portable fuel container or any funnel other than the one provided with your vehicle. Doing so can damage the fuel system.
Do not try to pry open or push open the sealed fuel tank with foreign objects. This can damage the fuel system and its seal.

Make sure the fuel in the portable fuel container is gasoline before you refuel.

# Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

**Specifications** ..... 650
**Identification Numbers**
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number ..... 652
**Devices that Emit Radio Waves** ..... 653
**Reporting Safety Defects** ..... 654
**Emissions Testing**
Testing of Readiness Codes ..... 655
**Warranty Coverages** ..... 657
**Authorized Manuals** ..... 660
**Customer Service Information** ..... 661

## Vehicle Specifications

| | |
|---|---|
| Model | CR-V |
| No. of Passengers: | |
| Front | 2 |
| Rear | 3 |
| Total | 5 |
| Weights: | |
| Gross Vehicle Weight Rating | See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb |
| Gross Axle Weight Rating (Front) | See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb |
| Gross Axle Weight Rating (Rear) | See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb |

## Air Conditioning

| | |
|---|---|
| Refrigerant Type | HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf) |
| Charge Quantity | 15.3 – 17.1 oz (435 – 485 g) |
| Lubricant Type | RL85HM (POE) |
| Quantity | 4.70 - 6.28 cu-in (77 – 103 $cm^3$) |

## Engine Specifications

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Displacement | 91.38 cu-in (1,498 $cm^3$) | |
| Spark Plugs | NGK | ILZKAR8J8SY |

## Fuel

| | |
|---|---|
| Type | Unleaded gasoline, Pump octane number of 87 or higher |
| Fuel Tank Capacity | 14 US gal (53 L) |

## Washer Fluid

| | |
|---|---|
| Tank Capacity | U.S.: 2.6 US qt (2.5 L)<br>Canada: 4.8 US qt (4.5 L) |

## Light Bulbs

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Headlights (Low Beam) | | 55 W (H11)*<br>LED* |
| Headlights (High Beam) | | 60 W (HB3)*<br>LED* |
| Fog Lights* | | LED |
| Front Turn Signal/ Front Side Marker Lights | | LED |
| Parking/Daytime Running Lights | | LED |
| Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)* | | LED |
| Brake/Taillights/Rear Turn Signal/ Rear Side Marker Lights | | LED |
| Back-Up Lights | | 16 W |
| Taillights | | LED |
| High-Mount Brake Light | | LED |
| Rear License Plate Light | | LED |
| Interior Lights | | |
| | Map Lights | 8 W*<br>LED* |
| | Ceiling Light | 8 W*<br>LED* |
| | Cargo Area Lights | 5 W |
| | Vanity Mirror Lights* | 1.4 W |





* Not available on all models

## ■ Brake Fluid

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Specified | Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 | |

## ■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Specified | Honda HCF-2 | |
| Capacity | Change | 3.9 US qt (3.7 L)*1<br>4.5 US qt (4.3 L)*2 |

*1: 2WD models
*2: AWD models

## ■ Rear Differential Fluid*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Specified | Honda DPSF-II | |
| Capacity | Change | 1.32 US qt (1.247 L) |

## ■ Engine Oil

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Recommended | ·Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20<br>·API Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil | |
| Capacity | Change | 3.4 US qt (3.2 L) |
| | Change including filter | 3.7 US qt (3.5 L) |

## ■ Engine Coolant

| | |
|---|---|
| Specified | Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type2 |
| Ratio | 50/50 with distilled water |
| Capacity | 1.64 US gal (6.19 L)<br>(change including the remaining 0.2 US gal (0.75 L) in the reserve tank) |

## ■ Tire

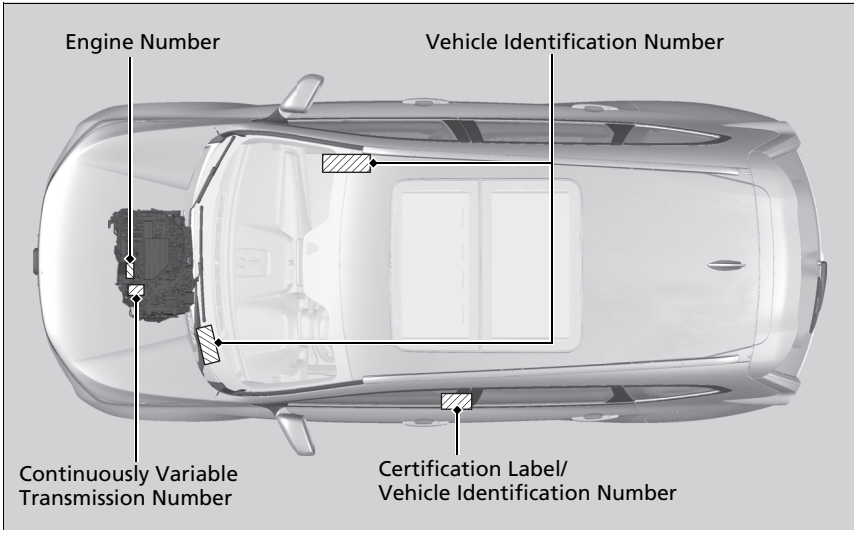
| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Regular | Size*1 | 235/65R17 104H | |
| | Pressure*1 psi (kPa [kgf/cm²]) | Front | 32 (220 [2.2]) |
| | | Rear | 30 (210 [2.1]) |
| | Size*2 | 235/60R18 103H | |
| | Pressure*2 psi (kPa [kgf/cm²]) | Front | 33 (230 [2.3]) |
| | | Rear | 30 (210 [2.1]) |
| | Size*3 | 235/55R19 101H | |
| | Pressure*3 psi (kPa [kgf/cm²]) | Front | 33 (230 [2.3]) |
| | | Rear | 33 (230 [2.3]) |
| Compact Spare | Size | T155/90D17 112M | |
| | Pressure psi (kPa [kgf/cm²]) | 60 (420 [4.2]) | |
| Wheel Size | Regular | 17 x 7 1/2J*1<br>18 x 7 1/2J*2<br>19 x 7 1/2J*3 | |
| | Compact Spare | 17 x 4T | |

*1: Models with 17 inch wheel
*2: Models with 18 inch wheel
*3: Models with 19 inch wheel

* Not available on all models

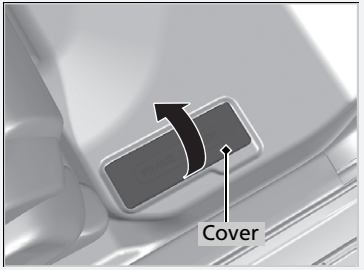
## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.
The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, and transmission number are shown as follows:




Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



Each radio frequency device installed in the vehicle conforms to the requirements and standards of the regulation listed below:

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

In the U.S.
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

In Canada
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Honda Canada Inc. and you may also inform Transport Canada.

If Transport Canada receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may lead to a recall and remedy campaign. However, Transport Canada cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Honda Canada Inc.

To contact Transport Canada's Defect Investigations and Recalls Division, you may call 1-800-333-0510. For more information on reporting safety defects or about motor vehicle safety, go to *http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety*.

## Testing of Readiness Codes

Your vehicle has readiness code as part of the onboard self diagnostic system. Some states use these codes for testing to verify whether your vehicle's emissions components are working properly.
The codes may not be read properly if testing is performed just after the battery has gone dead or been disconnected.

To check if they are set, turn the ignition switch to ON [II]*1, without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for several seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set.

If you are required to have your vehicle tested before the readiness codes are ready, prepare the vehicle for retesting by doing the following:

**1.** Fill the gas tank to approximately 3/4 full.
**2.** Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 6 hours or more.
**3.** Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40°F and 95°F (4°C and 35°C).
**4.** Start the engine without touching the accelerator pedal, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
**5.** Keep the vehicle in [P]. Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there for about 3 minutes.
**6.** Let the engine idle with your foot off the accelerator for 20 seconds.

*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

*Continued*

Testing of Readiness Codes

The readiness codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If a testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you may be requested to return at a later date to complete the test.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see a dealer.

**7.** Select a nearby, lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in D. Do not use cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).

**8.** Drive in city or suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.

**9.** Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 30 minutes.

■ **U.S. Owners**
Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

***New Vehicle Limited Warranty –*** covers your new vehicle, except for the emissions control systems and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

***Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty –*** these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

***Seat Belt Limited Warranty –*** a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

***Rust Perforation Limited Warranty –*** all exterior body panels are covered against rusting from the inside out for the specified time period, regardless of mileage.

***Accessory Limited Warranty –*** Honda accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

***Replacement Parts Limited Warranty –*** covers all Honda replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.



*Continued*

***Replacement Battery Limited Warranty –*** provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from your dealer.

***Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty –*** provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the Honda warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

**■ Statement on Warranty Coverage for Aftermarket and Recycled Parts**

The Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. s.2301 et seq., makes it illegal for motor vehicle manufacturers to void a motor vehicle warranty or deny warranty coverage solely because an aftermarket or recycled part has been used to repair the vehicle or someone other than the authorized service provider performed service on the vehicle. This provision does not apply to a new motor vehicle purchased solely for commercial or industrial use.

Under federal law, a manufacturer may deny warranty coverage and charge for repairs to a vehicle if it is discovered that an aftermarket or recycled part installed on the vehicle is defective or was installed incorrectly and caused damage to another part of the vehicle otherwise covered under warranty. The Federal Trade Commission requires that a manufacturer demonstrate that an aftermarket or recycled part or service performed by a person other than an authorized service provider caused damage to another part of the vehicle otherwise covered under warranty before denying warranty coverage. Additionally, federal law allows a manufacturer to void a motor vehicle warranty or deny warranty coverage if the manufacturer provides the article or service to consumers free of charge under the warranty or the manufacturer has secured a waiver from the Federal Trade Commission.

### ■ Canadian Owners

Please refer to the warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

### ■ EPA Contact Information

An owner may obtain further information concerning emission warranties or report violations of the terms of the emission warranties by contacting:

Director,
Light-Duty Vehicle Center,
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency,
Attention: Warranty Claim
2000 Traverwood Drive,
Ann Arbor, MI 48105;
complianceinfo@epa.gov

■ **Service Express**
For electronic copies of service publications, you can purchase a subscription to Service Express. Visit *www.techinfo.honda.com* for pricing and options.

■ **For U.S. Owners**
Manuals can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order a manual by phone at 1 (800) 782-4356 (credit card orders only), or online at *www.helminc.com*.

■ **For Canadian Owners**
Please contact a dealer to order any manuals that you may require.

Honda dealership personnel are trained professionals who should be able to deal with any problems you may encounter with your vehicle. If, however, you are faced with a problem that they cannot resolve to your satisfaction, contact Honda Client Relations/Services.

**U.S. Owners**
American Honda Motor Co., Inc.
Honda Automobile Customer Services
Mail Stop 100-5E-8A
1919 Torrance Blvd.
Torrance, CA 90501-2746
Tel: 1 (800) 999-1009

**Canadian Owners**
Honda Canada Inc.
Customer Relations
180 Honda Boulevard
Markham, ON
L6C 0H9
Tel: 1-888-9-HONDA-9
Fax: 1-877-939-0909
E-mail: Honda_cr@ch.honda.com

**In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands**
Bella International
P.O. Box 190816
San Juan, PR 00919-0816
Tel: 1 (787) 620-7546

Customer Service Information

When you call or write, please give us the following information:
- Vehicle Identification Number
  ➡ **Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, and Transmission Number** P. 652
- Date of purchase
- Odometer reading of your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you

*Continued*

## ■ Disclaimer of Pandora®*

Requirements to access Pandora®

- Latest version of the Pandora app installed on your Android, Blackberry, or iPhone.
- Registered Pandora account (you can create a free account at *www.pandora.com* <*http://www.pandora.com/*> or on your smartphone)
- Connection to the internet via Wi-Fi or cellular data network.

Limitations

- Access to Pandora requires an active internet connection
- Ability to access Pandora through this system is subject to change without notice
- Certain functionality of Pandora service is not available when accessing the service through this system including, but not limited to, creating new stations, deleting stations, emailing current stations, buying tracks, viewing additional text information, logging in to Pandora, and adjusting Cell Network Audio Quality. Pandora internet radio is a music service not affiliated with HONDA. More information is available at *http:// www.pandora.com* <*http://www.pandora.com/*>. Pandora, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission.
- Mobile access requires a smartphone with an active data plan. Standard data rates may apply.
- Pandora is only available in the United States.





* Not available on all models

## Numbers

4WD ..... 527

## A

AAC ..... 260, 316
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) ..... 540
Accessories and Modifications ..... 615
Accessory Power Sockets ..... 222
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ..... 491
Adding the Coolant ..... 583
Additives
  Coolant ..... 582
  Engine Oil ..... 577
  Washer ..... 586
Additives, Engine Oil ..... 577
Adjusting
  Armrest ..... 212
  Front Seats ..... 203
  Head Restraints ..... 209
  Mirrors ..... 201
  Rear Seats ..... 207
  Steering Wheel ..... 200
  Temperature ..... 125
Adjusting the Sound ..... 251, 289
Agile Handling Assist ..... 521
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) ..... 233
  Changing the Mode ..... 234
  Defrosting the Windshield and Windows ..... 234
  Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 609
  Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode ..... 234
  Sensor ..... 237
  Synchronization Mode ..... 236
  Using Automatic Climate Control ..... 233
Air Pressure ..... 597, 651
Airbags ..... 50
  Advanced Airbags ..... 56
  Airbag Care ..... 65
  Event Data Recorder ..... 0
  Front Airbags (SRS) ..... 53
  Indicator ..... 62, 89
  Passenger Airbag Off Indicator ..... 63
  Sensors ..... 50
  Side Airbags ..... 58
  Side Curtain Airbags ..... 60
All-Wheel Drive (AWD) ..... 527
AM/FM Radio ..... 253, 296
Android Auto™ ..... 333
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 540
  Indicator ..... 89
Apple CarPlay™ ..... 330
Armrest ..... 212
Audio Remote Controls ..... 243
Audio System ..... 240, 246, 267
  Adjusting the Sound ..... 251, 289
  AM/FM Radio ..... 253, 296
  Android Auto™ ..... 333
  Apple CarPlay™ ..... 330
  Audio/Information Screen ..... 247, 268
  Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout ..... 272
  Changing the Screen Interface ..... 286
  Closing Apps ..... 288
  Customizing the Meter ..... 273
  Display Setup ..... 252, 290
  Error Messages ..... 337
  General Information ..... 342
  Home Screen ..... 279
  HondaLink® ..... 322
  How to use Siri ® Eyes Free ..... 266, 329
  iPod ..... 255, 307
  Limitations for Manual Operation ..... 291
  Menu Customize ..... 287
  MP3/WMA/AAC ..... 260, 316
  MP4 ..... 316
  Pandora® ..... 258, 314
  Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio ..... 263, 319
  Playing SiriusXM® Radio ..... 300
  Reactivating ..... 242
  Recommended Devices ..... 343
  Remote Controls ..... 243
  Security Code ..... 242
  Selecting an Audio Source ..... 291
  Song By Voice™ (SBV) ..... 310
  Status Area ..... 285
  Theft Protection ..... 242
  USB Flash Drives ..... 260, 316, 343
  USB Port(s) ..... 241
  Voice Control Operation ..... 292
  Wallpaper Setup ..... 249, 277

WAV ..... 260
Wi-Fi Connection ..... 327
Audio/Information Screen ..... 247, 268
Authorized Manuals ..... 660
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking ..... 153
Customize ..... 133
Auto High-Beam ..... 186
Auto Idle Stop ..... 482
OFF Button ..... 483
Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green) ..... 95
Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber) ..... 96
Automatic Brake Hold ..... 538
Indicator ..... 86, 538
Automatic Intermittent Wipers ..... 192
Automatic Lighting ..... 182
Average Fuel Economy ..... 121
Average Speed ..... 121
AWD (All-Wheel Drive) ..... 527

## B

Battery ..... 605
Charging System Indicator ..... 87, 635
If the Battery Is Dead ..... 629
Maintenance (Checking the Battery) ..... 605
Maintenance (Replacing) ..... 607
Belts (Seat) ..... 41
Beverage Holders ..... 220
Blind spot information System ..... 522
Indicator ..... 95
*Bluetooth*® Audio ..... 263, 319
*Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® ..... 396, 420
Booster Seats (For Children) ..... 79
Brake System ..... 534
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 540
Automatic Brake Hold ..... 538
Brake Assist System ..... 541
Fluid ..... 585
Foot Brake ..... 537
Indicator (Red) ..... 84, 637, 638
Parking Brake ..... 534
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) ..... 194
Bulb Replacement ..... 587
Brake/Taillight, Rear Turn Signal Light and Rear Side Marker Lights ..... 589
Fog Lights ..... 589
Front Turn Signal/ Front Side Marker Lights ..... 589
Headlights ..... 587
High-Mount Brake Light ..... 591
Parking/Daytime Running Lights ..... 589
Rear License Plate Light ..... 591
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights ..... 589
Taillight and Back-Up Lights ..... 590
Bulb Specifications ..... 650

## C

Caller ID Information ..... 407
Carbon Monoxide Gas ..... 80
Cargo Hooks ..... 227
Carrying Cargo ..... 459, 461
Certification Label ..... 652
Changing Bulbs ..... 587
Charging System Indicator ..... 87, 635
Child Safety ..... 66
Childproof Door Locks ..... 152
Child Seat ..... 66
Booster Seats ..... 79
Child Seat for Infants ..... 68
Child Seat for Small Children ..... 69
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt ..... 74
Larger Children ..... 78
Rear-facing Child Seat ..... 68
Selecting a Child Seat ..... 70
Childproof Door Locks ..... 152
Cleaning the Exterior ..... 612
Cleaning the Interior ..... 610
Climate Control System ..... 233
Changing the Mode ..... 233
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows ..... 234
Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 609
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode ..... 234
Sensors ..... 237
Synchronization Mode ..... 236
Using Automatic Climate Control ..... 233
Clock ..... 138
CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™) ..... 542

Coat Hook ..... 226
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) ..... 542
Compact Spare Tire ..... 619, 651
Compass ..... 454
Continuously Variable Transmission ..... 479
Creeping ..... 479
Fluid ..... 584
Kickdown ..... 479
Operating the Shift Lever ..... 25, 481
Shift Lever Does Not Move ..... 632
Shifting ..... 480
Controls ..... 137
Coolant (Engine) ..... 582
Adding the Coolant ..... 583
Overheating ..... 633
Creeping (Continuously Variable Transmission) ..... 479
Cross Traffic Monitor ..... 554
Cup Holders ..... 220
Customer Service Information ..... 661
Customized Features ..... 127, 359, 366

## D

Daytime Running Lights ..... 190
Dead Battery ..... 629
Defaulting All the Settings ..... 392
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows ..... 234
Detachable Anchor ..... 47
Devices that Emit Radio Waves ..... 653
Dimming
Headlights ..... 181
Rearview Mirror ..... 201
Dipstick (Engine Oil) ..... 578
Directional Signals (Turn Signals) ..... 180
Display Setup ..... 252, 290
Display/Information Button ..... 119
Door Mirrors ..... 202
Doors ..... 140
Auto Door Locking ..... 153
Auto Door Unlocking ..... 153
Keys ..... 140
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside ..... 151
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside ..... 143
Lockout Prevention System ..... 150
DOT Tire Quality Grading ..... 599
Driver Information Interface ..... 119
Driver's Seat Lumbar Support ..... 203
Driving ..... 457
Braking ..... 534
Continuously Variable Transmission ..... 479
Off-Highway Driving Guidelines ..... 469
Shifting Gear ..... 480
Starting the Engine ..... 471, 473
Driving Position Memory System ..... 198
Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 609

## E

Eco Assist® System ..... 12
ECON Button ..... 488
Elapsed Time ..... 121
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System
Indicator ..... 91, 639
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) ..... 519
Emergency ..... 646
Emissions Testing (Readiness Codes) ..... 655
Engine
Coolant ..... 582
If the Battery Is Dead ..... 629
Number ..... 652
Oil ..... 577
Starting ..... 471, 473
Switch Buzzer ..... 175, 178
Engine Coolant ..... 582
Adding the Coolant ..... 583
Overheating ..... 633
Temperature Gauge ..... 118
Engine Oil ..... 577
Adding ..... 579
Checking ..... 578
Displaying Oil Life ..... 570
Low Oil Pressure Indicator ..... 87, 635
Recommended Engine Oil ..... 577
ENGINE START/STOP Button ..... 176
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System ..... 639
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) ..... 80
Exterior Care (Cleaning) ..... 612
Exterior Mirrors ..... 202

## F

**Features** ..... 239
**Filters**
Dust and Pollen ..... 609
Oil ..... 580
**Flat Tire** ..... 619
**Floor Mats** ..... 611
**Fluids**
Brake ..... 585
Continuously Variable Transmission ..... 584
Engine Coolant ..... 582
Windshield Washer ..... 586
**FM/AM Radio** ..... 253, 296
**Fog Light Indicator** ..... 93
**Folding Down the Rear Seats** ..... 208
**Foot Brake** ..... 537
**Front Airbags (SRS)** ..... 53
**Front Seat Heaters** ..... 230
**Front Seats** ..... 203
Adjusting ..... 203
**Front Sensor Camera** ..... 489
**Fuel** ..... 27, 560
Fuel Economy and $CO_2$ Emissions ..... 563
Gauge ..... 118
Instant Fuel Economy ..... 125
Low Fuel Indicator ..... 89
Range ..... 121
Recommendation ..... 560
Refueling ..... 560
**Fuel Economy and $CO_2$ Emissions** ..... 563
**Fuel Fill Door** ..... 27, 561
**Fuses** ..... 641
Inspecting and Changing ..... 645
Locations ..... 641, 642

## G

**Gasoline (Fuel)**
Fuel Economy and $CO_2$ Emissions ..... 563
Gauge ..... 118
Information ..... 560
Instant Fuel Economy ..... 125
Low Fuel Indicator ..... 89
Refueling ..... 560
**Gauges** ..... 118
**Gear Shift Lever Positions**
Continuously Variable Transmission ..... 480
**Glass (care)** ..... 610, 613
**Glove Box** ..... 217

## H

**Handling the Unexpected** ..... 617
**HandsFreeLink® (HFL)** ..... 396, 420
Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History ..... 410, 433
Caller ID Information ..... 407
Displaying Messages ..... 448
HFL Buttons ..... 396, 420
HFL Menus ..... 398, 423
HFL Status Display ..... 397, 422
In Case of Emergency ..... 452
Limitations for Manual Operation ..... 397, 422
Making a Call ..... 414, 441
Options During a Call ..... 419, 445
Phone Setup ..... 402, 428
Phonebook Phonetic Modification ..... 437
Receiving a Call ..... 418, 444
Receiving a Text/E-mail Message ..... 446
Ring Tone ..... 407, 432
Selecting a Text/E-mail Message Account ..... 447
Speed Dial ..... 411, 434
To Clear the System ..... 409
To Set Up Text/E-mail Message Options ..... 431
**Hazard Warning Button** ..... 6
**HD Radio™** ..... 296
**Head Restraints** ..... 209
**Headlights** ..... 181
Aiming ..... 587
Auto High-Beam ..... 186
Automatic Operation ..... 182
Dimming ..... 181
Operating ..... 181
**Heated Door Mirror Button** ..... 196
**Heated Steering Wheel** ..... 229
**Heated Windshield Button** ..... 197
**Heaters (Front Seat)** ..... 230
**Heaters (Seat)** ..... 231
**Heating and Cooling System**
Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 609
**HFL (HandsFreeLink®)** ..... 396, 420
**High Beam Indicator** ..... 93

**Hill Start Assist System** ..... 472, 477
**HomeLink® Universal Transceiver** ..... 393
**Honda App License Agreement** ..... 344
**Honda Sensing®** ..... 28
**HondaLink®** ..... 322

## I

**Identification Numbers** ..... 652
Engine and Transmission ..... 652
Vehicle Identification ..... 652
**If the Battery Is Dead** ..... 629
**Ignition Switch** ..... 175
**Illumination Control** ..... 194
Knob ..... 194
**Immobilizer System** ..... 165
Immobilizer System Indicator ..... 94
**Indicators** ..... 84
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ..... 98, 99, 491
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 89
Auto Idle Stop (Green) ..... 95
Auto Idle Stop System (Amber) ..... 96
Automatic Brake Hold ..... 86, 538
Blind spot information System ..... 95, 523
Charging System ..... 87, 635
Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) ..... 100, 101, 102
ECON Mode ..... 95, 488
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System ..... 91, 639
Fog Light ..... 93
High Beam ..... 93
Immobilizer System ..... 94
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) .... 99, 100
Lights On ..... 93
Low Fuel ..... 89
Low Oil Pressure ..... 87, 635
Low Tire Pressure/TPMS ..... 91, 92, 532
Maintenance Minder ..... 569
Malfunction Indicator Lamp ..... 87, 636
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) ..... 85, 86
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) ..... 84, 637, 638
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) .. 96, 97, 98
Seat Belt Reminder ..... 43, 88
Security System Alarm ..... 94
Shift Lever Position ..... 88
Supplemental Restraint System ..... 62, 89
System Message ..... 92
Transmission System ..... 88
Turn Signal ..... 93
Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System ..... 90, 519
VSA® OFF ..... 90, 520
**Information** ..... 649
**Instant Fuel Economy** ..... 125
**Instrument Panel** ..... 83
Brightness Control ..... 194
**Interior Lights** ..... 213
**Interior Rearview Mirror** ..... 201
**iPod** ..... 255, 307

## J

**Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench)** ..... 622

## K

**Key Number Tag** ..... 141
**Keyless Lockout Prevention** ..... 150
**Keys** ..... 140
Lockout Prevention ..... 150
Master Keys ..... 140
Number Tag ..... 141
Rear Door Won't Open ..... 152
Remote Transmitter ..... 147
Types and Functions ..... 140
Valet Key ..... 141
Won't Turn ..... 31
**Kickdown (Continuously Variable Transmission)** ... 479

## L

**Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** ..... 511
**LaneWatch™** ..... 525
**LATCH (Child Seats)** ..... 71, 76
**Lights** ..... 181, 587
Auto High-Beam ..... 186
Automatic ..... 182
Bulb Replacement ..... 587
Daytime Running Lights ..... 190

Fog Lights ..... 185
High Beam Indicator ..... 93
Interior ..... 213
Light Switches ..... 181
Lights On Indicator ..... 93
Turn Signals ..... 180
Load Limits ..... 461
Locking/Unlocking ..... 140
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking ..... 153
Childproof Door Locks ..... 152
From Inside ..... 151
From Outside ..... 143
Keys ..... 140
Using a Key ..... 149
Lockout Prevention System ..... 150
Low Battery Charge ..... 635
Low Fuel Indicator ..... 89
Low Oil Pressure Indicator ..... 87, 635
Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength ..... 142
Lower Anchors ..... 71, 76
Luggage (Maximum Load Limit) ..... 461
Lumbar Support ..... 204
Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch ..... 204

## M

Maintenance ..... 565
Adding the Coolant ..... 583
Battery ..... 605
Brake Fluid ..... 585
Cleaning ..... 610
Coolant ..... 582
Maintenance Minder™ ..... 569
Oil ..... 578
Precautions ..... 566
Remote Transmitter ..... 607
Replacing Light Bulbs ..... 587
Safety ..... 567
Service Items ..... 572
Tires ..... 596
Transmission Fluid ..... 584
Under the Hood ..... 575
Malfunction Indicator Lamp ..... 87, 636
Map Lights ..... 215
Maximum Load Limit ..... 461
Meters, Gauges ..... 118
Mirrors ..... 201
Adjusting ..... 201
Door ..... 202
Exterior ..... 202
Interior Rearview ..... 201
Modifications (and Accessories) ..... 615
Moonroof ..... 171
MP3 ..... 260, 316
Multi-View Rear Camera ..... 558

## N

Numbers (Identification) ..... 652

## O

Odometer ..... 120
Off-Highway Driving Guidelines ..... 469
Oil (Engine) ..... 577
Adding ..... 579
Checking ..... 578
Displaying Oil Life ..... 570
Low Oil Pressure Indicator ..... 87, 635
Recommended Engine Oil ..... 577
Viscosity ..... 577
Open Source Licenses ..... 358
Opening/Closing
Hood ..... 576
Moonroof ..... 171
Power Windows ..... 168
Tailgate ..... 154
Outside Temperature Display ..... 125
Overheating ..... 633

## P

Pandora® ..... 258, 314
Panic Mode ..... 167
Panoramic Roof ..... 172
Parking ..... 552
Parking Brake ..... 534
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) ..... 85, 86
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) ..... 84, 637, 638
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator ..... 63

Passing Indicators ..... 181
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio ..... 263, 319
Power Tailgate ..... 156
Power Windows ..... 168
Precautions While Driving ..... 478
Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle ..... 478
Rain ..... 478
Pregnant Women ..... 48
Puncture (Tire) ..... 619

## R

Radio (FM/AM) ..... 253, 296
Radio (SiriusXM®) ..... 300
Radio Data System (RDS) ..... 254, 299
Range ..... 121
RDS (Radio Data System) ..... 254, 299
Readiness Codes (Emissions Testing) ..... 655
Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System™ ..... 527
Rear Seat Heaters ..... 231
Rear Seats (Folding Down) ..... 208
Rearview Mirror ..... 201
Refueling ..... 560
Fuel Gauge ..... 118
Gasoline ..... 560, 650
Low Fuel Indicator ..... 89
Regulations ..... 532, 599, 653
Remote Transmitter ..... 147
Replacement
Battery ..... 607
Bulbs ..... 587
Fuses ..... 641, 642
Rear Wiper Blade Rubber ..... 594
Tires ..... 602
Wiper Blade Rubber ..... 592
Reporting Safety Defects ..... 654
Resetting a Trip Meter ..... 121
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM) ..... 507
On and Off ..... 509

## S

Safe Driving ..... 35
Safety Check ..... 40
Safety Labels ..... 81
Safety Message ..... 3
Seat Belts ..... 41
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor ..... 46
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners ..... 44
Checking ..... 49
Detachable Anchor ..... 47
Fastening ..... 45
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt ..... 74
Pregnant Women ..... 48
Reminder ..... 43
Warning Indicator ..... 43, 88
Seat Heaters ..... 230, 231
Seats ..... 203
Adjusting ..... 203
Driver's Seat Lumbar Support ..... 203
Front Seat Heaters ..... 230
Front Seats ..... 203
Rear Seats ..... 207
Seat Heaters ..... 230, 231
Security System ..... 165
Security System Alarm Indicator ..... 94
Select Lever ..... 25, 480
Operation ..... 25, 481
Releasing ..... 632
Won't Move ..... 632
Selecting a Child Seat ..... 70
Selector Knob (Audio) ..... 246
Setting the Clock ..... 138
Shift Lever ..... 25, 480
Shift Lever Position Indicator ..... 88, 481
Shifting (Transmission) ..... 480
Shoulder Anchor ..... 46
Side Airbags ..... 58
Side Curtain Airbags ..... 60
Siri® Eyes Free ..... 266, 329
SiriusXM® Radio ..... 300
Smart Entry System ..... 143
Snow Tires ..... 604
Song By Voice™ (SBV) ..... 310
Spare Tire ..... 619, 651
Spark Plugs ..... 650
Specifications ..... 650
Specified Fuel ..... 560, 650

Speedometer ..... 118
SRS Airbags (Airbags) ..... 53
Starting Assist Brake Function ..... 487
Starting the Engine ..... 471, 473
Does Not Start ..... 626
Engine Switch Buzzer ..... 175, 178
If the Battery Is Dead ..... 629
Steering Wheel ..... 200
Adjusting ..... 200
Stopping ..... 552
Summer Tires ..... 604
Sunglasses Holder ..... 228
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) ..... 53
Switches
(Around the Steering Wheel) ..... 6, 7, 175
System Message Indicator ..... 92

## T

Tachometer ..... 118
Tailgate ..... 154
Unable to Open ..... 647
Temperature
Outside Temperature Display ..... 125
Temperature Sensor ..... 125
Theft Protection ..... 242
Time (Setting) ..... 138
Tire Pressure Monitoring System
(TPMS) ..... 528
Indicator ..... 91, 92
Tires ..... 596
Air Pressure ..... 597, 651
Checking and Maintaining ..... 596
Inspection ..... 596
Labeling ..... 597
Puncture (Flat Tire) ..... 619
Regulations ..... 599
Rotation ..... 603
Spare Tire ..... 619, 651
Summer ..... 604
Tire Chains ..... 604
Wear Indicators ..... 601
Winter ..... 604
Tonneau Cover ..... 232
Tools ..... 618
Towing a Trailer ..... 463
Equipment and Accessories ..... 464
Load Limits ..... 463
Towing Your Vehicle ..... 468
Behind a Motorhome ..... 468
Emergency ..... 646
TPMS
(Tire Pressure Monitoring System) ..... 528
Indicator ..... 91, 92
Transmission ..... 480
Continuously Variable ..... 480
Fluid ..... 584
Number ..... 652
Shift Lever Position Indicator ..... 88, 481
TRIP Knob ..... 120
Trip Meter ..... 120
Troubleshooting ..... 617
Blown Fuse ..... 641, 642
Brake Pedal Vibrates ..... 32
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door ..... 32
Emergency Towing ..... 646
Engine Won't Start ..... 626
Noise When Braking ..... 33
Overheating ..... 633
Puncture/Flat Tire ..... 619
Rear Door Won't Open ..... 32, 152
Shift Lever Won't Move ..... 632
Warning Indicators ..... 84
Turbo Engine Vehicle ..... 564
Turn Signals ..... 180
Indicators (Instrument Panel) ..... 93

## U

Under-floor Storage Area ..... 219
Unlocking the Doors ..... 143
Unlocking the Front Doors from the
Inside ..... 17
USB Flash Drives ..... 260, 316, 343
USB Port(s) ..... 241

## V

Valet Key ..... 141
Vanity Mirrors ..... 9
Vehicle Identification Number ..... 652

Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) ..... 519
Off Button ..... 520
Off Indicator ..... 90
System Indicator ..... 90
Viscosity (Oil) ..... 577, 651
Voice Control Operation ..... 292
Audio Commands ..... 294
Climate Control Commands ..... 295
General Commands ..... 295
Music Search Commands ..... 295
On Screen Commands ..... 295
Phone Commands ..... 294
Useful Commands ..... 294
Voice Portal Screen ..... 293
Voice Recognition ..... 292
VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist™) ..... 519

## W

Wallpaper ..... 249, 277
Warning and Information Messages ..... 103
Warning Indicator On/Blinking ..... 635
Warning Labels ..... 81
Warranties (Warranty Manual provided separately) ..... 657
Watts ..... 650
WAV ..... 260
Wear Indicators (Tire) ..... 601
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) ..... 622
Wi-Fi Connection ..... 327
Window Washers ..... 191
Adding/Refilling Fluid ..... 586
Switch ..... 191
Windows (Opening and Closing) ..... 168
Windshield ..... 191
Cleaning ..... 610, 613
Defrosting/Defogging ..... 234
Washer Fluid ..... 586
Wiper Blades ..... 592
Wipers and Washers ..... 191
Winter Tires ..... 604
Snow Tires ..... 604
Tire Chains ..... 604
Wipers and Washers ..... 191
Automatic Intermittent Wipers ..... 192
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades ..... 592
Front ..... 191
Rear ..... 193
Wireless Charger ..... 223
WMA ..... 260, 316
Worn Tires ..... 596

owners.honda.com (U.S.)
honda.ca (Canada)

31TLA640
OM-14919
00X31-TLA-6400

2021 Honda CR-V Owner's Manual
© 2020 Honda Motor Co., Ltd. — All Rights Reserved

Printed in U.S.A.